V
L. J. ~~I. II.~~

E
Ms. 238

This Manuscript is ye Famous St Albans Chronicle.
and a very great Curiosity.

Lyonell Tollemache &c &c

[...]nongst ye Old Books
at Helmingham &c

V
L. J. ~~I. II.~~

E
Ms. 238

This Manuscript is ye Famous St Albans Chronicle
and a very great Curiosity

Lyonell Tollemache

Amongst ye Old Books
at Helmingham

V
L. J. I. II.

E
Ms. 238

This Manuscript is yᵉ Famous Sᵗ Albans Chronicle
and a very great Curiosity—

Lyonell Tollemache &c &c

Amongst yᵉ Old Books
at Helmingham &c—

L. V

No 11

Here may a man hure how Enge-
lande was first callede Alby-
on, and thorgh wham hit hadde
the name.

In þe noble lande
of Surre þer was
a noble kyng &
myghtie and a
man of grete re-
noun þat me cal-
lede Dioclician
þat wel and
worthily hym gouernede and
reulede thorugh his noble chy-
ualrie, so þat he conquerede
alle þe landes abowte hym, so
þat alle most alle þe kynges
of þe worlde to hym were en-
tendaunt. ¶ Hit byfel so
þat Dioclician spousede a gen-
til damysel þat was wonder
faire þat was his emes dough-
ter Labana, and she louede
hym as resoun wolde, so þat
he gate vpon hire xxxiij dough-
ters of þe whiche þe eldest
was callede Albyne, and þes
damesels whenne þei come
vnto age bicomen so faire þat
hit was wondir. ¶ Wherfor
þes Dioclician anon lete make
a somenynge and comaundede by
his letters þat alle þe kynges
þat helden of hym schulde
come atte a certayne day as
in his letters was conteynede

to make a ryal feste. Atte
whiche day þider þey comen
and brought with ham amy-
ralles, princes and dukes and
noble chiualrie. þe feste was
ryally arayede and þere þei lyued
in ioye and myrthe ynough þat
hit was wondir to wite.
And hit byfel so þat þis Dio-
clician thoughte to maryen his dough-
tres among alle þo kynges þat
þere were at þat solempnite &
so þei spaken and dede þat
Albyne his eldest doughter
and alle here susters richely
were maryed vn to xxxiij
kynges þat were lordes of
grete honour and also þeer at
þat solempnite. And whenne
þe solempnite was done eu-
ery kyng nome his wyf and lad
hem in to hire owne cuntree &
þere made hem quenes. ¶ And
hit byfel so afterward þat þis
dame Albyne bycome so stoute
and so sterne þat sche tolde ly-
tel prise of hire lord and of hym
had scorn and despite & wolde
nought done his wille but wol-
de haue hire owne wille in
dyuerse maners and alle hire o-
thir sistres euchon bere ham so euyl
ayens hire lordes þat hit was
wondir to wyte. And for as my-
che as ham þoughte þat hire
hosbondes were nought of so

hire ware comen as hire fader
But þe kynges þat were hire
lordis wolde haue chastised
hire with faire speche and by
hestis and also for ȝiftes and
warnede hem in faire manere
vppon al loue and frendschip þat
þey schulde amende here lyu-
condiciouns but al hit was
for nouȝt for þei deden al þey
owne will in all þinges þat hem
likede and had of þeer wherfor
þe xxxiij kyngis oppon a tyme
and often tymes beten hire wifes
for þei wende þat þei wolde
haue amendid þere tacches &
hire wycked þewes but of
suche condiciouns þey were þat
for faire speche and warnynge
þeyin deden þe wers and for
betynges afterwardes muchel wers
Wherfore þe kyng þat had wed-
ded Albyne wrote þe tacches
and þe condiciouns of his wyf
Albyne and þe lettre sente to
Dioclician here fader ¶ And
whanne þe oþer kynges herde
þat Albyn lord had sente lettre
to Dioclician anon þey sente let-
tres enseled with hire seles þe
condiciouns and þe tacches of here
wyfes ¶ When þe kyng Diocli-
cian saw and herde so manye
pleyntes of his douhtris he
was sore aschamed and bycome

wonder angry and wrothe to-
warde his douhtres and þouȝte
bothe nyȝt and day how he þo
myȝt amende hit þat þey so
mysdede ¶ And anon sente his
letter vnto þe xxxiij kynges þat
þey schulde come to hym and
brynge with hem here wyfes
eueryschon att a certayn day for
he wolde þe chastise hem of here
wyckydnesse yf he myȝte in eny
manere wyse ¶ So þat the
kynges come alle att þe day &
tyme þat þe was sette bitwe-
ne hem and þe kyng Dioclician
hem vnderfenge with muchel
honour and made a solempne
feste to alle þat weren vnder
his lordschip ¶ And þe þridde
day of þat solempnite þe kyng
Dyoclician sente for his xxxiij
douhtres þat þei schulde come
and speke with hym in his
chambre and when þey were
comen he spake vnto hem of
hire wickydnesse and of hire
queste and dispitously hem re-
proued and vndir nam and
to hem he seide þat ȝif they
wolde nouȝt ben chastised
þey schulde his loue lese for
euermore ¶ And when þe la-
dyes herden all þis þey by-
comen abaschede and gretly a-
schamede and to her fader

Howe king [illegible] cam in to the
lond of Rome and ouercam
till [illegible] hole come

þey sayde þat þei wolde make
alle amendis. and so þey dep
tide out fram her fadres cha
bre. and dame Albyne þat was
þe eldest suster lad ham alle
in to her chambre. and þo made
voyde alle þat weren þerinne.
so þat no lyf was among hem
but sche and her susters þ ere
þo sayde þis albyne [S]ayr
fayre susters ful wel we know
eth þat þe kyng oure fader vs
hap repreued schamed and dispi
sede for encheson to make vs
obedient unto oure hosbondes
but certis þat schal y neuere
whiles þat y leue. For þat y am
come of more herre kyngis blo
de þan myn hosbonde is. and
whenne sche had so sayde alle
her susters sayden þe same
[A]nd þo sayde albyne ful wel y
wote fayre susters þat oure hos
bondis haue pleynede unto oure
fader vpon us. wherfore he hap
us þus foule repreuede and despi
sede. wherfor suster my conseyl
is þat þis nyȝt whenne oure
hosbondes ben abed alle we
with on assent cutten here thro
tis. and þanne we mowe ben
pees of ham. and bettre we
mowe don þis þing under oure
fadris power þan elles where. and
anon alle þe ladyes consentid
and grantide un to þis conseyl.
And whenne nyȝt was come
þe lordes and ladyes wente
to bedde. and anon as here lor
des were in slepe þey cutte
alle her hosbondis throtis. and
so þey slowen ham alle. [W]hen
þat Diocliçian þe kynge her fa
der herde of þis thing he by
come hugely wrothe aȝens his
doughtres. and anon wolde he
alle haue brende. but alle the
barons and lordes of Sirry
counceyled hym nouȝt so for to
don suche streynesse to his owne
doughtres. but onlyche schulde
voyde þe londe of ham for eue
more so þat þey neuere scholde
come aȝene. and so he dede.
And anon Diocliçian þat was
here fader and commandid ham
to gon in to schippe and deliuered
to ham vitailles for half a ȝere.
And whenne þis was don alle
þe susters wente in to schippe &
sayleden forþ in þe see and by
token alle here frendis to Appo
lyn þat was here god. [A]nd
so longe þey sayled in þe see
til att þe laste þey come and
arryuede in an yle þat was al
wildernesse. [A]nd whan dame
Albyne was come to þat lande
and alle hire susters þo þis Al
byne wente first out of þe schip.

and sayde to here oþer sustres: for
as myche quod sche as y am þe
eldest suster of al this companye
and first þis lande haue taken
and for as myche as my name
ys Albyne y wyle þat þis land
be callede Albyon after myne
owne name. and anon alle here
susteren here grauntede wyth a
good wille ¶ Tho wenten out
alle þe sustres of þe schip and
token þe lande Albyon as here
suster called hit. and þere þey
wente up and doun and fonde
no man ne woman ne childe
but wylde bestis of diuerse kyn
des ¶ And whenne here vitai
lys were dispendid and hem
faylede: þey fedde hem wyth er
bes and fruit in sesoun of þe
zere and so þey leueden as þey
beste myzte. and after þat þey
token flessche of diuerse bestes &
bicomen wonder fatte and so
þey desyreden mannis companye
and mannys kynde þat hem faylede
and for hete þey wexen wondir
corragious of kynde: so þat þey
desireden more mannys companye
þan eny oþer solace or myrthe
whenne þe deuel þat perceyued
and wente by diuerse cuntres &
nome body of þe eyr & lykynge
natures schad of man & come
into þe londe of albyon and lay
by þo wymmen and schad þo na
tures uppon hem. and þey concey
uede and after þey brouzten forþ
Geauntz of þe whiche one me
callyd Gogmagog. and anoþer
Langhergan and so þey were
nampnyd by dyuerse name. and
in þis manere þey comen forth
and were borne horrible Geaun
tz in Albyon and þey dwellyd
in caues and in hulles att here
wille and had þe londe of albyon
as hem lykede vn to þe tyme þat
Brut arryuede and come to Tot
tenesse þat was in þe yle of Al
byon and þo þis Brut conquered
and scomfited þese geauntz a
boue sayde ¶ Here endith the
prolog of Albyon þat þo was and
and herkenith now how Brut
was geten. and how he slowe
first his moder and after warde
his fadre. and how he conque
rede Albyon þat after he nempnyd
Brutaigne after his owne name
þat now is callyd Engelonde
after þe name of Engist of saxo
nye Capitulo primo.

In þe noble citee
of grete Troye þere
was a noble knyght
and a myghty and
a man of grete power
þat was callede
Eneas and whenne þe citee of

Troye was lost and destroyed
þorouȝ hem of Grece. þis Eneas
wiþ al his mayn fledde þennes
and come in to lumbardye þat þo
was lord and gouernour of that
lande a kyng þat me callede la-
tyme. And anoþer kyng þo was þ[at]
men callede Turocelyn þat strong-
liche werrede vpon þis kynge
latyme þat often tymes dede
hym muche sorowe & harme.
¶And whenne þis kyng latyme
herde þat Eneas was come: he
vnderfenge hym wiþ muchel
honour and hym wiþhelde for as
muche as he had herde of hym
and wiste wel þat he was a
noble knyght and a worthy of
body and of his dedis. ¶This
Eneas halpe kyng latyme in
his werre and shortly for to
telle so wel and worthily he de-
de þat he slough Turocelyn &
descomfitede and alle his peple.
And when al this was done:
kyng latyme ȝaf al þat lande
þat was Turocelinus and ȝaf
it to Eneas in mariage wiþ
lauiane his doughter þe moste
fayre creature þat any man wyst
and so þey loueden to gedre in
ioye and merþe al here lyues ty-
me ¶But by fel þus þat Eneas
deyde as god wolde and whenne
þat he was dede Ascanius his
sone þat com wiþ hym fram Troye
vnderfenge þe lande and helde
hit al his lyues tyme ¶And after
he weddid a wyf and vpon hire
he bygatte a sone þat me callede
Syluyn and this Syluyn when
he couthe som resoun of man vn-
wytinge his fader and aȝens his
wiff aqueyntede wiþ a damyse-
le þat was cosyn to lauiane þat
was kyng latymes doughter þe
quene þat was Eneas wyf and
brouȝte þe damysell wiþ childe.
And whenne Ascanius his fader
hit wiste: anone he lete enquere
of þe wysest maistres and of þe
grettest clerkes. what childe þat
damysel sholde bringe forthe. &
þey answerid and seyde þat she
shulde bringe forthe a sone þat
sholde quelle boþe fader and
moder. and so he dede for his
moder deide in beringe of hym
And whenne þis childe was
born his fader lete calle hym
Brut. and þe maistres sayden.
þat the childe shulde don much
harme and sorowe in manye
diuerse places. and after he shulde
come to grete honour and worship
The kyng Ascanius deide whe
god wolde and Syluyn his
sone regnede þe lande and
made hym wonder liche wel be-
louede amonges his peple and

Whanne Brut þat was olieu
ng sone was xv· ȝere olde he
wente vppon a day with his
fader for to pleye and solace
and as þis brut schulde schete
vn to an herte his arwe mys
happid and glaced· and so þere
brut quelde his fader·

**How Brut was dryuen out of
þe lande· and how he helde
him in Grece· Capitulo ij°·**

c° ij° And whanne þis mys
chance by falle was
þe peple of þe lande
maden sorowe ynow & were
sore an angrede· and for enche
sun þ[er] of· þey dreuen Brut out
of þe lande and wolde nouȝt
suffren hym amonges hem· &
he saw þat he most nouȝt aby
de· and wente hie thennys in
to Grece· and þ[er] he fonde vij·
m· men þat were of þe kyna
ge and kynrede of Troye þat
were comen of grete blode as
þe storye tellith as of men &
wymmen and children· the
whiche were alle holden in
þraldome and bondage· Þe
kyng Pandras of Grece for þe
deth of Achilles þat was by
trayed and slayn att Troye·
þis Brut was a wondir faire
man and a stronge and an hu
ge of his age and of glade
chere and semblaunt and also
worthy of body and was wel
by loued amonge his peple·
This kyng Pandras herde speke
of his goodnesse and his con
dicions and anon made hym
dwelle with him so þat Brut
bicome wondir p[r]ice & muche
byloued with þe kyng· so þat
longe tyme Brut dwellyd wt
þe kyng· So att þe last þey
of Troye and Brut speken to
gadre of kynrede and of kynage
and of aqueyntaunce and þere
playneden hem son to Brut of
here sorowe and of here bondage
and of menye oþer schames þt
þe kyng· Pandras had hem do
ne and to Brut þey seyden vppo[n]
a tyme· Ȝe ben a lord of oure
kynage and a stronge man and
a myghti· be ȝe oure a vowe and
oure lord and we wile bycome
ȝoure men and ȝoure comaunde
mentz done in alle manere þin
gis· and brynge ȝe us out of
þis wrecchidnesse and bonda
ge· and fighte we with the
kyng for þorouȝ þe grace of þe
grete god we schul hym ouercome
and we schul make ȝow kyng
of þe lande and to ȝow done
homage and of ȝow we schul
len holde euermore· Brut had
þos grete pite of here bondage

þat þey were brouȝte inne and
priueliche wente hym fram þe
kynges court and alle þo that
were of troye wente and putte
hem in to wodes and in to moun
teynes and þere hem helde &
sente to kyng Pandras þat he
schulde ȝeue hem leue sikerliche
for to wende out of þe londe for
þey nolde no lenger dwelle in
his bondage ¶ Þe kyng Pan
dras was þo sore annoyede &
þo swore þat he wolde sle hem
euerychone and ordeynede a gret
power and wente towardes
hem al for to fyghte. But Brut
and his men manliche hem de
fendid and fersly foughten &
quelde alle þe kynges men þat
non of hem ascapede and toke
þe kyng and hym helde in prison
and ordeynede conseil bytwe
ne hem what þey myȝte done
Somme seyde þat he schulde be
put to þe deth and somme seyde
þat he schulde ben exilede out
of the londe and somme seyde
þat he schulde be brente
¶ And þo spake a wyse knyght
þat was callede Menpris and
seyd seyde to Brut and to alle
þo of troye yf kyng Pandras
wolde ȝelde hym and haue his
lyf þer conceyle þat he ȝeue vn
to Brut þat is oure duke & oure
souereyn his doughter Ignogen
to wyf and in mariage w^t^ here
an hundred schippis wel arai
ede and al his tresour of gold
and of siluer of corn and of
wyn and as muche as we ne
dith for to haue of oþing and
of oþer. And þanne go we out
of his londe and ordeyne we
vs londes elleswhere ¶ For we
ne non of oure kynrede þat come
after vs schulde neuer haue
pees in þis londe amonges hem
of Grece for we haue slayne
so meny of here knyghtis &
of her frendis þat euermore were
and contak schulde ben amon
ges vs ¶ Brut þo and his folk
consentede wel to þat counseil
and þis þing þey tolde to þe
kyng Pandras ¶ And þe kyng
for to haue his lyf grauntede as
muche as þey axede and anon
ȝaf vnto Brut Ignogen his
doughter to wyf and þe hun
dred schippis with as muche
as hem nedid of alle vitailles
as byfore was ordeynede
¶ Brut þo nome his wyf and
alle his men þat forsoke the
londe of Grece and wente hem
vn to þe see and hadden wy
nd at wille and comen the
þridde day in to an yle þat we
callede Logres ¶ Brut anon

sente of his men a londe for
to espie þe manere of þe con
tre and þey founden an olde
citee al wastede and forlete:
þat was þer inne nother man ne
woman ne noþing dwellyng
and in þe myddel of þis citee
þey founden an olde temple
of a faire lady þat me callid
Dyane þe goddesse: and þei
comen azen son to Brut and
tolde him what þei had seyn
and founden. and conseylede
him to gon and don sacrifice
vn to dame Dyane. for sche
was woned to zeue answere
of what þing þat eny man
prayed hire: and namely vn
to hem þat hire honourede wt
sacrifice. ¶ Brut wente to þat
ymage and sayde Diane no
ble goddesse lady þat alþing
hast in myzte and in þi power
wyndis waters wodes. fel
des. and al þingis of þe worl
de and al maner bestes þat
þere inne ben: to zow I make
my prayer þat ze me counsey
le and telle wher and in what
place I schal haue a couena
ble dwellinge for me and for
my peple: and þere I schal make
in honour of zow. a wel faire tem
ple and a noble wher inne ze
schulle euermore ben honoured.

Whanne he had done his pray
er Diane answerd in þis ma
nere. ¶ Brut quod sche go euene
forth þy way on þe see in to
ffraunce towarde þe west and
þere ze schul fynde an ile þat
is called Albyon. and þat ile
is bycompassede al with þe
see and no man may come
þer inne but hit ben by schippis
and in þat londe were woned
to ben geauntz but now it
is nouzt so: but al wildirnesse
and þat lande to zow is des
teined and ordeynede for zow
and for zoure peple.

¶ How Corin by come Brutes man
and how kyng Goffare was
dyscomfited capitulo tercio.

Whanne Brut herde þis
answere of Diane the
goddesse anon he lete
þe ancres wynde vp and say
led in to þe hye see. and whenne
he and his men had saylede
xx dayes and more: þey founde
faste beside a cost of þe see iiij
men of þe lynage and kynrede
of Troye. and hire souereyne &
hire mayster of alle me callede
Coryne ¶ And whenne Brut
wyste whennes þey were he
þo vndirfonge hem with myc
chel ioye in to his schippis and
hem lad forth with hym ¶ his

Coryn þo by come Brutes man
and to him dede feaute and
homage and so longe þey say
led forth in þe see til þei come
to Gascoigne and anon they
arryueden in þe hauen of lye
geris and þe þey dwelled viij.
dayes hem for to resten and
hire schyppes to amende þere it
was nede ¶ Tidinge sone
come to kyng Goffare þat was
lord of þe londe how þat mychel
folke of straunge londe weren
arryuede in his londe in the
hauen of lygeris wherfore he
was sore angrede and annoy
ed þat þey comen and arryued
in his londe withoute leue
and anon he ordeynede þo wey
hym to dryuen out and to
schende but kyng Goffare
was discomfitede and alle
his folke and him self fled
in to fraunce to seche helpe
and socour ¶ And in that
tyme regnede in fraunce xij
kyngis and þe Douzepere asse
bled a grete poer for to helpe
Goffare for to fyghte azens
Brute Goffare dwellyd wiþ
hem of ffraunce half zere &
more ¶ And Brut in þe me
ne tyme and his companye
destroyede alle þe londe of
Gascoigne and lete take al
þe tresory þat kyng Goffare
had and lete bringe hit in
to his schippis ¶ And þo Brut
fonde in þat londe a faire pla
ce and a couenable and þere
Brut made a faire castell and
a stronge ¶ Whenne þat was
don kyng Goffare come fro fran
ce and .xij. kyngis wiþ him
and brou3ten .xx. ml. men for to
fighte wiþ Brut and his com
panye and Brut hadde but
.iij. ml. men and .iiij. ¶ Sharpe
les whan þe two hostes met
ten to gedre Brutis folke þo
ru3 helpe of him and self and
of Turyn his cosyn and of
Coryn þat wel and manlich
him defendid and foughte
so þat in litil tyme þay had
quelde of þe frensshemen .ij. ml.
and mo and þo þat were a
lyf fledden away ¶ And in
this batayle Turyn þat was
Brutis cosyn was slayn and
Brut lete him enterer worthi
liche whenne he hadde space
and leyser in þe castel þat he
had made and þo lete calle þe
castell Tours for þe name of
Turyn þat þe was enterede &
3itt in to þis day þer is a noble
cite þat is callede Tours whe
kyng Goffare wist þat Turyn
was dede he come a3en wt

his men and aftir 3af a stronge
batayle vnto Brut. But Brut
and his men were so wery
of fyghtinge þat þey my3t
no lenger endure. But man
gre hym and alle his Brut &
his men wente in to his cas
tell wiþ alle his men and
made þe 3atis faste for to
saue hem self and for to ta
ke counseyle amonges hem
what were beste for to done.
Brut and Coryn nome coun
seyl and ordeyned þat Coryn
priuely scholde gon out at a
posterne gate of þe castel
wiþ half his men and schulde
gone and busshe hem in a
wode til amorn. so þat in þe
morwynge when Brut schulde
fyghte with his enemyes
Coryn schulde come with
his folke in þat oþer syde and
sle and don al þe harme þat
he my3te. ¶ And amorne
in þe dawenynge Brut went
out of þe castel and faughte
wiþ his enemyes and þey
hem fersly defendid. But
with in a litil tyme Brut &
his folke had slayn mani of
Goffars men. and þe come
Coryne fro þe busshement &
smote to grounde he and
his companye after þat wolde

stonde or abide so þat kyng
Goffar and his folke were
distounfitide and faste þey go
ne to flee. ¶ And Brut and
Coryn wiþ hire companie fers
liche hem pursuede and quelde
of hem mo in þe fleynge þa
þei deden in batayle and in
þat manere Brut had þe vic
torie. and neþeles Brut made
muche sorowe for his cosyn
Turyn þat þere was slayn
and for oþer also þat he hadde
loste of his men þat is to seyn
vj C. and xx. þe which no
bliche he lete entere in the
castel of Toures þe þat he had
entered Turyn his cosyn.

How Brut aryuede att Totte nesse in þe yle of Albyon and of þe batayle þat was by twene Coryn and Gogma gog. Capitulo iiij^to.

Whanne alle þis was
done Brut wolde no
lenger þe dwelle for to
fyghte ne more lese of his peple
ffor kyng Goffars peple my3t
euery day encrese mo and mo.
And Bruttis lassen. and þerfore
he nome al his men and wen
te vnto þe see and had wyn
de and weder att wille and
þe v. dayis aftirward þey ar
ryuede in an haue of Tottenesse

and comen in to þe yle of Al
byon and þo þey founde noþ
man ne woman as þe storye
telliþ but Geauntz and þey
wonede in hulles and in
caues ¶ Brut say þe lande
was fayre and at his lykyng
and good also for hym and for
his folke as Diane þe goddes
se had hym by highte þo was
Brut wondir glad and lete
assemble oppon a day al his
folke to maken a solempne sa
crifise and a grete feste in hono(ur)
and reuerence of Diane þe God
desse þoronȝ whas counceil he
was come in to þat lande.
And whane þei had here so
lempnite made as þey oppon
a day at mete þe comen inne
vppon ham sodeynly .xxx. Ge
auntz and quelde of Brutes
men .xxx. Brut and his men
anon stertin vp & and fouȝten
wiþ þe Geauntz and qualde
hem eu(er)ichone but on Geaunt
þat was mayster of hem alle þ(a)t
me callede Gogmagog þ(a)t was
strongere and hier þan eny of
þo oþere Geauntz. and Brut kept
hym and sauede his lyf for en
chesoun þat he schulde wraste
le wiþ Coryn. for Coryn was
gretter and hier þan eny of
Brutis men fram þe gerdil vp(ward)
¶ Gogmagog
and Coryn vndir toke for to
wrastelyn y fere. and so to ge
dre þey wrastelede longe tyme.
but at þe laste Gogmagog hel
de Coryn so faste þat he brake
ij ribbis of his syde. wherfore
Coryn was sore agreuede. &
nome þo Gogmagog bitwene
his armis and caste hym doun
vppon a roche. so þat Gogmagog
brac al to peces. and so he deide
an euel deth. and þ(er)fore þe pla
ce is callede ȝitt in to þis day
þe sautte of Godmagog. and þo
ȝaf Brut al þat cuntre to Coryn
and Coryn hit callede aft(er) his
name Corneway
le. and his
men he callede Cornewayles
and so schul ȝit men of that
cuntre ben called for eu(er)more.
And in þat cuntre dwellyd Co
ryn and his men and made
townes and houses and in ha
bitede þe lande at here wille.

¶ How Brute made London and
callede þis lande Britaigne &
Scotlande Albyne & Wales Cam
bir. capitulo quinto.

Brut and his men wen
ten forth and souȝte a
bouȝte in diuerse places
wher þey myȝt fynde a goode
place and a couenable þat þey
myȝte in a cytee for hym and for

his folke so att þe laste þey co
men by a feire ryuer þat is
callede the Dampse and þere
Brut bigan a feire citee and le
te calle hit þe newe Troye in
mynde and remembraunce of
þe grete Troye fram whiche
place alle here lynage was
comen ¶ And þis Brut lete
falle adoun wodes and lete
erye and sowe londes and
don mowe medis for sustinan
ce of him and of his peple &
he departede þe londe to hem so
þat eueriche of hem had a certayn
place for to dwelle vpon
¶ And Brut lete calle after his lon
de Britaigne after his owene na
me and his folke he lete calle
Britouns And þis Brut had
geten on his wyf Ennogen .iij.
sones þat were worthi of dedis
þe firste was callede Locryn þe
secunde Albanac and þe þridde
Kamber ¶ And Brutus was
gouerne in the citee of newe troye
xx 3ere after tyme þat þe citee
was made and þere he made
þe lawes þat þe Britouns hol
deth and þis Brut was won
dirly wel bylouede among all
men and Brutes sones also lo
ueden wonderly wel togadere
And whenne Brut had sou3te
al þe londe in lengþe & in brede
he founde a londe þat ioynede to
Brytaigne in þe North and þat
londe Brut 3af to Albanac his
sone and he lete calle hit Alba
nye after his name þat now is
callede Scotland ¶ And Brut
founde another cuntre toward þe
west and þat he 3af to Kamber
his oþer sone and he lete calle hit
Kamber after his name & now
hit is callede Walys and when
Brut had regnede xx 3ere as by
fore is saide he deide in þe citee
of newe Troye and þere his so
nes him entereden with michel
honour ¶ And Locryn Brutes so
ne was crownede kyng with
michel solempnite of alle the
londe of Britaigne and after
whene he was crownede Al
banac and Kamber his .ij. breþeren
wente a3en in to here owne cun
trees and leueden with michel
honour And Locrin her broþer regnede
and was kyng and gouernede
þe londe wel and wysely for he
was a gode man and wondir wel
bylouede of alle his londe
¶ And hit byfel so þat Albanac
dwellide in his owne londe wit
much honour and worschepe
and so come kyng Humber of Humber
londe with a grete power &
strengþe and arryuede in Alba
nye and wolde haue conquerede

þe londe and bygan to werre
vppon Albanac and him quelde
in bataylle. ¶ Whenne Albanac
was slayn þe folk of þe londe
flew vn to Lotryn and tolde him
for he was kyng of Britaigne
how þat his broþer was slayn
and prayde him of helpe for to
avenge his broþis deth. ¶ Lot
tryn anon lete assemble alle
þe Britouns of Kent of Dover
vnto Derewent of Northfolk &
Southfolk of Lestesen and of
Lyndessaye and whenne they
were assemblede þey spedde
faste toward hire enemyes
for to yeue hem batayle. ¶ Lot
tryn had sente to Camber his
broþer þat he schulde come
also to him with al þe power
þat he mi3te him for to helpe
and so he dede with good wil
so þey comen alle to gadres
and nome hire way preueliche
for to seche Humber was be
sides a water þat was a grete
ryuer with his folke him for
to disporte and þo come Lotryn
and Camber his broþer with
alle his folke sodeynly er þat
ony of þat oþer hit wyste. ¶ And
whenne Humber sawe hem
come he was sore adrad for
as muche as his men wiste it
nou3t and also þey were vn
armede. and anon Humber for
drede lepte in to þe water &
drenchid him self. and so dey
de he and his men were alle
slayn þat non of hem ascapid
and þerfor is þat water callid Hum
ber. and euermore schal be for en
cheson þat kyng Humber was
þer in drenchede. ¶ And after þat
Lotryn wente to hire schippis &
toke þe golde and syluer and as
muche as he fande vn to hym
self and al þat oþer þrisse he 3af
vn to oþer folke of þe host. and þey
founden in on of the schippis a
faire damysele þat was kyng
Humberis doughter. and me cal
lede her Estrilde. ¶ And when
Lotryn sawe hir he toke her wt
him for hire fayrenesse and for
hir was one taken for loue and
wolde haue weddid hire. this
tidinge come to Coryn. anon he
þou3te to avenge him vppon Lo
tryn ffor as muche as Lotryn had
made couenaunt for to spousen
Coryns doughter þat me callede
Guentolen. ¶ And Coryn in
haste wente to him vn to the
newe Troye. and þus sayde to
Lotryn. now certis quod he 3e rawe
aquith me ful euel. for alle þe
peynes þat 3e suffride & hadde
meny tymes for Brut 3oure fa
der. and þerfore y wil now avenge

me vppon ȝow. and drowe his
fauchoun an hye and wolde
haue slayn Locryn. but þe da
misele wente by twene hem &
made hem acorded in þis mane
re. þat Locrin shulde spouse Guen
dolen þat was Coryns doughter
and so Locrin dede. and neþeles
þouȝ he had spoused Coryns
doughter. priuelich he come to
Estrilde and brouȝt here with
childe. and gatte on hire a douȝter
þat me callede Abraham ¶ But
by felle anone after þat Coryn
deide and anon as he was dede
Locryn forsoke Guendolen his
wyf and made Estrild quene
and Guendolen wente þennis
al in wraþ into Cornewayle
and seisede al þe launde in to
hire hande for as muche as
she was hire faders eir and
vnderfenge feautez and homa
ges of alle þe men of þe lande
and after assemblede a grete host
and a grete power for to ben
vppon Locryn avengede þat was
hire lorde. and to him come &
ȝaf hym a stronge batayle and
þe was Locryn slayn and his
men discomfytede þe fifte ȝer
of his regne ¶ Guendolen
lete take Estrild and Abraham
hire doughter and bynde boþe
hondes and feete and caste he
in to a water and so þey were dren
chede wherfore þat water was eu
more callede after Abram after the
name of þe damisel þat was Estril
dis doughter. and englisshe men
callet þat water Seuerne and Wal
sshe men callith hit Habram in
to þis day ¶ And whenne þis
was done. Guendolen lete crow
nne hire quene of þat lande &
gouerned þe lande ful wel & wyse
ly vnto þe tyme þat Madhon hir
sone þat Locryn had bygete vp
pon here were of xx ȝere age þat
he myghte ben kyng. so that
þe quene regnede. xv ȝer and
so lete crowne hire sone
and he regnede and gouernede
þe lande wel and honorabely &
she wente in to Cornewayle
and þer she dwellid al hire ly
ues tyme ¶ Off kyng Madhan
how he regnede in pees al his
lyf. and of Menpris and of Ma
lyn his sones. and how Menpris
slough Malyn his broþer. and
how wolfes drowe hym all
to peces. Capitulo. Sexto.

Whenne Madhan had
regned. xxx. ȝere he dey
de and lith att Newe
Troye. and he had .ij. sones þat
on me callyde Menpris and þat
oþer Manlyn. and þese .ij. breþeren
after hire faders deth striuen.

faste for þe lande and Margan
for encheson þat he was elde
he wolde haue had alle that
londe: and Margan wolde nogt
suffren hym so þat þey token
a day of loue and of acorde
¶ And att þis day Margan lete
qualle his broþer þorugh tresoun
and hym self afterwarde helde
þe lande and anone lete corow
ne him kynge and regnede &
after he by come so liþer a man
þat he distroyede in a while
alle þe men of his londe
¶ And at þe laste he by come so
wickyde and so lecherous þat
he for soke his owene wyf &
vsede þe synne of sodomye
wherefore almyghti god was
wroth and vpon him toke
vengeaunce ¶ That for vpon
a day as he wente in a wode
in huntynge he loste his folk
and went allone vp and doun
criynge after his men and þe
come wolfes and al to drowe
hym into peces and þo he had
regnede xxiiij ȝere and whē
his peple wiste þat he was
dede þey made ioye ynow &
anon made Ebrac his sone
kyng and he regnede with
michel honour ¶ Of King
Ebrac how he conquered Fraunce
and by gate xx^ti sones and
xxiij^ti doughtrez capitulo vij^o

This Ebrak regnede
sixti ȝere and a stronge
man was and migh
ti: and þis Ebrac þorugh his
mizt and helpe of his Brytons
conquerede al Fraunce and wan
þere so muche gold and siluer
þat when he come azen into
þis lande he made a noble citee
and after his name lete calle
hit Ebrak after his name þat
now is callede Everwyke and
þis kyng Ebrac made þe castel
of maydenes þat now is cle
pede Edenburghe ¶ This king
had xx sones and xxiij dough
tres by diuerse wymmen ygete
And þe sones were callede as
ȝe schulle here ¶ Brut Grene
schel. Margand. Seisel. Morgh
with Flengham. Bladud. Iakyn
Kymbar. Rocelyn. Spadogh. Gode
hal. Thoriman. Elbaugh. ior
Kaynghint. Hayboi. Ketin. Rother
Kayer & Assaracth ¶ And the
doughtres highten as ȝe schul
here after. Eleyne. Ynogen.
Oghdas. Guenhan. Guardiche
Angarel. Guenthold. Tanguis
tal. Gorghon. Michel. Medhan.
Malour. Ourdyn. Cambredan.
Ragan. Renthely. Neest. Cheghu
Stadud. Gladus. Ebren. Aba
laghe & Blandan and these

were þo xxiij doughtres. and þe bretheren bycomen good knyghtes and worthy in meny thinges.

Of þe kyng Brut Grenesheld þe ferste sone of Ebrac þe kyng capitulo viij°.

After the deth of kynge Ebrak regnede Brut Grenesheld his sone. xxx.ti ȝere þat was Ebrakes first sone þat wel and nobly regnede and þe tyme come he deide and lith at York.

The kynge Leyle capitulo nono

And whanne kyng Grenesheld was dede regnede his sone Leil. xxv. ȝere and he made a faire toun and lete calle hit Carleil after his name and was a worthi man and muche bylovede of his peple. and when he had regnede xxv ȝere he deyde & lith att Karleil. ¶ And in this tyme regnede king Salomon in Jerusalem þat made þe noble temple. and to him come to Jerusalem Sibille quene of Saba for to here and se yf hit were soth þt men spaken of þe grete noble and wisdom & of witt of kyng Salomon. and she fonde hit soth þat men had hire tolde.

¶ Of kyng Lud Hudibras þat was king Leiles sone capitulo decimo.

And after þis kyng Leil regnede his sone Lud Hudibras þat made the citee of Cauntirbery and of Wynchestre. and he regnede xxxix ȝere and deide and lith at Wynchestre.

Of þe kyng Bladud þat was Hudibras his sone regnede & was a good man and a nygromancer capitulo xj°.

And after þis Lud Hudibras regnede Bladud his sone a grete nygromancer and þorugh his crafte of nigromancie he made the [illegible] hote bathe as þe geste telliþ and he regnede. xxi ȝere and he lith att þe newe Troye.

¶ Of kyng Leir and of þe answere of his ȝongest doughter þat Gracionsly was mariede to þe kyng of Fraunce ca° xij°.

After þis kyng Bladud regnede Leir his sone. and þis Leir made the toun of Leycestre and lete calle þe toun after his name and he governede þe londe wel and nobly. ¶ Þis kyng Leir had iij doughtres. þe firste highte Gonorille þe secounde Regan and þe þridde Cordeille. and þe ȝongest doughter was fairest and beste of condiciouns

The kyng hire fadir bicom an
olde man and wolde þat his
doughtres were mariede or þt
he deide but firste he þou3te
assaie whiche of hem louede
him most and beste. for sche
þat louede him best schulde
beste ben mariede. and he ax
ed of þe firste doughter how
myche sche him louede & sche
answerd and seide better þan
hir owne lyf. Now certes qd
þe fader þat is a grete loue.
þo axede he of þe secunde dou3
ter how muche sche him loued
and sche sayde more and passing
al þe creatures of þe worlde.
Mary say quod þe fader I may
no more axen. And þo axed
he of þe þrid doughter how
myche sche him louede. certis
fader quod sche my sistres ha
ue tolde 3ow glosinge wordes
but for sothe I schal telle 3ow
trouþe. for I loue 3ow as muche
as I owe to loue my fader and
for to bringe 3ow more in certeyn
how loue goth I schal 3ow telle
for as muche as 3e beth worth
so muche schal 3e ben louede.
The kyng hire fadir wende
þat sche had scorned him and
bycome wondir wrothe and
swore by heuene and erthe
þat sche schulde neuer haue good
of him. but his doughtres lo
uede him so muche scholde
ben wel auaunced and maried.
And þe firste doughter he ma
riede to Maugles king of Scot
londe. and þe secunde he mar
ede to Hanemos Erle of Corne
wayle. and þo þei ordeynede
and speke bytwene hem þat
þei schulde departe þe reaume
bytwene hem two after þe
deth of Leir hire fadir. And
þat Cordeill his 3ongest dou3ter
schulde no þing haue of his
lande. but þis Cordeill was
wondir faire and of so good
condiciouns and maneres þat
þe kyng of Fraunce Aganipe
herde of hire speke and sente
to þe kyng Leir hir fader for
to haue hire to wyf. and prayed
him þer of. and king Leir hire
fader sente him worde þat he
had departide þe lande vn to
his two oþer doughtris & sayde
he nad no more lande wher
with hire for to maryen.
And whanne Aganipe herde
þis answer he sente anon a
3en to Leir and sayde that
he axid no thing with hire
but onliche here clothinge
and onliche hire body. And a
non kyng Leir hir fadir sent
hire ouer þe see to þe kyng of

ffraunce and he resceyuede hir
with muchel worschepe and
with muche solempnite hire
spousede and made hire que
ne of ffraunce. ¶ How kyng
Leir was dryuen out of his
lande þorou3 his folye: and
how Cordeill his 3ongeste
doughter halpe him in his
nede. Capitulo. xiiij°.

Thus hit fel afterward
þat þe ij· eldest dou3
ters wolde nought
abide til þat Leir hir fader
was dede· but werrid vppon
hym whiles þat he leuede &
muche sorowe and schame
hym dede. wherfore þey by
nomen him holly þe reaume
and bytwene had ordeyned
þat on of hem schulde haue
kyng Leir to soiorne al his
lyf tyme· with xl· kny3tis
and hire squyers þat he mi3t
worschepfully gon and ride
whider þat he wolde in to
what cuntre þat him lykede
to pleye and to solacen.

¶ So þat Maglaus king of scot
lande had kyng Leir with
in þe manere as is aboue
saide· and or oþer half 3ere
were passede: Gonoreill his el
dest doughter þat was que
ne of Scotlande was so a
noyede of him and of his
peple· þat anon sche and hir
lord speken to gedres wher
fore his kny3tis half and
his squyers from him were
gon and no mo lefte but on
liche ·xxx· and whanne þis
was done Leir bygan for to
make muche sorowe for en
chesoun þat his state was en
peyrede and men had of him
more scorne and despite þan
euer þey had byforn wherfore
he niste what for to done
at þe laste þou3te þat he wolde
wende into Cornewayle to
Ragan his oþer doughter//

¶ And when he was come the
Erle and his wyf þat was
Leirs doughter him welcomed
and with him made muche
ioye and þere he duellede wt
xxx· kny3tis and squyers.
And he nad nou3t dwellyde
þere fully twelue moneþ þat
his doughter of him was ful
and of his companye and hir
lord and sche had of him gret
scorn and despite. so þat from
xxx kny3tis þey brou3ten
vnto x· and afterwarde fiue
and so þere lefte with him no
mo ¶ Tho made he sorowe
ynow and sayde ofte weping
Allas þat euer he com into

þat lande and sayde ȝitt had
me ben bett(er) for to haue dwel
lide with my first doughter.
And anon wente þennus aȝe
to his fifte doughter. But a
non as sche sawe hym come.
sche swore by god and his
holy names as by as muche
as sche myghte þat he schulde
haue no mo with him. but
o knyght yf he wolde þe a
byde. ¶ Tho by gan leyr aȝen
wepe and made muche so
rowe and sayde þo allas now
to longe haue y leuede þat
þis sorowe and myschef is to
me now falle for now am y
pore þat som tyme was riche
but now haue y no frende
ne kyn þat me wille do eny
good ¶ But whenne þat y
was riche alle men me ho
noured and worschepede and
now ech man hath of me
scorne and despitte. and now
y wote wel þat Cordeill my
ȝonge doughter saide me trew
the. whenne sche sayde as
muche as I had so muche
schold y ben beloued and
alle þe while þat I had good
þo was I beloued and honoured
for my richesse but my two
doughters me glosede tho.
And now of me þey sette litel

prys. and sothe tolde me Cor
deill. but y wolde nouȝt by
leue hit ne vnderstonde. &
þerfore I lete hir gon fram me
as a þing þat y sette litil þer
of. and now wote y neuer
what for to done. sin my ij
doughters haue me thus
desceyuede þat y so muche
louede. and now mote y ne
des sechen hire þat is in ano
þer lande þat lightly I lete
hire gon fro me withoute eny
rewarde of ȝiftis. and sche
sayde sche louede me as mu
che as sche ouȝt hire fader
by al man(er) resoun and þo y
schulde haue axede of hire no
no more. and þo þat me ouer
wise bihighten þorouȝ hire
false speche now haue me
desceyuede ¶ In þis manere
leir longe tyme him by gan
to make his mone and att þe
last he schope him to þe see
and passede ouere into Fraunce
and axede and aspied wher
þe queene miȝte ben founde
and men tolde wher þat sche
was ¶ And whenne he co
me to þe citee þat sche was
in. priueliche he sente his squi
er vn to þe queene to telle hir
þat hire fader was comen
to hire for grete nede. And

Whenne þe squyer come to the
quene he tolde hire euerydel of
hire sustres fram þe bygynnyng
vn to þe ende ¶ Cordeill the
quene anone nome gold and
oþer grete plente and toke
hit to þe squyer in conceill þat
he schulde gon and bere hit vn
to hire fader. and þat he schulde
go in to a certein Citee and hym
arayen bathen and waschen
and þan come azen to hire and
bringe with him an honest com
panye of knyztis fourty att þe
leste with hire mayne & þanne
he schulde sende to hire lord
þe kyng. and seyn þat he were
comen for to speke with his
doughter and him. and to seen.
And when þe kyng and the
quene herde þat þei come wt
muchel honour and him resteyned
with muchel honour. þe kyng of
ffraunce þo lete sende þorouz al his
reame and comanded þat alle
men schulde to him ben entendant
to leir þe quene fader in al ma
ner þing as his were to him
self ¶ Whenne leir had duel
lid þe a mounth and more he tol
de to þe kyng and to þe quene
his doughter how his .tweyne
eldest doughtres had him ouid
& Aganipe anon lete ordeyne a
grete host of ffraunce and sente
hit in to Britaigne wiþ leir
þe quene is fader for to con
quere his lande azen and his
kyngdome. and Cordeil also
come with hire fader in to Bre
taigne for to haue þe reame
after hir fadres deth ¶ And
anon þey wente to schipp and
passede þe see and come in to
Britaigne and foughten with
þe felouns and hem desconfited
and quelde. and leir þo had
his lande azen and after lyuede
iij. zere and helde his reame
in pees and after warde deyde
and Cordeill his doughter enterid
in þe lande wiþ muchel honour
at leycestre. ¶ How Morgan &
Conedage þat were neuews to
Cordeill warrede vppon hire &
putte hire in to prisoun. capitulo
Whenne þat kyng ¶ xviij.
leir was dede. Corder
ille his zongest doughter
helde and had þe lande .v. zere
and in þe mene tyme deyde
hire lord Aganippe þat was king
of ffraunce and after his deth
sche lefte widue ¶ And tho
come Morgan and Conedage
þat were Cordeill sustres sones
and to hire had enuye. for as
muche þat hire aunte schulde
haue þe lande so þat bytwene
hem þey ordeynede a gret poer

and vppon hire werrede gret
liche and neuer þei reste til þat
þei had hire taken and putte
here vn to deth. ¶ And þo Mor
gan and Conedage ouersede
alle þe lande and departede hit
bitwene hem and þei helde
hit xij ȝere. And whanne þo
xij ȝere were gon þer bigan
bytwene hem a grete debate
so þat þey werren strongely þer
fore and eyther of hem dede
oþer myche disese. ¶ ffor Mor
gan wolde haue had al the
lande fro bi ȝonde Humber þat
Conedage helde but he come
aȝens him with a stronge power
so þat Morgan dorste nouȝt a
bide but fley awey in to Wales
and Conedage pursuede him
and toke him and quelde hym
þo come Conedage aȝen and
ouersede al þe lande in to his
hande and helde hit and reg
nede after xxxiij ȝere. and þo
deide and lith at newe Troye.

¶ How Raynolde þat was Cone
dages sone regnede after his
fader and in his tyme hit rey
ned blood iij dayes in tokening
of gret deth. Capitulo xv.

And after þis Conedage
regnede Raynolde his
sone a wyse knyȝt and
an hardy and curteys þat wel
and nobly gouerned þe lande &
wonder wel made him biloued
of alle maner folke. And in his
tyme hit reynede blood þat laste
iij dayes as god wolde and so
ne after þe come gret deth of
peple for hostes with oute noum
bre of peple foughten til þat þey
were dede. wher of no man miȝt
hem lette til þat almyȝti god þer
of toke mercy and pitee and tho
gan hit cesse and þis Raynolde
regnede xxij ȝere and deide and
lith at ȝorke. ¶ How Gorbodian
regnede in pees þat was Raynol
dis sone and after he deide and
lith att ȝorke. Capitulo xvj.

After þis Reynolde
regnede Gorbodian his
sone xv ȝere and deide
and lith att ȝorke. ¶ How Gor
bodian had ij sones and how þat
on slowe þat oþer for to haue þe
heritage and how ydoyne hire
moder quelde þat oþer wherfore
þe lande was destroyed. Ca xvij.

Whanne þis Gorbodian was
dede his ij sones þat
he had bitwene stoute
and proude and euer werrede
togedre for þe lande þat on me
callede fferrez. and þat oþer porrez.
And þis ferrez wolde haue had
alle þe lande but þat oþer wol
de nouȝt suffre him. fferrez had

a felonnes herte and þouzte þo
þurz tresoun slee his broþer. but
priuelich he wente into ffraunce
and þere abood with þe kynge
Suward. til vpon a tyme þat he
come azen and faugt with his
broþer Porrez. but ful euyl hit hap
pid þo for he was slayne first.
Whanne Ydoyne hire moder
wiste þat Porrez was dede. sche
made gret sorowe. for enchesoun
þat sche louede him more þan
þat oþer and þouzte him for to
quelle priuely. and priuely sche
come to hire sone vpon a nyzte
with two knyfes and þat with
cutte his throte and þe body al
to [illegible] smale peces. his her
de anon euche a cursede moder
þat quelde with hire owne hon
des hire owene sone. and lon
ge tyme after laste þe repref &
schame to þe moder. þat for en
chesoun of þat o sone mordred
þat oþer and so loste hem boþe.

How .iiij. kyngis aftirwarde hel
de al Brytaigne and whiche
beth here names. Ca°. xviij°.

Whanne þese .ij. breþeren we
re so ded þey nad lefte
by hinde ham noþer sone
ne doughter. ne non oþer of þe
kynrede þat myghte haue þe
heritage. and for as mucha as
þe strengost men dryuen and
scomfitede þe feblest and to
ken alle hire landes. so þat in
an contray þey had grete werre
and strif. ¶ But amonge alle
oþer þinges þat were amonges
hem in þe cuntree þat on come
alle oþer and þorouz hire strengþe
and hire myghte. þey nomen &
token al þe landes. and euche
of hem took a certeyn cuntree
and in his cuntre lete calle hym
kynge ¶ And on of hem me
callede Stater and he was
kyng of Scotlond. and þat oþer
me callede Dalwallier. and he
was kyng of loegres and of al
þe lande þat was Locrinus þat
was Brutes sones. ¶ þe þrid
me callede Rudak and he was
kyng of walis. and þe .iiij. me
callede Cloten. and he was
kyng of Cornewayle. But þis
Cloten schulde haue had al þe
lande by resoun for þer was no
man þat wyste so riztful heir
as he was. but þey þat were
strongeste satte litel by hem
þat were of lasse astate. And
þerfor þis Cloten had nomore
londe amonges hem þan only
the cornewayle. ¶ Of king
Donewand þat was Clotennes
sone and how he hadde won
ne the lande. cap°. xix°.

This Cloten had a sone
þat me callede Donebad
þat aftir þe deth of his
fader bicome an hardy man &
a fers and a curteys so þat he
passede alle þe kyngis of Brita
igne of fayrenesse and of wor
thinesse ¶ And anon as he was
knyȝt he wiste wel whanne þat
his fadres lande was moste
rightful heir of al þe lande &
schulde haue had hit bi resoun
but oþer kyngis þat were of mo
re strengþe þan he bynome
hym his lande ¶ And aftir
warde þis Donebaud ordeyn
ede him poer and first conque
rede al þe londe of Loegrois &
aftir he wolde haue conquered
al Scotlande and Walys &
Stater wiþ his men come
and ȝaf him batayle. And
Rudak come aȝen with his
Walsshe men for to helpe hym
but so hit byfel þat Rudak
was quelde and Stater also
in pleyn bataile and so Done
baud had þe victorie and con
querede al þe lande and wel
mayntenede hit in pees &
in quiete þat neuer bifore
hit was so wel mayntened

¶ How Donebaud was þe ferst
kyng þat euer werid crown
ne of golde in Britaigne. //

This Donebaud lete hym
done make a croune of
golde and werede þe
crowne vppon his heuede as
neuer kyng dede bifore. and he
ordeynede a statut þat had a ma
don neuer so miche harme &
he myȝt come in to þe temple
schulde noman him misdo. but
gon þer in saf and in pees. and
aftir gon in to what cuntre
þat he wolde wiþ oute eny
harme. and if eny man sette
honde vppon him he þan schul
de lese his lyf. And þis Done
baud made þe toun of Malmes
bery and þe toun of þe Vyse.
and whanne he had regned
wel and worthili fourti ȝere
he deide and liþ att newe
Troye ¶ How Brenne and
Belyn departid bytwene hem
þe lande aftir þe deth of
Donebaunde her fader and
of the werre ¶ Cap° xxj°. // ca° xx°

And aftir þat þis Done
baud was dede his
sones þat he had de
partide þe lande bitwene hem
as her fader had ordeynede
so þat Belyn his eldest sone
had al þe lande of Brytaigne
a þis half Humber. and his
broþer Brenne had al þe lande
fram Humber vnto Scotlande

but for as muche þat Belyn had
þe better part. Brenne þerfore
was he wroth and wolde
haue had more of þe londe þan
Belyn his broþer wolde graunte
him no more. Wherfore contak
and werre aros bitwene hem
two. But Brenne þe ȝonger broþer
had no myȝte ne strengþ aȝeins
Belyn. and þerfore Brenne þorȝ
conseile of his folk wente
his weies in to Norweye to þe
kyng Elsinges and prayede hym
of helpe and of socour for to con
quere al þe londe vpon Belyn
his broþer vpon þat couenant
unt þat he wolde haue his
doughter to wyf and þe kyng
Elsing him grauntede. ¶ Belyn
anon as his broþer was gon to
Norwey he ceisede in to his
hande al þe lande of Northum
berlande and toke all þe castell
and lete hem arraie. and also
kepe þe costes of þe see þat Brenne
schulde nouȝt aryue in no side
but þat he were take. ¶ The
kyng Elsinges lete assemble
a gret ost and deliuerede his
doughter to Brenne. And also
þe peple þat he had ordeynede
And þis damisel Gawye had
longe tyme louede a kyng þat
me callede Gutlaghe and to
him sche tolde al hire conseil

how þat Brenne schulde hire
haue and hire lede wiþ him
for euermore and so he schulde
hire lese. but yf þat sche myȝte
for sake Brenne. ¶ And whenne
Gutlagh herde þis tydinges
he lay for to aspye Brenne wiþ
as meny schippis as he myȝte
haue so þat þe ij. fletis mette
togedre and longe tyme fough
ten. so þat Brenne and his schip
pis turnede aȝen and were
discumfitede. ¶ And kyng Gut
lagh toke Gawye and put hir
in to schipp. and Brenne schame
fully fley þennes as a man dis
cumfitede. And Gutlagh wolde
haue wente in to his owne con
tre. but þer come vpon him a
stronge tempest þat v. dayes
laste. so þat þorȝ þat tempest
he was in to Britaigne with
iij schippis ydriuen and with
no mo. ¶ And þo þat kepten þe
costis of þe see. token Gutlagh
and Gawye and al his folk and
hem presentid to Belyn and put
hem in to prisoun.

¶ How Belyn
drof out of þis land kyng Gut
lagh of Denmark and Gawye ca. xxij.

Hit was nouȝt longe after
þat Brenne ne come aȝen
with a grete nauye and
sente to his broþer Belyn þat he
schulde ȝelde aȝen his londe to

his wyf and to his folke and
his castell also or elles he wol
de destroye his lande: Belyn
drad no þing his manace and
wolde no þing don aftir þat he
sayde. wherfore Brenne come
with his folke and faughte wiþ
him Belyn. and Brenne was
discomfitede and his folke slayn
and him self fledde wiþ .xij.
men in to ffraunce ¶ And this
Belyn þat was Brennus broþer
wente þo to ȝorke and nome
counseil what he myȝte don wiþ
kyng Gurlagh. for kyng Gur
lagh p(ro)ferde to by come his man
and to halde his lande of hym
ȝeldinge ber ȝere a þousande
pounde of silu(er) for eu(er)more
and for þis sikirnesse of þis
couenaunt to ben holde Gur
lagh shulde bringe hym good
hostages and to him shulde
don homage and also his folk
and ȝitt shulde swere vppon
þe book þat þese couenauntis
shulde neu(er) be broke ne fal
sede ¶ Belyn þo by counceil
of his folke g(ra)untede him his
axinge and so Gurlagh bi
come his man. and Belyn vn
derfange of him his homage
by oth an by wrytinge þe sa
me couenauntz. and vppon þese
couenau(n)tz kyng Gurlagh nome

leaue and his folke & wente
þennes and turnede aȝen to
Denmarke eu(er)more aftir were
þe couenauntz holden and þe
t(ri)uage paiede til þe time that
Ganelok was kyng of Denne
marc and also of þis lande
þoruȝ his wyf Gildeburghe þ(a)t
he had sposede for she was
þe riȝt eir of þis lande ¶ This
Belyn duellede þo in pees and
worshepfully him helde amo
ge his baronns and he made
foure weyes on from þe
est in to þe west. and þat was
callede Watlingstrete and a
noþer from North vn to þe south
þat was callede Ikenilstrete
and ij. oþer weyes he made in
bossinge þoruȝ out þe lande þ(a)t
on is callede fosse and þat oþer
fossedik. and he mayntenede
wel þe good lawes þat Den
bande his fader had made &
ordeynede in his tyme as by
fore is sayde. ¶ How a acorde
was made by twene Brenne
and Belyn þoruȝ conne wenne
her modir ¶ Capitulo xxiij.

Brenne þat was Bely
ns broþer had longe ty
me duellede in ffraunce
and þer had conquerede a gret
lordsship þoruȝ mariage for
he was duke of Borgoyne.

þouȝ þe doughter of þe Duke
Sowyn þat he had spoused er
was right heir of þe lande
and þis Brenne ordeyned a
grete power of his folk and also
of Fraunce and come in to þis
lande for to fighte with Belyn
his broþer and Belyn come aȝeins
hym with a stronge power
of Britouns and þo wolde
haue ȝeuen hym batayle but
here moder Coneweme þat
þo leuede hadde herde þat þe
ii broþer wolde destroye þat oþer
and wente by twene here ii so-
nes and made hem acorded
with miche peyne so þat at
þe laste þe ii breþern with
michel blys wente togedre
in to grete Troye þat now is
callede London and þere they
dwellede al ȝere and after
þey nome here conceyle for
to gon conquere alle Fraunce
and so þey deden and brent
townes and distroyed the
lande boþe in lengþe and
brede and þe kyng of Fraunce
ȝaf hem batayle wiþ his power
but he was ouercome and
ȝaf truage to Belyn and to
his broþer ¶ And after þat þey
wenten forþ to Rome and co-
quered Rome and all Lum-
bardye & Germanye & toke
homage and feautee of alle
Barouns and of all oþer and
after þei come þen to þis land
of Britaigne and duellede
with here Britouns in ioye
and reste and þo made Bren-
ne þe town of Bristowe and
siþ he wente ouer þe water in to
his owne lordschep and þere
he duellide all his lyf
And Belyn duellid at newe
Troye and þere he made a
faire gate þat is callede
Bellingesgate after his owne
name and whenne þis Belyn
had regnede nobly xi ȝere
and iiii monthis he deide
and siþ atte newe Troye

Thow kyng Combatrus quel-
de þe kyng of Denmark for
enchesoun þat he wolde
nouȝt paye hym his truage
Capitulo xxiiii

And after this Belyn
regnede his sone Com-
batrus a good man
and a worthy and þe kyng
of Denmark wolde nouȝt
paie hym his truage þat is
to seyn .M^l. li. as he had
sworn by oth for to paie hit
and also by writinge recor-
did to Belyn his fader wher-
fore he was anill paiede &
wroth and assemblede a gret

host of Britonus and wente
vnto Denmark and slowe þe
kyng Gutlagh and brouzte
þe lande in subieccion a3e
newe and toke of folke feutes
and homages and after went
azen vnto his lande ¶ And
as he come forth by Orkeneye
he fonde xxx schippis ful of
men and of wymmen bysides
þe costs of þe see: and þe kyng
axed what þei were an erle
þat was maister of hem alle
curteisly answerid to þe kyng
and sayde þat þei were exiled
out of Spayne and so þei had
trauayled half zere and more
in þe see: to witen if þei mizt
fynde eny kyng in eny londe
þat of hem wolde haue pite
or mercy to zeue hem eny
lande in eny cuntre where in
þei myghten dwelle & haue
reste and bicomen his liege
men and to him wolde done
homage and feaute whiles
þat he lenede and to his eyres
after him and of him and of
his heires holden þat lande
And whenne þe kyng this
herde he had pite of hem &
zaf hem an yle al wildernesse
þe þat no man was dwellyng
saf on liche wilde bestis &
þe Erle þan kyd miche the
kyng and bicome his man &
dede him feaute and homa
ge and nome al his folke &
wente in to þe same ile and
þe kyng me callede Irlamal
and þerfore he lete calle þe lan
de Irland after his owne na
me ¶ Þe kyng þo combatins
com azen in to his lande and
regnede xxv. zer and after he
deide and lith at newe Troye.

Hou þe kyng Guentelin reg
nede in goodnesse and wel
gouerned the lande al his lyf
tyme capitulo xxvo.

And whenne Comba
trus was dede reg
nede Guentolen his
sone a man of good condiciouns
and wel biloued and he go
uernede þe lande wel an wise
liche and he regnede xxvij zer
and after deide and lith att
newe Troye.

Hou kynge
Seisil regnede and wel go
uernede þe lande after Guen
tolen capitulo xxvjo.

And after þis Guento
len regnede his sone Sei
sel wel and worthi
ly gouernede þe lande and his
fader had done by forne him
and he regnede xv zere and
deide and lith att newe troye

Hou kyng regnede after Seisel

his fader and he bygatte Ky-
mor þat regned after. ca° xxvij°.

After Ceisel regned
his sone Kymor wel
and nobliche xix ȝere
in pees and Howan his so-
ne x ȝere and deide and lith
att Hey baldoun. ¶ How king
Morewith deide þorgh mescha-
unce þorgh a best for his wic-
kydnesse. capitulo. xxviij°.

After þis Howan reg-
nede Morwith and he
by come wyckyde &
so strene til att þe laste gret
veniaunce come to him. For
as he wente vppon a tyme
by þe see side he mette a gret
best þat was blac and horri-
ble and hidowse and he wen-
te þat hit had ben a whale
of þe see and bent an arwe-
blast and wolde haue slayn
þat beste wiþ a quarel but he
myȝt nouȝt smyte hit. ¶ And
whanne he had schotte alle
his quarell þe best anon co-
me to him in grete haste and
him devourede of life. and
so he deide for his wyckyd-
nesse þorgh veniaunce of god
after þat he had regned ix ȝere.

¶ Of Grandobodian þat was
Morewithus sone þat made þe
toun of Caunbrigge. ca° xxix°.

After þis Morewith was
dede þe Britouns crow-
ned Grandobodian his
sone and þis Grandobodian his
sone longe tyme regnede in
goodnesse & made temples
and townes. and þis Gran-
dobodian made þe toun of Caun-
brigge and þe toun of Grant-
ham and was wel by lovede
of riche and of pore. for he ho-
nourede þe riche and halpe þe
pore. þis Grandobodian had
iiij. sones. Artogaille, Hesidur,
Higanius and Petitur. and
whanne he had regnede xl
ȝere he deide and lith att Ne-
were Troye. ¶ Off Artogail-
le þat was Grandobodianus
sone how he was made king
and sith putt adoun for his
wyckydnesse. ca° xxx°.

After Grandobodian
regnede his sone Arto-
gaille v. ȝere. and he
by come so wickyd and so
strene. þat þe Britouns wol-
de nouȝt soffre him to be king
but putt him adoun and ma-
de Hesidur his broþer king &
he by come so good & merciable
þat men him callede king of
pitee. And whanne he had
regnede v. ȝere. he had so
pitee of his broþer Artogaille

þat was kyng bifore and
anon he forsoke his dignite &
toke his broþer þe croune azen
and made him kyng azens
alle þe Britouns wille. And
aftir ward þis Artogaill by
come as good of condiciouns
þat he was wel bylouede
of al þe lande. for he bycome
so debonere and free and dide
right and resoun to all man
of men and he regnede x zere
and deide and lith at Grant
ham. Tho was Elidor was ma
de kyng aftir þe deth of Arto
gaille his broþer. Cap[itulum] xxxi.

Aftir þe deth of Arto
gaille þe Britouns
crowned anoþer tyme
Elidour. but his two breþin
Vigenius and Peretur hadde
of him grete dispite and als
scorn. and ordeynede hem
selue for to werre vpon þe
kyng hir broþer. and so þei token
him and put him in to prisoun
þe secunde zere of his regne
and þei departid al Britaigne
bytwene hem two. but Vigenius
leuede but vij zere and tho
had Peretur al þe lande. and
he made þe toun of Pikeringe
and aftir deide þe secunde zere
of his regne and lith at Pike
ringe. Tho þe Britouns nomen
Elidor out of prisoun & made
him kyng þe þridde tyme. Ca[pitulum] xxxij.

And whenne þis Peti
tur was dede þe Bri
touns nome anon þat
Elidor and made him kyng
þe þridde tyme and so regnede
he in pees. xiiij zere and aftir
he deide and lith at Kaerleil.
Tho weren xxxiij kyngis regnede in
pees eche aftir oþer aftir þe deth
of Elidur. Cap[itulum] xxxiij.

Aftir þe deth of Helidour
regnede. xxxiij. kyngis
eueriche aftir oþer in pees
and wiþ oute eny longe tary
inge I schal telle hem alle. &
how longe euyche of hem reg
nede as þe story tellith. þe first
kyng of þo xxxiij. me callede
Gorbodia. and he regnede. xij.
zere. And aftir him regned Mor
gan ij. zere. And aftir him reg
nede Enmanus. vj zere. and aftir
him regnede Idwalan. viij. zere.
And aftir him regnede Rohugo
xi. zere. and aftir him regnede
Gogthen. xiij. zere. and aftir hy
regnede Katil. xv. zere. and aftir
him regnede Porrex. ij. zere.
And aftir him regnede Chereyn
xvij zere. and aftir him regnede
Coil xij zere. and aftir him reg
nede Fulgenus. xiiij. zere. and
aftir him regnede. Eldad. xx zere.

And aftir him regnede Andra
gie xviij. ȝere. And aftir him
regnede Vrian. v. ȝere. and aftir
him regnede Elinde. ij. ȝere. and
aftir him regnede Eldagan. xv.
ȝere. and aftir him regnede Cla
ten. xij. ȝere. and aftir him regned
Quirgnnd. viij. ȝere. and aftir hym
regnede Merian. vj. ȝere. and aftir
him regnede Bladaghe. iij. ȝere
and aftir him regnede Caph. j. ȝere.
and aftir him regnede Gan. ij. ȝere.
and aftir him regnede Seisel þe
king Blede. xxj. ȝere. and king Ca
bredh xj ȝere. And Archinal xiiij.
ȝere. and Eliol xxx ȝere. and Redin
gu. xxxij. ȝere. and Hertir v. ȝere.
and Hapir vj ȝere. and Carroy
. vij ȝere. and Digneill. iij. ȝere. and
Samuel. xxiiij. ȝere. And Rede
. ij ȝere. and Ely vij monthis &
þis Ely had iij sones. and Cassi
balam and Eneniron. Thow
Lud was made kyng aftir þe
deth of Ely his fader. ca. xxxiij.

Aftir þe deth of Ely reg
nede Lud his sone and
gouernede wel þe lande
and muche honoured good folke
And temprede and amendide
wickyde folk/ þis Lud loued mo
re to duelle att Troye þan in
any oþer place of þe lande wher
for þe name of nawe Troye
was laste. and þo was þe citee
callede Ludstan but þat name
is chaungid þorug variaunce of
tonges and now is callede London
And þis kyng made in þe citee
a fair gate. and callede it Lud
gate aftir his name and þe
folke of þe citee clepte it Loun
dres & whanne he had regned
xj ȝere he deide and lith att Lon
don. And he had ij ȝonge
sones Andragheu & Nennac
but þei cowþe noþer speke ne go
for ȝongþe. and þerfore þe Britons
chosen amonge hem a kniȝt þat me
callede Lud. þat was Cassibala
nus broþer and made him kyng
of Britaigne. Thow þe Britons
graunted to Cassibalam þat was
Luddis broþer þe lande in whos
tyme Julius Cesar come too ty
mes for to conquere þe lande
Capitulo. xxxv.

Aftir þe deth of kyng Lud
regnede his broþer Cas
sibalam and by come
a good man and muche by loued
of his Britouns so þat for his
goodnesse and curtesye þey gran
tid him þe reaume for ever more
to him and to his heires and þe
kyng of his goodnesse lete no
rissche worthiliche boþe sones
þat were Lud his broþers &
aftir made þe eldest come Erle
of Cornewayle and þat oþer Erle

of london & while þis kynge
Cassibalam regnede: come Iu
lius Cesar þat was Emperour
of Rome in to þis lande wiþ
a power of Romayns and wol
de haue had þis lande þorȝ
strengþe: but Cassibalam him
one come in batayle þorȝ help
of þe britonns and drof him out
of þis lande and he wente a
ȝene to Rome and assemblede
grete power anoþer tyme & come
aȝene in to þis lande for to ȝeue
batail to Cassibalam but he was
discumfitide þorȝ strengþes of þe
Brytonns and þorȝ helpe of þe
Erle of Cornewayle and of þe
Erle of london his broþer and þo
rȝ helpe of Gudyan kyng of
Scotlonde and Corband kyng
of northwalys and of Bretail
kyng of Southwalis and in þis
batayle was slayn Neimon þat
was Cassibalamis broþer wherfor
he made muche sorowe. And so
wente Iulius Cesar out of þis
lande with a fewe of Romayns
þat were lefte alif. And þo Cassi
balam wente aȝen to london &
made a feste vn to al his folke
þat þo had him holpe & whene
þat feste was done eche man
wente in to his owne cuntre.

Of þe debate þat was bitwe
ne Cassibalam and þe erle of lon
don and of þe truage þat was
paiede to Rome. Cap°. xxxvj.to

And after hit bifel þus
vppon a day þat þe gen
til men of þe kyngis hous
olde and gentil men of þe erles
housholde of london after mete
wente ifere for to play & þorȝ
debat þat aros among hem.
Euelyn þat was þe erles cosyn
of london quelde Herigles þat
was þe kyngis cosyn. wherfore
þe kyng swore þat Euelyn schul
de ben hongede: but þe erle of
london þat was Andrognus lord
wolde nouȝt suffren hit wher
fore þe kyng was wroth tow
ardis þe erle and þouȝt to him
distroye and priueliche þe erle
sente his to Iulius Cesar þat
he schulde come in to þis lande
for to helpe him and helpe him
avenge him vpon þe kyng: and
he wolde helpe him with alle
his myȝte. And when the
Emperour herde þis tydinge he was
ful glad. and ordeyned a stronge
power & come aȝen þe þridde
tyme in to þis lande and þe erle
of london halpe him wiþ vij. ml.
men. and at þe þridde tyme was
Cassibalam ouercome and discom
fitede and made pees to þe Emperour
for iij. ml. pounde of siluer ȝeldinge
bi ȝere for truage for þis lande

for euer more & after half a ȝere
passede þe Emperour wente to Ro
me and þe Erle of london wiþ
him for he durste nouȝt abide
in þis lande and after Cassibalan
regnede xvij ȝere in pees and
þo deyde þe xxvij ȝer of his
regne and liþ att ȝorke. How
þe lordis of þe lande after þe deth
of Cassibalam for encheson þat
he had non heir made Andrage
kyng Capitulo xxxvij^o

After þe deth of Cassibalan
for as muche as he had
non heir of his bodye
þe lordes of þe lande by comune
assent crounede Andragen erle
of Cornewayle and made him
kyng. and he regnede wel and
worthily and was a good man
and wel gouernede þe lande and
whenne he had regnede viij ȝer
he deide and liþ att london.

Off kymbalyn þat was Andrage
his sone a good man and wel
gouernede þe lande Ca^o xxxviij^o

After þe deth of Andrage
regnede kymbelyn his
sone þat was a good man
and wel gouernede þe lande in
muche prosperite and in pees alle
his lyues tyme. And in his tyme
was born Ihesus Crist oure sauiour
of þat swete virgine marie.
þis kyng kembelyn had ij sones
Guyder and Arvirager good knyȝtes
and worthy & whenne þis kyng
kembalyn had regnede xxij ȝer
he deide and liþ att london.

Off kynge Guyder þat was kem
balins sone þat wolde nouȝt
paie þe trybage of Rome for the
lande þat Cassibalam had grun
tide and how he was slayne of
a Romayn. Cap^o xxxix^o

And after þe deth of þis
kembalyn regnede Gui
der his sone a good man
and a worthi and he was of so
hie herte þat he wolde nouȝt
paie to Rome þat truage þat kyng
Cassibalam had grauntede vnto
Iulius Cesar. wherfore þe Emp
our þat was þo þat me callid
Claudius Cesar was sore annoy
ede and ordeynede a grete pow
er of Romayns and com into
þis lande for to conquere þe
truage þorouȝ strengþe and haue
hit of þe kyng. But þe kynge
Guyder & Arvirager his broþer ga
derede a grete host & pere of Britons
and ȝaf batail to þe Emperour Clau
dius & quelde of Romayns
grete plente. The Emperour had
afterwarde þat me callede Ha
mon þat saw þat hire peple
was faste slayn. priuelich he
caste a wey his owne armes &
nome þe armes of a dede Bryton

And armed him with his armure
and come in to batail to þe kyng
and sayde in þis maner. were beth
of good herte for goddis love. for
þe Romayns þat beth 3oure ene
myes anon schullen ben slayn
and discumfitid euchone.
And þe kyng 3af no kepe ne rew
arde to his speche for encheson
of þe armes þat he hadde oppon
him and wende hit had ben a
Britoun. but þe traitour and hel
de him next þe kyng. and prive
liche vnder þe schulders of his
armes he smot þe kyng wher
fore he was ded and fel dow
vn to þe erthe. when Armoger
sawe his broþer ded: he cast away
his armys & nom to him his bro
þer armes. and come in to þe batail
among þe Britons and bade
hertly for to fyghte and fast ley
adoun þe Romayns and for þe
armes and for þe armes þey we
de þat hit had ben kyng Gynder
þat erst was slayn þat þey wist
nou3t. And þo gonne the Britons
hertly fyghte and quelde the
Romayns. So at þe laste þe Emperour
forsoke þe felde and fleye as faste
as þey my3te in to þe citee of
Wynchester. and faste þerto Ha
mon þat had quelde þe kynge
faste anon gan for to flee with al
þe hast þat he my3te & Armoger

þe kyngis broþer pursuede hym
ful fersly with a fers herte and
drof him vn to þe watir. and þe
he toke him. and anon smote of
bothe hede and hondes & feet
and hewe þe bodye al to peces
and þo caste hit in to þe watir.
wherfore þat water was called
Hamonus Havene and afterwarde
þer was made a faire town þat
3it standith þat is called South
ampton. and afterwarde Arma
ger wente to Wynchester for to
seke Claudius Cesar þe Emperour
and þe Armager him toke.
And Claudius þe Emperour þoru3
conseil of his Romayns þat wiþ
him were lefte alife: made pees
with Armager in þis maner as
3e schullen here. þat is to seyn
how þat Claudius þe Emperour
schulde 3eve to Armager Genuen
his faire doughter for to have
to wyfe. so þat þis lande fro þat
tyme afterwarde schulde ben in þe
Emperours power of Rome vppon
suche couenaunt þat nevir after
warde non Emperour of Rome
schulde take non oþer truage
of þis lande but oneliche feaute
and so þey were acordid. And
vppon þis couenauntz Claudius
Cesar wente to Rome for his
doughter Genuen and whenne
sche was come Claudius Cesar

ȝaf hire to Arviragus to wyf. &
Arviragus spousede hire att Lon
don with miche solempnite
and myrthe and þo was Arvira
gus crownede and made kyng
of Brytaigne. ¶ Off kyng Arvira
gus in whas time Seint Petir
prechide in Antioche wiþ other
apostles in diuerse cuntrees. Capitulo
quadragesimo.

This kyng Arviragus reg
nede wel and worthi
ly and þe lande gou
nede and Claudius Cesar in re
membraunce of þis accorde &
for ioyaunce and for honour of his
doughter. made in þis lande a
fayre toun and a fayre castelle
and lete calle þe toun after
his name Clauceastre þat now
is callede Glouceastre. and when
þis was alle done þe Emperour
nome his leue and þo wente a
ȝene to Rome. and Arviragus
þo was kyng and gouernede þe
lande wel and nobly alle his
lyf tyme. ¶ And þis Arviragus
gete a sone on his wyf þat
callede was Westmer. And
whiles þat þis Arviragus reg
nede. Seint Peter prechid in Antio
che and þer he made a noble
chirche in þe whiche he sette
first in his chayre and þer he
dwellede vij. ȝere. after wente
to Rome and was made pope
til þat Nero þe Emperour lete him
martire and þo prechid openly
alle þe apostles in diuerse landes
þe righte fay. ¶ And whanne
Arviragus had regnede xxviij.
ȝere he deide and lith at London

¶ How kyng Westmer ȝaf to Berin
ger an ilande for lete. and þere
þis Beringer made þe toun of
Berwyke. Capitulo xlj.mo

And after this Arviragus
regnede his sone West
mer a good man and
a worthy of body and wel gou
nede þe lande. ¶ Hit byfel so
þat tydinges com to him vppon
a day. þat þe kyng Rodrike of
Gastoigne was come in to þis
lande with an huge nombre
of peple and was dwellyng
in Staynesmore. and whanne
kyng Westmer herde þo tydin
ges he lete assemble an huge
ost of Brytouns and come to þe
kyng Rodrik and ȝaf him batay
le. and kyng Westmer quellede
Rodrik with his owne hondes
in pleyn batayle. ¶ And whe
kyng Rodrikes men sawe þat
hire lord was ded. þey ȝolden
hem alle to þe kyng Westmer
and bycomen his men for euer
more. and he ȝaf hem a cuntre
þat was for lete wheire in þey

myȝt duelle and þeryn þey
wente and duellede þere alle
here lyues tyme. and ix. c. me
þere were of hem and no mo
lefte alyue att þat batayle //

Thys gormoun and þe prince
was callede Beringer: and ano
ne bygan a toun þat þei myȝt
þerin duelle and haue restet
and lete calle þe toun Berwyk
up twede. and þere þei duelled
and bycomen riche but þey
had none wymmen amonges
hem and þe Britouns wolde
nouȝt ȝeue here douȝtres to
þe straungers. wherfore þey
wente on þe see in to Irlande
and bouȝte wiþ hem wym
men and hem to spousede:
but þe men couþe nouȝt vnder
stonde þe langage ne þe speche
of þe wymmen. nor þe wym
men of þe men: and þerfore
þey spekyn to gedre as Scottis
& after warde þorw chaungyng
of here langagis in alle ffraunce
þey were callede Scottis &
or schuller þat folke of þat
contre for enemyes:

How kyng Westmer lete arere a ston in þe cuttyng of Westmerlande þere þat he slow Rodrik & þe Rede on firste bouryinge. ca° xlij°. //

And after þis bataile
þat is aboue saide
whenne Rodrik was ded kyng
Westmer in remembraunce of
his victorie: lete arere þere be
sides þe waye a grete stone in
hye: and ȝitt it stant and euer
more schal stande: and lete
graue in þe stone letters þat
þus sayde: Here þe kyng West
mer of Britaigne quelde in þis
place Rodrik his enemy. And
þis Westmer was þe fyrste
man þat made towne & hous
in Engelonde: and att þat ston
bigynnet Westmerlande þat
Westmer lete calle after his
owne name. and Westmer
had so done he duellede alle
his lyf tyme in þat contre of
Westmerlande for he louede
þat contre more þan any oþer
contre. and whenne he hadde
regnede xxv. ȝere he deide &
liþ at Karlail. //

Of kynge Coyl þat was Westmeres sone þat helde his lande in pees his lyf tyme. Cap°. xliij°. //

After þis kyng Westmer
regnede his sone Coyl
a good man & a worthy
and of good condiciouns. and
wel gouerned his lande and of
alle men he had loue & pees
and in his tyme was neuer con
tak. debatte ne werre in Bry
taigne. and he regnede and.

was kyng in pees al his lifes
tyme. and whenne he hadde ben
kyng .xl. ȝer he deyde and lith
att ȝorke. ¶ How kyng Lucie reg-
nede after Coel his fader þat was
a good man and after he bicome
cristene. Capitulo .xliiij.

After kyng Coel regnede
Lucie his sone þat was
a good man to god and
to alle þe peple. he sente to Ro-
me to apostle Elenthie þat þo
was and sayde þat he wolde by-
come a cristene man and resceyue
Baptisme in þe name of god. and
turne to þe rightte bileue. ¶ Elen-
thie sent .ij. legattis þat me cal-
lede Pagan and Elibayne unto þis
lande and baptised þe kyng and
all his meyne. and after wente
fro toun to toun and baptised the
peple til att þat lande was bap-
tised. and þis was in þe .C. lvj.
ȝer after þe incarnacioun of Ihesu
crist. and þis kynge Lucie made þo
in þis lande .ij. erchebisshopriches.
on att Caunterbery anoþer att ȝorke
and oþer menye bysshoppis þat ȝitt
ben in þis lande. ¶ And whenne
þese .ij. legates had baptized al
þat lande þey ordeynede prestis
for to baptisen children and for to
make þe sacrament. and after they
wente aȝene to Rome. And the
kynge dwellede in his lande &
regnede wiþ muchel honoure
.xiij. ȝer and after deide & lithe
att Glouceter. ¶ How þis land
was longe with oute a kynge &
how þe Britouns chosen a kyng.

This kyng Lucie ¶ Ca. xlv.to
had non eyr of his body
bygetene þat was after-
warde grete harme and sorowe
to þe lande. ffor after this king
Lucies deth non of þe grete of
þe lande wolde suffren anoþer
to ben kynge but lyuede in
werre and in debatte amonges
hem fyfty ȝer with oute king
but þo hit byfel afterwarde þat
a grete prince com fro Rome in-
to þis lande þat me callede
Seuerye nouȝt for to werre.
but for to saue þe riȝte of Ro-
me. ¶ But neþeles he had
nouȝt dwellede half a ȝere in
þis lande. þat þe Britouns ne
quellede him. Whene þo of Ro-
me wiste þat Seuere was
so slayn. þey sente anoþer
grete lorde in to þis lande
þat me callede Allek þat was
a strong man and myghtye
of bodye and dwellede in
this lande longe tyme and
dede moche sorowe to the
Britouns. So þat after for þire
malice þei chosen hem a kyng
amonges hem þat me clepede

Asklepades and assemblede
a grete ost of þe Brytouns &
wente to london to Oeche-
alles. and þo þei founden
hym and quelde him & alle
his felawes þat were wiþ
him. but on of his felawes
þat me callede Walon de-
fendid him fersly & fouȝte
longe wiþ þe Brytouns but
at þe laste he was discumfited
and þe Brytouns nome hym
and bounde handes & feet
and caste him in to a water
wherfore þat water after ward
was called euermore Walbrok.
Tho regnede þis Asklepades
in quiete til on of his Erles
þat me callede Coel makede
a faire toun aȝens þe kyngis
wille and lete calle þe toun
Colchestre after his name wher-
fore þe kyng was ful wroþ
and þouȝte destroye þe Erle
and bygan to werre vppon hym
and brouȝte grete power and
ȝaf bataile to þe erle. and þe
Erle defendid hym fersly wiþ
his power and slough the
kyng him self in þat bataile
and þo was Coel crounede
kyng & made of þis londe.
This Coel regnede & gouernede
þe reaume wel and nobly for
he was a noble man and wel

by louyde amonge þe Bry-
touns. Whanne þo of Rome
herde that Asklepades was
slayn þey were wondir glad
and sente anoþer grete prince
of Romayns þat me callede
Constance and he come to þe
kyng Coel for to chalange þe
truage þat was woned be pay-
de to Rome. And þe kyng an-
swerde wel and wysliche and
sayde þat he wolde paie to
Rome al þat right and reson
wolde wiþ good wille. and
so þey acordid þe wiþ good
wille and wiþ oute any con-
tak. and boþe þey duellede
to gedres in loue. ¶ This king
Coel ȝaf his douȝter Eleyne to
Constance for to haue hire
for his spouse þat was boþe
faire. wise and good and wel
lettrede and þis Constance
spousede hire þere wiþ muchel
honour & hit byfell sone af-
terwarde þat þis kyng Coel dey-
de in þe ȝere of his regne xiij.
and liþ at Colchestre enterred.

¶ Off kyng Constance þat was
a Romayn þat was chosen
kyng after þe deth of Coel
for as muche þat he hadde
spousede Eleyne þat was
kynge Coeles doughter.
Capitulo . xlv.

After þis kyng Coel Con
stance was made kyng
and gouernede fer as
muche as he had spousede
kyng Coeles doughter þat was
eir of þe lande þe whiche
Constance regnede and wor
thily gouernede þe lande and
he bygate on his wyf Eley
ne a sone þat me callede Con
stantyne and þis kyng bare
trewe fay and trewly dede
to hem of Rome al his lyf &
whanne he hadde regnede
xv zer he deide and lith att
zork. How Constantyn þat
was kyng Constaunces sone
And þe sone of seint Eleyne
gouernede & rewlede þe lande
and was Emperour of Rome. Ca° lvij

After kyng Con C. xlviij.
staunces deth Constan
tyn his sone of seint
Eleyn þat founde þe crois
in þat holy londe and how
Constantyn bicome Emperour
of Rome. That byfel so in þat
tyme þer was an Emperour att
Rome a sarasyne a tyraunt þat
me callede Maxence þat putt
to þe deth alle þat byleuede
in god and destroyed holy cher
che by all his power and
slough cristen men þat he
myȝt fynde and amonge all
oþer he lete martire seint Kat
ine and menye oþer cristen
peple þat had drede of deth
þat fledde and comen into þis
lande to kyng Constantyn &
tolde him of þe sorowe þat
Mayence dede to al cristiente
wher of Constantyne had pite
and sorowe made and assem
blede a grete ost and a grete
power and wente on to Rome
and nome þe citee and quelde
alle þat þerinne were misbele
uede þat he myȝt fynde and
tho was he made Emperour and
was a good man and gouernede
him so wel þat alle londes
to him were attendaunt for to
ben vnder his gouernayle.

And þis cruel tyraunt May
ence þat þo was in þe lande
of Grece þo he herde þis ty
dinges he bycome wode and
sodeynliche deide and so he
ended his lyf. Whanne Con
stantyne wente fro þis lan
de to Rome he nome with hym
his moder Eleyne for þe mu
chel wisdome þat sche couþe
and þre of grete lordis þat he
most louede þat on me callid
Joel. anoþer me callede Trahne
and þe þridde Marhin and toke
alle his lande to kepe vnto
þe Erle of Cornewayle þat me

callede Ottoman. Anon as þis
Ottoman wiste þat his lord was
dwellynge att Rome, he ceisede
alle þe lande in to his hande &
þerwith dede alle his wille and
ge hye and lowe. And tho helde
hym for kyng. ¶ Whene this
tydinge come to Constantyn þe
emperour he was wonder wroþ
towarde þe erle Ottoman and
sente Dabeyne with xij. m[ille] me[n]
for to destroye þe erle for his fal
senesse and aryuede att Portis
mowthe. ¶ And whenne Otto
man wiste þat he assemblede a
grete powere of Britouns and
descomfitede Dabne & Dabeyne
fledde þennis in to Scotlonde &
ordeynede þe grete power and
com azen in to this lande for to
zeue bataile anoþer tyme to Otto
man ¶ Whenne Ottoman herde
telle þat he assemblede a grete
powere and come towardis Dab
ne as muche as he myzte wiþ
ij. hostes metten vpon Stayns
more and strongeliche smyten
to gaderes and þo was Ottoman
discomfitede and fledde þens
in to Norwaye. And Dabne sei
sede al þe lande in to his hande
townes castell as muche as
þey þe had ¶ And Oppenes
Ottoman come azen fro Norwey
with a grete powere and slowe
Dabne and ceisede azen al þe
lande in to his hande and drof
out alle þe Romayns and was
þo made kyng and regnede.

How Maximian þat was þe emperours
cosyn of Rome espousede Ottom
ans doughter and was kyng ca[pitulum]

This kyng Otto ¶ lxvij.
man gouernede þe lande
wel and nobly but he
had non heir saf a doughter þat
was a zonge childe þat he louede
as muche as his lyf and for as
muche þat he was sike and was
vp poynt of deth and myghte no
lenger regne he wolde haue
made on of his nevews to haue
ben kyng þe whiche was a noble
knyzt and a stronge man þat me
callede Conan Meridok and he
schulde haue kepte þe kynges
doughter and haue mariede hir
whenne tyme had ben. But þe
lordes of þe lande wolde nouzt
suffren it but zaf hir councele
to ben mariede to som hie man
of grete honour and þanne myzte
sche haue all hyr wille and þe
councel of þe emperour Constan
tin hir lord. And att þis councel
þey acordid. And chose þo Cador
erle of Cornewayle for to wen
de to þe emperour for to don þis
message and he nome þe wey
and wente to Rome & tolde

þe emperour· þis tydinge wel &
wysliche and þe Emperour sent
þo in to þis londe with hym
his owene cosyn þat was his
uncle sone a nobil knyght and
a stronge þat me callede Maxi
mian and he spousede Octouianus
doughter and was crouned king
of this londe ¶ How Maximi
an þat was þe emperours cosyne
conquerede þe londe of Armorica
and ȝaf hit to Conan Meridok ca° lixmo

This kyng Maxi-
mian bicome so ryal þat
he þouȝte conquere the
londe of Armorican for þe grete
richesse þat he herde telle þat
was in that londe· so þat he nome
þe beste man þat was of worthy
nesse kniȝt squyer ne non oþer
man þat he ne toke with him to
grete damage and harme to all
þe londe· for he lefte att home by
hinde him no man to kepe the
londe· but nome hem with hym
fro þis londe· xxxti. ml. kynghtis
þat were doughty mennes bodi
es and wente on in to þe londe
of Armorican and þei slough þe
kynge þat me callede Imbal
and conquerede al þe londe·
¶ And whenne he had so done
he callede Conan and seyde·
For as muche as þe kyng Octo
man wolde haue made ȝow
kyng of Britaigne and þorugh
me ȝe were lette and destour
bled þat ȝe were nouȝt kyng
I ȝeue ȝow al þis londe of Armo
rican and ȝow þerof make king
And for as muche as ȝe beth
a Britoun and ȝoure men also
and ben comyn from Britaig
ne y wil þat þis londe haue
þe same name· and no more
ben callede Armorican but ben
callede litel Britaigne and þe
londe fro whennes ȝe beth co
men schal be callede muchel
Britaigne· and so schul men
knowe þat o Britaigne fram þat
oþer· ¶ Conan Meridok þanked
him hendely and so was he ma
de kyng of litil Britaigne and
whenne all this was done
Maximian wente þennus to
Rome and þer was þo made
Emperour after Constantyn·
Conan Meridok dwellede in þe
litel Britaigne with muchel
honour· and lete ordeigne þe
ploughmen of þe londe for to
erie þe londe to harewe hit
and sowe· and feffede hem
alle richelye after þat þei were.
And for as muche þat kynge
Conan ne non of his knyȝtis
ne non of his oþer peple wol
de nouȝt take wyues of þe na
cion of Fraunce· he þo sente

in to þe grete Brittaigne to þe
ile of cornewayle þat men cal
lede dionothe þat chees þoruȝ
out al þe londe xi ml of may
dens þat is to seyn viij ml for
þe mene peple and iij ml for þe
grettest lordes þat schulde be
spouse. And whanne diono
the had vndirfonge þis comman
dement he lete þo seche þoruȝ
out alle grete Brittaigne as
many as þe nombre comyþ to
for no man durste wiþstande
his commaundement for as mu
che as alle þe londe was take
him to warde and kepe to do
ne al þing þat him þo lykede.
And whanne alle þe mayde
nes were assemblede he lete
hem come by fore him to london
and lete ordeyne for hem schip
pis hastely as muche as hem
nedid to þat viage. And nome
his owne doughter þat men callid
Vrsula. þat was þe fayrest crea
ture þat eny man wiste. and
wolde haue yeue hir to king
Conan þat schulde haue spou
sede hir and made hir que
ne of þe londe. but sche had
made promesse to god a vowe
of chastite þat hire fader wist
but nouȝt ne no man ellis
þat was lyuynge vpon erþe

How Vrsula and xi ml of may
dens þat weren in here com
panye wente towarde litel
Brittaigne and alle were mar
tirede att Cologne cal. l mo

This Vrsula chees in to
hire companie xi ml
of maydenes þat of
alle of sche was lady and
maystresse. and alle þey wente
in to þe schippis att o tyme in
þe watir þat men callith the
Tamyse. and commaunded hir
kyn and alle hire frendes to
almyghti god and seilede
forth towarde litel Brittaigne
But whanne þey were comen
in þe hye see. a stronge tem
past aros as hit was goddis
wille and Vrsula wiþ here
schippes and hire companye
were drenen and þo xi ml
maydenes towardes hiund
londe þoruȝ tempeste and ar
ryuede in þe hauene of þe cite
of Cologne. Þe kyng of the
londe þat men callede Corban
was þo in þe cite and whan
he wyste þe tydingis þat so
manye fayre maydenes wer
þere arryuede he nome Elga
his broþer and oþer of his hoo
olde wiþ him. and wente to
þe schippis to see þat fayre com
panye. And whanne he sawe
hem so fayr he and his companye

wolde haue hem oslayn and
bynomen hir maydenhode.
But Vrsula þat good mayde
counceyled prayede weynede
and taughte hem þat were hir
felawes þat þey schulde defen
de hem with alle hire myght.
and rather suffren deth þan suf
fren hire body be defoulede
So þat alle þe maydenes by
come so stedefaste in god þat
þey defendyd hem þorgh his
grace. so þat non of hem had
power to done hem any schame
wherfore þe kyng Gowan was
so sore anoyede þat he for
wrath lete slee hem euerycho
ne anon ryghte. And so were
alle þe maydenes martyrede
for þe loue of god and liggith
att Cologne. How kyng Gow
an come for to destroye this
lande and how a man of grete
power þat me callede Gracian
defendid þe lande. Ca°. li°.

Whenne al þis was do
ne. kyng Gowan þat
was a Sarasyne called
his broþer Melga and seide to hym
þat he schulde gon to conquere
þe lande þat alle þo fair may
denes were borne in. And he
ordeynede þo a grete power
of Peyntes of Denmark of
Orkeneye and of Norweye &

and þei comen in to this land
and brende townes and slow
folke and caste adoun cher
ches. and houses of religion
and robbede þe lande in leng
the and in brede. and putt to
deth alle þo þat wolde nought
forsake þe ryghte bileue and
cristen dome. for as muche as
þer was no man in þe lande
þat myghte hem helpe or defen
de. ffor þe kyng maximian
hadde taken with him alle
þe worthy men whenne he
wente to conquere litel Bry
taigne. and in þe same tyme
þat ȝe here now telle. was
Seynt Albon martirde þorgh
þe woode tyraunt Diocician
in þe same place where in
is now an abbay made of sei
seynt Albon. whyles þat he
was a paynyme but he con
uertid him towarde god þorgh
þe predicacion of a grete clerk
and a wyse. þat callede Am
ciball þat was herberghede
aught in his house. and this
was after þe incarnacion of
Ihesu crist. ij. C. iiij. xx. vj. ȝer and
men schullen vnderstonde þat
Seint Albon suffrede his
martirdome bifore þat seint
Amunide was martirede &
þerfore is seint Albon callede

þe ferst martir of Engelonde
þis Gwannes broþer and his
folke þat were Sarazins went
þorouȝ out þe lande and distroy
ed al þing þat þey founde and
noþing þei ne sparede. ¶ Whe
þis tydinge come to Rome how
þat kyng Gowan had by gone
for to distroye þis lande. The
Emperour and þe of Rome sente
a stronge man and of grete
power þat me callede Gracian
with .xxiiij. þousande men
wel fyȝtynge for to caste out
Sarazins of þis lande and
alle þey assemblede att þe ferst
meting. ¶ Maximian myȝte
noȝt come him self for as
muche as he was chosen
emperour after þe deth of Con
stantyn þat was seint Eleyns
sone. ¶ Whenne þis Gracian
was assemblede with his ost
he lete aspye priueliche wher
þe kyng Gowan myȝte be
founde and com vppon hem
sodeynliche as þey laye in
here beddis and disconfited
hem and slowe hem in here
beddis euerichone þat none
of hem ascapede. saf Gowan
þat fledde with muche so
rowe in to his cuntre. ¶ So
ne after it byfel þat Maximian
was slayn att Rome þorouȝ
tresoun. and whenne Gracian
wiste þe tydinge he lete coroun
him kyng of þis lande.

*¶ How Gracian made him king
whenne Maximian was slayn
and afterwarde þe Britouns
quelde him for his wyckyde
nesse. Capitulo .lij.*

This Gracian whenne
he bigan for to regne
he bicome so wycked
and so fers and so muche so
rowe wrouȝte to þe Britouns
þat þey slough him amonge
hem. ¶ Þo king Gowan had
vndirstonde þat Gracian was
do to deth he assemblede a
grete power and come aȝen
in to þis lande. and ȝif he
had erst done grete harme þo
dede he muche more. for þo
distroyed he al þis lande &
alle þe cristene peple þat was
in muchel Britaigne so þat
no man was so hardy for to
nempne god. and ho þat so
dede. anon he was put to
stronge deth. ¶ But þe bys
schop of london þat was þo
þat me callede Gosselyne sta
rede and sente þennes to
hem of Rome to seche socour
for to helpe distroye þe Sara
zines þat had distroyed þis
lande. ¶ And þe Romaynes

Sayden þat þey had ben so ofte
annoyede for here sendynge after
folke in to Brittaigne al for to hel
pe þe Brittonns and þei wolde
no more so done. And so þe bys
schop Gosselyn wente þennes wit
oute any socour of helpe and þo
wente he to þe kyng of litil Bri
taigne þat me callede Aldroye
and þis was þe þridde kynge
after Gowan Miredok as by fore
is saide ¶ Þe bysschop prayede
þis kyng Aldroie of socour and
of helpe. Þe kyng had grete pitee
in herte whenne he had herde
how þe bysschop ferde and how
þat þe cristen men were slayn
in grete Brittaigne þorgh paynyms
and Sarazines and he grauntyd
hym Constantin his broþer him for
to helpe wiþ power of folke &
hem dede araie hors armure &
schippes and alle þinge þat hem
nedid to þat viage ¶ And whe
alle þing was redy he callede
þe bysschop and to him sayde.
I take ȝow here to helpe and so
cour Constantin my broþer vpon
þis couenant: þat if god ȝif þy
grace þe paynymes and Sara
sines to schende and discomfite
þat þanne ȝe make him kyng
of þe lande and þe bisschop hit
grauntede with good wille.
Constantyn and þe bisschop nome

x Conan

lene þo of þe kynge Aldroye &
bitoke him god. And nome here
men .xij. m. and wente in to her
schippes and sayleden towardes
þe grete Brittaigne and arryued
in Tottenesse ¶ Whenne the
Brittonns herde þe tydingis þat
to hem com socour þey were
strongelich holpen: and ordey
nede hem an huge nombre of
peple. And come to hem & hem
vndyrfongen with muchel honour
Gowan anon as he wyste of þis
þing he assembled alle þe Sa
rasyns and come aȝens hem &
ȝaf batayle. And Constantine
slow him with his owene
hande. And alle þo oþer Sarasyns
were discumfited and slayne
þat non ascapede. But þo þat
conuertede vn to god. ¶ How
Constantine þat was þe kingis
broþer of litel Brittaigne was
crowned kyng of þe muchel
Brittaigne for his worthinesse
Capitulo .lvj.

Anon after þe bataille
alle þey wente to Lon
don and crowned þere
Constantyn. And made hym
kyng of þis lande and þe bysschop
Gosselyne sette þe crowne vpon
his heuede. And anoyntede hym
as fallith to a kyng for to ben.
And so by gan cristendome thro

kyng Constantyne whanne he
was crowned anone after he
spoused his wyf þour3 conceile
of þe Brytouns and he bigatte
iij sones on hir þe firste was
called Constance þat oþer Aur-
lambros and þe þridde Vter.
¶ Constance þe eldest broþer whenne
he come to age he made him a
monke att Wynchester. Constan
tine hire fader was slayn þour3
tresoun. for hit bifelle vpon a
tyme þat a Peghte come to hym
vpon a day in message as hit
were and sayde þatt he wolde
speke with þe kyng priueliche in
counceil. þe kynge lete voide
his chambre of þe men þat were
with inne and þo abide þer no
mo but þe kynge and þe Peghte
and made a countenaunce as þey
he wolde speke with þe kynge
in his ere and þer he quelde
him with a longe knyf & after
wente queyntely out of the
chambre in to anoþer chambre
and so att þe laste no man wiste
where he was by come. whenne
þe kynges men hit wiste þatt
her lord was so dede they
made sorwe so grete þey mist
al what done. for as muche as
his ij sones Aurelambros and
Vter weren so 3onge þatt non
of hem my3ten ben kynge

and þe iij broþer was monke
att Wynchester as is saide byfor-
ne. But Vortiger þat was
erle of Westsexe þou3t priuely-
che in his herte þour3 queyn-
tise to ben kyng and wente
to Wynchester þer þat Constan-
ce was monke and to hym
sayde. ¶ Constance quod he
3oure fader is dede and 3our
two breþern þat ben with Gos-
selyn þe bysshop of london to
norysshe. ben so 3onge þat non
of hem may be kynge. wherfore
y conceyle þat 3e forsake
3oure abit and comyth with
me. and y schal don so to þe
Brytouns þat 3e schulle ben
made kyng.

¶ Of Constance
þat was kyng Constantinus
sone þat was monke att Wyn
chester and how he was made
kyng after his fadres deth þour3
counceil of Vortiger þat was
erle of Westsexe for as much
as Aurelambros and Vter his
two breþern weren but of 3onge
age. and Vortiger lete him slee
to be kyng him self. ca. lxiij.

Thus Vortiger counceyled
þis Constance so
muche til he forsoke
his habit and wente with
him. and anon after he was
crowned and made kyng by

assent of þe Britonis · þis
kyng Constance whenne he
was made kyng & crouned
he wiste ne knewe but litil
of þe world ne couthe no
þing as knyȝthode arade · he
made Vortiger his maister
and his chef conseiller and
ȝaf him alle his power for to
ordeigne and do as muche as
to þe reaume pteynede so þt
him self noþinge entmelled
but onelich bare þe name of
of king. Whenne Vortiger sawe þt
he had al þe londe in his war
de and gouernaile att his ow
ne wille · he þouȝte a p̄uee
tresoun · and þouȝte to slee
Constance þe kyng þat he
myȝte him self be crowned
and made kyng and regne
and sete sende after a hundred
knyȝtes of Pehtes þe wor
thiest of al þe londe and hem
helde with him to duelle wt
No
him as to ben kepers of his
bodye as he wolde wende
þorouȝ þe londe to ordeigne
þinges þat pteynede to a
kyng · and þis Vortiger honour
ede so muche þo · c · knyȝtis
and so muche ȝaf hem of gold
and silver and so riche robes
all ȝere here and oþer noble
plente where fore þei helde
him more lord þan þey deden
þe kyng · and Vortiger tolde
hem if þat he moste ben king
he as hit were þorouȝ tresoun
he wolde make him richeste
of þe londe · So att þe laste þo
þurȝ grete ȝiftis þat he had
ȝeue largely · þey ȝede þorouȝ
þe court · þat Vortiger were
better worthy ben kyng than
Constance · wherfore Vortiger
made semblaunt as he had
ben wroth and departed þens
fro þe court and said he most
gon elles where for þinge
þat he had to done and so þe
traitours ȝede for encheson
þat þey schulde slean hym
þat is to seyn Constance.
Whenne þis Vortiger was gon
hit by fell sone after þat þe
hundred knyȝtis of pehtes
breken þe dores of þe kinges
chaumbre and þer þey him slow
and smyten of his heuede
and bare hit to Vortiger þere
þat he duellede · & whenne
Vortiger sawe þat heuede he
wepte ful tenderly wt his
eyȝe and neþeles he was
sum del glad of his deth · &
anon (sete) lete take þo hun
dred knyȝtis of pehtes and
bynde her handes by hinde
hem and ladde hem to london

and þo þey were dampnede
to deth as false tretours and
anon after alle þe Brytouns
of þe lande by commune assent
crounede þer Vortiger and
made him kinge of þe lande

¶ How þe wardeynes þat had þe
children to kepe þat were Con
stantyns sones to kepe ladde he
to litel Britaigne for þe treson
and falsenesse of Vortiger ca° l.v.to

This kynge Vor
tiger whanne he was
crounede þo þat had
ii. children in kepinge Aurila
bros and Uter þorugh ordinaunce
of Gosselyn þat was bisshop of
london att his deth dorst nouzt
dwelle in þe lande with the
children: but lad hem to the
kynge of litil Brittaigne for as
muche as he þo wiste þe treson
of Vortiger þat þo was made
kyng þorugh wham Constance
hir broþer was slayn wherfore
þo hundred knyztis of Pehtes
were put to þe deth and bere
alle þe blame as þouz Vortiger
had nouzt wiste þerof nor þerto
consentide and so þe kepers of
þo ii. children dradden leste
Vortiger wolde putt hem to
deth þorugh his tresoun and fal
snesse as he had done hire
brother bifore. And þerfor þey
were lad ouer in to litel Bry
taigne and þe kyng hem re
ceyuede with muchel honour
and lete hem to norisshe. and
þo þey dwellede til þei bicome
faire knyztis and stronge and
fers. and þouzten euere to ben a
vengede vpon þe deth of Con
stance hir broþer whanne þey
sawe hir tyme and so þei de
den as ʒe shulle here telle
afterward. ¶ But was nouzt
longe after þat þe tidinge ne
come ouer þe se to þe kynrede
of þe hundred knyztis of þe
Pehtes þat were dampnede
and put to þe deth þorugh Vorti
ger in þis land þerfore þei were
wonderly wroth and sworen þat
þei wolde ben avengede of hir
kynnes deth and comen in to þis
lande with a grete power and
robbeden in menye places &
qualde and slowe alle þe peple
as þey myzte. ¶ Whane Vor
tiger hit wiste he made much
sorowe and sore was annoyede
And in another partie also tidinge
come to him þat Aurilambros
and Uter his broþer ordeynede
hem and assemblede a gret host
for to come in to muchel Bry
taigne: þat is to sayn in to þis
lande to ben avengede of Con
stance hir broþeres deth. or þat

in on half and in þat oþer he was brouȝt in to so moche sorowe þat he nyste wheþer to wende.

How Engist and xj þousand men come in to þis lande to whom Vortiger ȝaf a place þat callede is Thwongcastell. capitul lxjto

And sone after þis sorowe tydinges come to Vortiger þat a grete navye of straungers were arryvede in the cuntre of Kent. but he wiste nouȝt whannes þai were ne wheþer þay were come. The king sente anone a messanger þeder þat some of hem schulde come and speke with him for to wete what folke þay weren and what þay axede and in to what cuntre þay wolde gon. Þe weren ij breþeren princes and maystres of þat strange companye þat on me callede Engyst. and þat oþer Hors. Engist wente to þe kyng and tolde to him curtesely wherfore they were þe arryvede in his lande and seyde sire we ben of a cuntre þat callede is Saxoyne þat is þe lande of Germayne wher in is so moche sorowe þat þe peple be so moche þat þe lande may hem nouȝt sustene ne suffise. þe maystres and princes þat haven þe lande to governe and rewle schulle done come by fore hem men and wymmen þat boldest þat ben amonge hem for to fiȝte þat beste mowe travaille in to diverse landes. & so þay schul hem ȝeve hors and harneys armure and alle þinges þat hem nedith and after they schulle seye to hem þat þay gon in to anoþer cuntre wher þat þay mowe lyve as her auncestres deden by fore hem. And þerfor sire kyng yf ȝe have ouȝt to done with oure companye we ben come in to ȝoure lande and wiþ good wil ȝow wile oure & ȝoure lande helpe kepe and defende fram ȝoure enemyes if þat ȝow nedith. Whanne Vortiger herde þis tydinge he sayde he wolde gladly witholde hem upon suche covenaunt yf þay myȝt delyvre his lande of his enemyes he wolde ȝeve hem resonable landes wher þay schulde dwelle for evermore. Engist þanked him goodeliche and in þis maner he and his companye xj. ml men schulde dwelle with þe kyng Vortiger. and so moche þai deden þorouȝ her boldenesse þat þai delyvrede þe lande clene of his enemys. Þo prayede Engist þe kyng of so moche lande þat he myȝte make to him a citee for him & for his mayne.

þe kyng aunswerde

The kynge answerede þat was
nouȝt for to done wiþoute coun
seil of his Britouns. Engist prayde
him afterwardes of as muche place
as he myȝte compasse wiþ a thwon
ge of a skyn where vppon he myȝte
make him a manere and for his
to duelle on. and þe kyng grauntede
him ffreli. ¶ Tho nome Engist a bole
skyn and cutte hit as smale as
he myȝte alle to a thwonge alle
rounde and þerwith compassede
as muchel londe as he made a
faire castel and whenne þis cas
tel was ymade he lete calle
hit Thwongcastel for as muche as
þe place was meserede with a
thwonge. ¶ *Off Rouncewenne
þat was Engistes doughter and
how þe kyng Vortiger spousede
hire for hire beaute. Ca°. lviijmo*

Whenne þis castel was
makede and ful wel ar
rayede: Engist priuelye
sente by lettre in to þe cuntre þat
he come of after an hundred schip
pis fillede with straunge men
þat were bolde and wel fighting
in alle batailles. and þat they
schulde bringe with hem Roun
wenne his doughter þat was
þe fairest creature þat a man
myȝte see. ¶ And whenne þe
peple was comen þat he had
sente after he nome hem in to
þe castel with muche ioye & him
self vpon a day wente vn to þe
kynge and prayede him derworthe
ly þat he wolde come and se his
newe maner þat he had made
in þe place þat he had compassede
with þe thwonge of þe skyn. The
kynge anone grauntede hym ffreli
and with him wente þider and
was wel apayede with þe castel
and with þe faire werke. and to
gederes þei eten and dronken wiþ
muchel ioye. ¶ And whenne nyȝt
come þat þe kyng schulde gon in
to his chambre for to take þere
his nyȝtes reste Rouncewenne þat
was Engistes douȝter come wiþ a
coupe of gold in hire hande and
knelede bifore þe kyng. and sayde
to him Whatseyl. and þe kynge
wiste nouȝt what hit was to
mene ne what he schulde answere
for as muche as him self ne no
ne of his britouns ȝitt couthe
none englisshe speke ne vndersto
de hit. but speken þo þat same
langage þat britouns ȝitt done.
¶ Kerales a latymer tolde þe king
þe fulle vnderstondinge þerof Wat
saill. and þat he schulde answere
Drinke hayl and þat was þe first
tyme þat Watsaill and Drinke
hail comen vp in to þis lande &
fram þat tyme in to þis tyme hit
hath ben wel vsede the kynge

Vortiger whenne he sawe þe
fayrenesse of Ronewenne and
his armes laide aboute hire nek
and þries swetely kissede here
and anon ryzt he was anamered
vppon hire: þat he desirede to haue
hire to wyf and axede of Engist
hire fader. & Engist grauntede vpo(n)
þis couenaunt þat þe kyng shulde
zeue him al þe cuntre of kent þat
he myzte duelle in and al his
peple: þe kinge him grauntede ple-
nely with a good wille. and anon
after he spousede þe damisell þat
was muche confusioun to hym
self. and þerfore alle britouns bico-
men so wroth for encheson þat
he had spousede a womman of mys-
bileue. wherfore þey wente al
fro hym and no thing to him toke
kepe ne helpe him in þinges þat
he had to done.

How Vortymer þat was vortigers sone was made kyng and Engist dryuen out and how Vortimer was slayn þorouz Ronewenne. Cap^o. lviij.

This Engist wente in to
kent and seisede all þe
lande in to his hande
for him and for his men and bi-
come in a litil while of so grete
power. and so muche peple
had þat men wist nouzt in litil
tyme whiche were þe kynges
men and whiche were there
Engistes men wherfore alle
Britaigne had of him drede &
seyde amongst hem þat yf þey
ne toke oþer counceil bitwene
hem: alle þe lande shulde ben
bitrayede þorouz Engist & his
peple. Vortiger þe kyng had
bigeten on his first wyf .iij.
sones þe first was callede Vor-
tymer þe secunde Catagren
and þe þridde Pascent. þe britons
anythone by one assent chosen
Vortimer for to ben hir lord &
hire souereyne and hir conquer-
oure in any batayllo and gouer-
ned him and made him king
and wolde soffren Vortiger
no lenger for to regne for en-
chesoun of þe aliaunce bitwe-
ne Engiste and him. The
britouns ordeynede a gret host
to drif out Engist and his com-
panye of þe lande and zaf hym
iij. batailles. þe first was in
kent þere þat he was lord. þe
secunde was att Derteford &
þe þridde was in a shire a þis
half Cool in amore and in þis
bataille hem mette Catagren
and Hors engistes brother. so þat
euyche of hem slowe oþer. but
for as muche þat þe cuntre was
zeuen longe byfore to hem þorouz
Vortiger þo he hadde spousede
his cosyn þer he had made a

ffader castell þat men callede
Horncastell after his owne na
me And Vortimer was so an
noyede for his broþis deth Cata
gren þat he was dede in suche
maner wherefor he lete falle þe
castel to grounde and after þat
he ne lefte nyȝt ne day til he
had dryuen out Engist and all
his peple of þe lande ¶ And
whanne Engist was dryuen
awey Ronewenne his doughter
made sorowe ynow and queyn
tely spake to hem þat were next
þe kyng Vortimer and priuest
with him and so muche sche
ȝaf hem of ȝiftis þat he was
apoysenede and deide att london:
þe iiij ȝere of his regne & þere
he lith. How þe Britouns cho
sen anoþer tyme Vortiger to ben
her kyng and Engist come in
to þis lande aȝen and þey fough
ten to gedre. Cap. lix.

After Vortimers deth þe
Britouns by her comune
assent aftersones ma
kede Vortiger her kyng vppo
this couenaunt þat he schulde
neuer after sochen Engist no
non of his aftersonus schulde co
me in to þis lande ¶ And whe
alle þis was done Ronewene
þe quene priuely sente by lettre
to Engist þat sche had enpoy
sonede Vortimer and þat Vor
tiger her lord aȝen bare the
croune and regnede and þat he
schulde come aȝen in to þat lande
wel arayede with muche peple
for to avenge hym vppon þe Bri
touns and to wynne his lande a
ȝen ¶ Of þis tydinge Engist ma
de grete ioye and arayede him
hastily with .xv. ml men þat were
douȝti in eny bataylle ¶ And
whanne Vortiger herde telle þat
Engist was come aȝen with a gret
power in to þis lande: he assemblid
his Britouns and þo wente aȝens
Engist for to haue ȝeue him batai
le and his folke: but Engist drad
him sore of þe Britouns for they
had scomfitede him bifore hande
and dryuen out with strengthe
wherfore Engist prayede of a love
day and seyde he was nouȝt co
men in to þis lande for to fiȝte: but
to haue his lande aȝen of kent
yf he myȝte acorde with þe Bry
touns and of hem haue grace
þe kyng Vortiger þourȝ conceil
of his Britouns grauntede a love
day and þis it was ordeynede
þourȝ þe Britouns þat same love
day scholde ben holde faste besides
Salesberye vppon an hull & Engist
schulde come þider with iij C.
knyȝtis with oute mo: and the
kyng with as meny of þe wysest

of þis lande. And att þat day þe
kyng come with his counseil as
hit was ordeynede: but Engist
had warnede his knyztis priuely
che and hem commanded þat ech
of hem schulde putt a longe knyf
in his hose. and whenne he sayde
faire sers now is tyme to speke
of loue and pees: anyche anon
scholde drawe his knyf and slee
a bryton. and so þai quelde .xxx.
.ij. and .lxj. of knyztis. and wiþ
muche sorowe manye of hem
ascapede. And Vortiger hym self
was taken and lad to Thwonge
castell and putt in to prisoun. and
some of Engistes men wolde þat
þe kyng had ben brent al quyk.
And Vortiger þo to haue his lyf
grauntede hem as muche as þay
wolde axen: and 3af up alle þe
lande. townes and castell. citees
and burghes to Engist and to
his folke and alle þe britouns
fledde þennes in to walis and
þe helde hem stille. And Engist
wente þorz þe lande and seysede
al þe lande with fraunchises and
in euery place lete caste adoun chir
ches and houses of Religioun and
destroyede cristendome þorz the
lande. and lete chaunge þe na
me of þe lande þat no man of his
were so hardy after þat tyme to
calle þis lande Britaigne. but

calle hit Engistes lande. and he
departede al that lande to his
men and þe made vij. kynges
for to strengþe þe lande þat þe
britouns schulde neuere after co
men þerinne. The firste king
dome was kent þe þat Engist
hym self regnede and was
lord and maister on alle þe oþer
Anoþer kyng had Southsex wher
now is chichester þe þridde king
had Westsex þe ferþe kynge
had Essex þe fifte kyng had
Estangill þat now is callede
Northfolk Southfolk merche
merche þat is to seyn þe erle
dome of Nichole. The vj. had
leycestre schire. Northamptonschire
hereford. and huntingdone. þe vij.
had Oxenford. Gloucestre. Wyn
chestre. Werwyke and derby schire.

How vortiger wente in to wa
lys and by gan þer a castell þat
wolde nouzt stande wiþ oute
morter tempred wiþ blode. ca°
lx.

Whenne Engist had
departede alle þe lande
in his maneres bitwene
his men he delyuede Vortiger
out of prisoun and soffrede hym
fforþ to gon whider þat he wol
de. and he nome his wyues and
wente in to walys þer þat his
britouns dwellede. for as mu
che as þat lande was stronge.

and wycked to wynne. and
Engist neuere come þe ne knewe
hit neuere bifore þat lande.
Vortiger helde him þere with
his Britouns and axede coun
ceyl what him was best al for
to done. and þey ȝaf him coun
ceile to make a stronge castel þat
he myȝte him self þerinne kepe
and defende yf hit nede were
Masouns in haste þo were fette
and by gonne þe werke vpon þe
hille of Breigh. but certis þus
hit byfell alle þe werke þat þe
masouns made a day: adoun hit
felle aniȝt. and þat ferde oon
tymes or foure wher of þey had
ben grete wondir what hit
myȝte ben. and þer of þe kyng was
sore anoyede of þat chaunce &
wyste nouȝt what to done.
Wherfore he lete sende aftir
þe wysest clerkes and also lered
de men þat weren þourȝ oute
Walis þat myȝte ben founde for
þey schulde telle wherfore the
foundement so failled vndir þe
werke. and þat þey schulde hym
telle what was best to done.
And whanne þe wysest men
longe tyme had studede: þei say
de to þe kyng þat he schulde don
seke a childe borne of a woman
þat neuere had with man to done
and þat childe he schulde slen
and tempre with þo blode þe
morter of þe werke and so schulde
þe werke euere endure wiþ outen
ende. How þe kyng lete seke
Merlyn þourȝ alle Walis for to
speke with him. ca. lxv.
Whanne þe kyng herde
this he commaunded his
messagers anon to wen
de þourȝ out al Walys to seke
þat childe ȝif þei myȝte hym fyn
de. and þat þey schulde bringe
him forth with hem vn to him.
and in recorde and witnesse of
þis þing he had take hem his
lettre. þat þey ne were distour
bed of no man ne lette. And
so faste þo spedde þe messagers
til þei come vn to a toun þat me
callede Kermerdyn. and as þey
passede forth hire way þey foun
den ij. children of xiij. ȝer age
chidden þere with hastyf wor
des. and oon of hem seyde to þat
oþer Dunebatt quod he ȝe done alle
wronge to chide or strif wiþ me
for ȝe haue no witte ne resoun
as I haue. Certis ayeryn quod
þat oþer of ȝoure witte ne of
ȝoure resoun I make no force. for
men tellith communliche þat ȝe
haue no þing of god for ȝe had
neuer fader. but alle men weten
wel he is ȝoure moder. And þe
kynges messangers whane þey

herde þis strif bytwene tho two gromes þei axeden of men þat stoden bisides hem wheþer þat Merlyn was born and also who him norisshede and þe folke hem tolde þat a grete gentil woman him bare in Kermerdyn þat me callede Adhan. but neu[er] myȝte man wite ho myȝte ben þe childes fader ¶ Whanne þe messangers herde þis tydinge þei wente anon to him þat was wardeyn of þe toun and tolde him þe kynges wille and his lettre wherfore þei were comen þeder ¶ Merlyn and his moder anon were sente by fore þe wardeyn of þe toun and he comanded hem þat þei scholde gon to þe kynge as hit was ordeyned be his messangers ¶ Merlyn and his moder comen vn to þe kynge and were vnderfonge with muchel honour: and þe kyng axede of þat lady if þat childe were here sone and ho him by gate ¶ þe lady answerde ful tenderly wepinge and sayde sche had neu[er] companye of man wordly but s[ir] q[uo]d sche as y was a yonge maydene in my fadres chambre and oþere of grete lynage were in my companye þat ofte weren wonede to pleye and to solacen y be lefte allone in my chambre of my fader and wolde nouȝt gon out for mornynge of þe sonne ¶ and vppon a tyme þer come a fayr bacheler and entrede in to my chambre þere þat y was allone. but how he come in to me and wher y wist neu[er] wher ne ȝitt wote. for þe dores were faste barrede and with me he dede game of loue. for y nadde nou[er] myȝte ne power him to withstonde fro me. and ofte he come to me in þe forsaide maner so þat he bigate on me þis same childe. but neu[er] myȝte y wite of him what he was ne whennes he come ne what was his name

¶ Of þe answer of Merlyn wherfor þe kynge axede why his werke myȝte nouȝt stonde þat he had bygonne myghte nouȝt. Prime capitulum lxij°.

Whanne Merlyn hadde herde alle þat his moder had sayde: he spake to þe kyng in þis maner. sire how y was bygeten axe ȝe no more for hit falleth nouȝt to ȝow ne to non oþer for to wite but telleth me encheson wherfore I am to ȝow brouȝte and wherfore ȝe haue sente after me: ¶ Certes q[uo]d þe kyng my wyse counceylers hauen do me

to vnderstonde þat þe morter
of a werke þat I haue done bi
gonne but hit be temprede
with ȝoure blode or þe fundament
schal faille for euer more. Were
sir Merlyn wil ȝe slee me for my
blode for to tempre with ȝoure
morter. ȝe sir þe kyng or ellys
schal neuer my castel stonde as my
counceleres done me to vnderston
de. Tho answerede Merlyn to
þe kyng sire he sayde lete ham
come byfore me þo wise coun
celeres and I wil proue þat they
seye nouȝt wel ne trewely &
whenne þe wise were comen
Merlyn þo seyde to þe kynge
sire I schal telle ȝow þe enche
soun wherfore ȝoure werke
þus falleth and may nouȝt
stonde. þer is vnder þe mountay
ne þer þat ȝe haue bygonne
ȝoure toure a gret ponde of wa
ter. And in þe botme of þe pon
de vnder þe water þer ben two
dragouns þat on is white and
þat oþer rede þat fiȝten togedre
agayn ȝoure werke. Doth myne
depe til ȝoure men come to the
ponde and doth ȝoure men take
away þe watere aboute and þan
ȝe schul see þe dragouns as I
haue ȝow tolde þat togedre
fiȝten agayn ȝoure werke &
þis is þe encheson certis why

fore þe fundament faylleth. þe
kynge anon lete digge vnder til
þat men come to þat ponde &
lete don away al that water and
þere þei founde two dragouns.
as Merlyn had tolde þat egerly
fouȝten togedres. þe white dra
gon egerly assaylede þe reede
and layde on him so strongely þat
he myght nouȝt endure but wit
drowe him and hid him in þo
same caue and restede. And
whenne he had a while restede
he wente byfore and assaylede
þe reede dragoun angrely and
halde him so sore þat he myȝte
nouȝt aȝens him endure but wit
drowe him and restede. and after
come aȝen þe white dragoun
and strongly fouȝte with the
rede dragoun and bote hym
anele and him ouercome þat he
fley þennus and no more come
aȝen.

Off þe significacioun of tho two dragouns þat were in þe botme of þe ponde that fouȝten togedre. Cap°. lxiij.

The kyng Vortiger and
his men þat sawe þis
bataylle had grete mer
uayle and prayede Merlyn to
telle him what hit myȝte byto
kene. Sire sir Merlyn I schal ȝow
telle þe rede dragon bytokenith
ȝoure self and the white be

tokenith þe folke of Saxoyne þat
firste ȝe toke and helde in this
lande þat now fyghten aȝens
ȝow· and ȝow haue drenen and
enchacede· But þe britouns þat
ben of ȝoure lynage ouercomen he
and dryuen hem awhile and we
thin att þe comynge aȝen of þe
Saxones þei recouerede þis lande
and helde hit for euermore and
dryuen oute þe britouns and de
de with þis lande al here wille
and destroyede cristendome þorug
oute þis lande (A)ȝe hadde firste
ioye of here comynge but now
it is tornede to ȝow grete dama
ge and sorowe· ffor þe ij· breþin
of constance þat was kyng ȝe
late slee· schullen come bifore
a quinȝime passede with a grete
power fram litil Brittaigne and
schulle avenge þe deth of here
broþer and þei schulde brenne ȝow
firste wiþ sorowe and after þei
schulle slee a grete partye of
Saxosnes and schullen dryuen
al þe remenaunt of þe lande &
þerfore abide ȝe here no lenger
to make no castel ne non oþere wer
ke but anon goþ alles where ȝo
lyf al for to sauie to god y ȝow by
take for þerue y haue saide to ȝow
of þing þat schal by falle and
vnderstondith wel þat Aurilam
bros schal ben kyng· but he schal

be enpoysned and litil tyme
regne (A)Off kyng Aurilambros
how he pursuede Vortiger and
Engist & how þei deden cal kyng·

M(Erlyn) and his moder dep
tyd fro þe kyng and turne
de aȝen to kermerdyne &
sone after tydinge come to þe britons
þat Aurilambros and vter his bro
ther were arryuede att Totteness
with a grete host· And þe britons
anon assemblede hem and wente
to vnderfonge Aurilambros and
Vter with grete noblaye and lad
hem to london and corounede þere
Aurilambros and made him kyng
and deden to him homage and he
axede wher Vortiger þat was
kyng myȝte ben founde for he wol
de ben avengede of his broþeris deth
and after he wolde werre vpon
paynymes and þei tolde him þat
Vortiger was in walis· and so
þei ladde him þiderwarde Vorty
ger wiste wel þat þe ij· breþeren
comen him to conquere and fley
þennes in to a castell þat me cal
leth Genereth þat stode vppon an
hye montayne and þere him hel
de (A)urilambros and vter his
broþere and here folke had bysegyd
þe castel ful longe tyme for the
castel was stronge and wel arer
ede so att þe laste þay caste wyl
dafyr and brende hous and me

and al his tresore and as muche
as was with inne castel so þat
Vortiger was brende amonge al
other and so deide he with muchel
sorowe ¶ Tho was Engist in Kent
and regnede þere and herde this
tydinge and anon fledde and
wolde haue went in to Scotland
for to haue had socour. but Aurila
bros and his men mette with hy
m in þe North cuntre and ȝaf hym
bataille. and Engist and his men
hem defended whiles þat þei miȝt.
but he and his folke weren discom
fitede and slayn. and Otta his
sone fley vnto ȝorke and Aurilam
bros hym folowede after. Otta a
litil while aȝens hym stode. but
afterwarde he putte hym to his mer
cy and Aurilambros vnderfange
hym and to hym and to his men
he ȝaf þe cuntre of Galeway
in Scotlonde and þere þei dwel
lede ¶ Þe kyng Aurilambros
wente þo þorȝ þe lande and
putt away þe name of Engistes
lande þat Engist after his owene
name had callede byfore. þo lete
he hit calle aȝen grete Brittaigne
and lete make aȝen chirches.
houses of religion. castelles. ci
tees and burghes and townes
þat þe Saxones had destroyede and
comen to London and lete make
aȝen þe walles of þe citee which

Engist and his folke had caste a
doun ¶ The Britouns ladde him to
þe mount of Ambrian wher some
tyme was an hous of religion þat
þo was distroyede þorȝ paynimes
wher of a knyght me callede Aubri
þat som tyme was foundour of þe
hous and þerfore þe hulle was cal
lede þe mount of Vrian and after
was callede Ambresbery and schal
for euer more ¶ How Aurilambros
dede redresse þe lande of grete Bri
taigne þat was destroyede þorȝ
Saxones. cap°. lxvto

How þe kyng Aurilambros
lete amende and redresse
þe hous of Ambresbery
and sette in putt monkes but now
þere ben nonnes. a litil fram the
place þat me calleth Salesberye
þere þat þe Britouns quelde Vortiger
when Engist and he schulde haue
made a loueday in whiche time
þere were slayn. xxx. knyghtis
þorȝ tresoun of Engist ¶ The
kyng þer of had grete pite and þouȝte
to make in mynde of hem a monu
ment of ston þat miȝt endure
vnto þe worldes ende. and of þis
þing þei nome hir councel what
þer of was beste to done ¶ þo spake
to þe kyng þe bisshop of London
þat me callede Dynekyn þat he
schulde enquere after Merlyn for
he couþe best telle how this

þing myȝte ben made And ayer
hym after was souȝte and founde
and com to þe kyng and sayde þe
ber grete stones in Irlande and
longe vppon þe hille of kyan þat
men callith geauntȝ carol and if
þay were putt in þis place as þei
ben þere here þei wolde endure euer
more in remembraunce of þo kyngis
þat here beth enterede. Sir ma foy
quod þe kyng as harde stones
ber in my lande as beth in Irlande. Soth quod merlyn. but in
alle ȝoure landes beth non siche
for geauntȝ sette hem for grete
god of hem self ¶ ffor att eny
tymes þat þey were woundyd
or in eny manere hurt þey wossche
þe stones with hote water and
þan wysshe hem þe with and
anon þey were hoole.

How the Britouns wente for to feche the grete stons in Irlande Cap. lxvi.to

When þe Britons had
herde of þis þing þey
wente and sworen ifere
amonges hem þat þey wolde
gon to feche þo stones and nonne
with hem. Uter þe kyngis broþer
for to ben here cheuetayn and xv
M men. And merlyn to conueyede
hem for to gon into Irlande and
so þei deden ¶ And whenne þe
kyng of Irlande þat me callede
Guylomer herde telle þt strangers
were aryuede in his lande he
assemblede a grete power & fouȝte
aȝens hem. but he and his fol
ke were disconfitede. the Britons
wente biforne til þey come to
þe mount of kylian and clymede
vp to þe mount. but whenne þey
sawe þe stons and þe manere
how þey stoden þey hadde grete
merueyle and sayde by twene he
þat no man schulde hem remeue
for no strengþe ne engyne so
huge þey weren and so longe.
¶ But merlyn þoruȝ his crafte &
queyntise remeuede hem and
brouȝte hem in to hir schippis &
come aȝen into þis lande. and
merlyn sette þe stones þere þat
þe kyng wolde haue hem and
sette hem in þe same manere
þat þey stoden in Irlande and
whenne þe kyng saw þat hit
was made he þankede merlyn
and richely him rewardid att
his owene wille and þat place
he lete calle Stonhenge for euer
more

¶ How passent þat was Vortigers sone and þe kyng Guillomer come into þis lande and how a traytour þat me callede Copa enpoysonede the kynge Aurilambros. Cap. lxvii.

And men schullen vnder
stande þat passent þat
was Vortigers sone

londe in þe same tyme & come in to þis lande with a grete power and arryuede in þe Northcuntre and wolde ben avengyde of his fadres deth Vortiger and strongly werrede vpon þe companye þat he hadde brouzte with him out of þe lande of Germayne and had conquerede al þe Northen contre vn to Yorke. And whane kyng Aurilambros herde þis he assemblede a grete power of Britons and wente for to fighte wiþ him: and he and his peple were discumfitede: But Passent ascapid þannes with summe of his folke and fled þannes in to Irlande and com to kyng Guillomer and prayede him of help and socour. Tho þe kyng grauntede him with good wille. and sayde y wolde helpe zow vpon þat couenaunt þat I my self most gon with zow with alle my power into Britaigne. and I wolde me avenge vpon the Britouns þat þan þey in to my londe comen and token þe stonis with strengþe þat callede þe Geauntz Karoll. Tho þe kynge Guillomer lete ordeine his schippis and wente to þe see wiþ xv.m. men and arryuede in Walis and bygonne to robbe and muche sorowe to done. But by

fel so þat kyng Aurilambros lay sike att Wynchestre and mizt nouzt helpe him self. So þat he sente in his name Uter his broþer with a grete power for to helpe Walys. and þiderwarde he wente as muche as he myghte. Tho þe kynge of Irlande and Passent had herde telle þat Aurilambros was sike: and to him come a Sarazyn þat ma callede Copra and sayde Sire ze dwelle ze here all in pees wiþ zoure host. and I be hote zow þourz my queyntise þat schall slee þe kyng Aurilambros þat liþ sike yf ze don me passet I schal zow richely amende. This traitour Copra putt vpon him an habite of religioun and lete schaue him a brode corone. and come to þe kyngis court & sayde þat he was a good fisician and sayde þat he wolde hele þe kyng of his maladye. Tho sayde þe traitour Copra vn to þe kyng Sire ben of good comforte for y schal zeue zow suche a medicine þat ze schul swete anon rizt and listen slepe and haue good reste and þe traitour zaf him suche a poysoun þat he slepte anon rizte and dyede in his slepinge And þe traitour sayde þat he wolde gon out in to þe folde til þe kyng were awakede and

So scapede he away for noman
had to him suspecioun for suche
sum of his habit þat he was
in cloþed. and also for his brode
crounne ¶ But whenne þe kinges
mayne wyste þat he was dede
þey by comen wondir sorye &
faste souzte þe traitour: but þey
myzte nouzt him fynde for sorwe
turnede azen to þe host so wheþ
nes þat he com ¶ Whenne Aur
ambros was dede after in þe
morne was seyn with a clere lizt
and att þe bouzte of of þe beme
was sey þe heed of an horrible
dragoun. Cap° lxviij° ...

Whenne þe kyng aurila
bros was þus dede
and enpoysenede att
wynchestir. anoon aftir þat he
was ded aboute þe tyme of
prime þe was seyn a sterre grete
and clere and þe beem of þat
sterre was brizt þanne þe sonne
and att þe bouzte of þe beem ap
perade a dragonis hede & out
of his mouthe comen too huge
liztis þat were as brizte as eny
fire brennynge ¶ And þat o
beem tilde towarde ffraunce &
strauzte ouer þe see þiderwarde
and out of þat beem comen vij
beemes ful clere and longe as
it were þe lizte of fire. þis sterre
was seyn of meny man: but non
of hem wiste what hit byto
kenede. Uter þat was the
kyngis broþer þat was in wales
with his host of Brytouns saw
þat sterre and þe grete lyzte
þat he zaf: he wondrede þere
of grettly what hit myzte bi
tokene and lete calle Merlyn &
prayede hym for to telle what
hit myghte bytokene ¶ Of þe
bytokenynge of þat sterre

Merlyn say þ ¶ Ca° lxix°
ster and by helde hy
longe tyme and sore
nes he wope and wepte ten
derly and sayde allas allas
þat so noble kyng and worthy
is dede and I done zow to vn
dirstonde þat Aurilambros
zoure broþer þus enpoysenede.
and þat y se wel in þis sterre
and zoure self be tokenith
by þe hede of þe dragoun þat
is seyn att þe boughte of the
beem þat is zoure self that
schal be kynge and regne and
by þe beem þat stode towardis
the est. is vnderstonde þat ze
schal geten a sone þat schal con
quere alle ffraunce and alle þe
landes þat beth longynge to þe
crowne of ffraunce. þat schal
ben a worthier kyng and of mor
honour þan euer was eny of his
auncestres. And by the beem

þat shewith towarde Irelande hit by tokenyth þat ȝe shulle by geten a doughter þat shal by quene of Irlonde and the vij beemes by tokenith þat she shal haue vij sones and eche of hem shal be kyng and shal ben regne with michel honour and abide ȝe no lenger here but gop and ȝeue bataille to ȝoure enemyes and fiȝtet wiþ hem boldely for ȝe shul ouercome hem and haue þe victorie.

Uter þan lede hastely his hoste and nome his men and wente towardis his enemys and þer foughten to gedre mortaly and so he discomfitede his enemyes. alle ad destroyede. and him self quelde passent þat was Vortigers sone. And his Britouns quelde Guillomer þat was king of Irelande and alle his men And Uter anon after þat batayle toke toke his way towarde Wynchester for to don enter Aurlambros kyng þat was his broþer but so was þe body born to Stonhenge with michel honour þat þat he had don made in remembraunce of þe Britouns þat þere were slayn þorȝ treson of Engist þat same day þat þai shulde haue ben acordid. and in the same place þai enterede Aurlambros þe secunde ȝere of his regne with alle worship þat myghte by longen to suche a kynge of whos soule god haue mercy.

Off Uter pendragon and wherfore he was called so after ȝe shal here. And he was one take for þe grete loue of Ygerne þat was þe Erle of Cornewayles wyf. Capitulum lxx^mo //

After þe deth of Aurelambros. Uter his broþer was crownede and regnede wel and worthely. and in remembraunce of þe dragoun þat he was likenede to. he lete make ij. dragouns þorȝ counsail of his Britouns. þat on to ben bore bifore him whenne he wente into batayle. and þat oþer to abide att Wynchester in þe bisshoppis chirche. and for þat enchesoun he was callede euermore after Uter pendragon.

And Otta that was Engistes sone comendid that Uter þat was made newe kyng and aȝens him bygan to meue werre. and ordeynede a grete companye of his frendis and of his kynne and of Ossa his broþer. and had take alle þe lande fram humber vnto ȝorke but þo of ȝorke helde strongly agayn hem and wolde suffren hem to come in to þe toun nor to ȝelde

þe cite to ham and he bisegyd
þe toun anon rigthe and ȝaf þer
to a stronge assaute but þay of
þe cite ham kepte wel & strong
ly ¶ And when vter herde þer
of he come þeder with a grete
power for to helpe and rescue þe
towne and putt away þe sege
and ȝaf a stronge batayle and
Otta and his companie ham de
fendid as wel as þai myȝte but
att þe laste þei were discomfited
and þe moste part of ham quelde
and Otta & Ossa were taken &
putten into prisoun att london
And vter him selue duellede
awhile att ȝorke and after he
wente to london and att the
Estre after sewynge he wolde
bere corone and holde a solempne
feste and lete sompne alle his
Erles and barouns þat þai scho
lde come to þat feste and alle
þo þat hadde wyfis schulde
bringe ham also to þat feste.
And alle comen at þe kyngis
commandement as þay were
commandid ¶ The feste was
richely holden and alle wer þe
ly sette to þe mete after þat þay
weren of state so þat þe Gor
lois of Cornewayle and Igerne
his wyf eten afore next þe
kyng and þe kyng saw þe fayre
nesse of þat lady þat sche had

and was rauisched for hire beau
te and ofte he made to here nice
semblaunt in lokynge and laug
laughynge so att þe laste the
erle perceyuede þe princes lokyng
and laughinge and þe loue be
twene ham and aros vp fram
þe table al in wrath and toke
his wif and callede to him his
knyghtes and wente þennes
alle in wrath with out takinge
leue of þe kyng ¶ The king
anon sente after him þat he
schulde come aȝen and go nouȝt
þennes in despite of him And
þe Erle wolde nouȝt come aȝen
in no manere wise wherfore þe
kyng was ful wroth and in
wrath him diffiede as his de
dely enemy and þe Erle went
þennes into Cornewayle with
his wyf in to þe castell of Tyn
tagel and þe kyng lete ordeyne
a grete host and come into Cor
newayle for to destroye þe erle
ȝif he myȝte but he had putt
him in suche a castell þat was
stronge and wel arayede of
Tyntagell and wolde nouȝt
ȝelde him to þe kynge þe king
anon bisegede þe castel and þer
duellede xv dayes þat neuer
myȝte spede and euer þouȝte so
muche vpon Igerne and vpon
hire laide so muche loue that

hem thouȝte what to done. So atte þe
laste he callede to him a knyȝte
þat me callede Ulfyn þat was
prive with him and tolde him
al his counsail and axid of him
what was beste for to done.

Sire quod he doþ sende after Merlyn
for he can telle ȝow þe beste coun
cell of any man lyvynge. Merlyn
anon was sent after and come
to þe kyng and þe kyng tolde him
alle his wille. Sire quod Mer
lyn I schal don so muche þorouȝ
craste þat y can þat y schal make
ȝow come þis nyght in to the
castell of Tyntagell and schullen
have alle ȝoure wille of that
lady.

How Uter bigate in I
gerne þat was þe erles wyf
of Cornewayle Arthure the
kynge. Capitulo lxxjmo.

Merlyn þorouȝ craste that
he couthe chaungede
þe kynges figure in to
þe likenesse of Ulfyn his chaum
berlayn and to þe figure of Jordan
þat was þe erlis chaumberlayn so
þat eche of hem was transfigu
rede to oþer likenesse. And when
Merlyn had so done he sayde to
the kyng Sire quod he now mow
ȝe gon sikerly to þe castell of
Tyntagell and ayen entre þe
and have ȝoure wille. þe kyng
toke preveliche al þis ofte to donne

and lede to a knyȝght þat he
muche lovede and nome þe way
toward the castell and wiþ him
Ulfyn and Merlyn. And whanne
þei come þeder þe porter wende þat
he had bene his owne lord. And
whanne tyme come for to gon to
bedde þe kyng wente to bedde
with Igerne þe erles wyf and
dede with here alle his wille
and so bygatte upon hire a sone
þat me callede Arthur.

Uppon
þe morowe þe noble myȝti king
nome his leve of þe lady and went
aȝen to þe host. And þe same niȝt
þat þe kyng lay by Igerne in
bedde ifere wiþ þe erlis wyf þe
kynges men ȝaven a stronge as
saute to þe castel. And þe erle
and his men manliche had de
fendid but at þe laste hit by
falle so at þat assaute þe erle
him self was slayn and the
castell taken. And þe kyng
anon turnede aȝen to
Tyntagell and spousede Igerne
with muchel honour and made
hire quene. And sone after time
come þat sche schulde ben delyv
ede and bare a childe a sone þat
callede was Arthur. And after he
gatte on hire a douȝter þat me cal
lede Anna. And whanne sche
come to age nobly sche was ma
riede to a noble baroun þat me

callede Aloth þat was lord of
Leones. Whenne Vter longe time
had regnede þe come vppon him
a grete sikenesse as hit were a
sorowe. and in þe mene time tho
þat hadde to kepe Otta þat was
Engistes sone and Ossa his brother
þat þo were in prisoun men lete
hem gone for grete ziftes þat þei
hem zaf. and wente with hem
And when þei bretheren were a
scapede and comen azen into her
owne cuntre. þey ordeynede hem
a grete hoste and a grete power
and bygonne to werre after sone
vppon þe king. ¶ How king Vter
chees Aloth to kepe þe lande of Bri
taigne whiles þat he was sike
for as muche as he myghte nozt
for his sikenesse cap°. lxxi.do

And for as muche as king
Vter was sike & might
nouzt helpe him selfe
he ordeynede Aloth sone of Elyne
þat þo was to ben wardeyne &
chiueteyn of al his folke. And he
anon and his Britons assemblede
a gret host and zaf batayle to
Otta and to his folke but Otta
att þe laste was discumfitede.

¶ Hit byfelle þus after warde þat
þis Britonnis had dedignacioun of
Aloth. and wolde nouzt to him
ben attendaunt wherfore the
king was annoyede wondre
sore. and lete putt him in a litter
in þe host amonge his folke &
þey lad hym to Verolame þat þo
was a faire citee. þere þat seynt
Albon was martirede. and after
was þat citee destroyede þoruz
paynymes and þoruz werr. and
þider þei had sent Ossa & Otta
and here peple and entrede into
þe toun and lete make faste þe
zates and þere þey helde hem.
and þe kyng come and hem by
segede and maked a stronge assau
te but þo þat were withinne
manliche hem defendid.

¶ The kyng lete ordeyne his gon
nys and his engynes for to breke
þe wallis. and þe wallis were
so stronge þat no þing myghte
hem misdo. ¶ Otta and his
peple had grete despite þat a
kyng liggyng in a litter had hem
by segyde and þey toke conceil
amonges hem for to stonde vp
on þe morowe and come out and
zaue batayle to þe kyng and so
þey deden. and in þat batayle.
were boþe Otta and Ossa slayn.
and alle þo oþere þat ascapede a
lyf fled into Scotlonde & maden
Colegrin here cheuetayne and þe
Saxons þat weren a lyf and as
capede fro that batayle brouzte
azen a grete strengþe and amonges
hem þei sayden. þat if þo kynge

Uter were ded þey schulde wel
conquere þe lande. And amonges
hem þey þouzte enpoysone the
kyng. and ordeynede men for to
done þis dede and zaf hem of
ziftes grete plentee þis þing to
done. and þey ordeynede hem þe
þerwarde þe þat þe kyng was
wellinge. And clopede hem in
pore wede þe bettur al for to spede
her purpos. but noþeles for
al here falsenesse and queyntise
þey myzte neuere come nyz the
kynge. ¶ But so atte þe laste þei
aspyede þat þe kyng dranke non
oþer licour but only water of a clere
welle þat was nyz besydes. and
þese false traitours vpon a day
priueliche wente to þat welle &
putt þerin poysoun. so þat all the
water was enpoysonede. ¶ And
anon after as þe kyng had dronke of
þat water. he bigan to swelle and
sone after he deide. And as many
as dronkyn of þat water deiden also
And anon as þis falsenesse was
aspiede folke of þe toun lete
stoppe the welle for euere more.
Whanne þe kyng was dede his
folke bere hym to Stonhenge wt
grete solempnite of bisschopps
and barouns þat were þere þat
beriede him besides Aurilambros
his broþer and after turnede azen þo
euerychon and lete sende after arthur

his sone and þey made him
kyng of þe lande wt michel reu
erence after his fadres deþ þe xvij.
zere of his regne. ¶ How Arthur
þat was þe sone of Uter was gou
ernede after his fadres deþ and how
he drof Colegrin and þe Saxones
and Cheldrik of Almayne out of
this lande Capitulo lxxiiij.

Thenne Arthur was made
kyng of þe lande he was
but zong of xv zer age
but he was faire and bolde and
douzti of body and to meke folke
he was good and curteys. and to
proude folke he was stoute and
sterne. and also he was gentil
and curteis and large of spendinge
and made him wel bylouede a
monge alle men þere þat hit
was nede. ¶ And whan he be
gan to regne he swor þat Saxo
neus schulde haue pees ne reste
til þat he had drof hem out of
his lande and he lete assemble
a grete host and fauzte with Co
legrin þat after tyme þat Otta
was dede þe Saxones maynte
nede. and þis Colegrin was disco
fitede and fley vn to zorke & toke
þe toun and þere helde him. and
þe kyng bysegid þe towne
but he myzte noþing spede
for þe toun was so stronge and
þey within kepte þe toun

wel and worthily And in the
mene tyme colegrin lete þe
towne to Bladulf and fley him
self to Cheldrik þat was king
of Almayne for to haue of him
socour And þe kyng assemblede
a gret power and come and ar
ryuede in Scotlande with v.
hundrid schippis ¶ And whē
Arthur wist of þis tiding þat
he had non power and strengþ
ynowe to fizten azen Cheldrik
he lete ben þe sege and wente
to london and sente anon his lres
to þe kyng of litil Britaigne þt
me callede hoel his neuew his
soster sone þat he scholde come
to him with alle þe power þat
he myzte and he assemblede a
grete host and aryuede att
Southhamptoun ¶ And whene
king Arthur hit wist he was
glad ynowe and wente azens
hem and hem resceyuede wiþ
michel honour So þat þo two
hostes hem assemblede and
token her way euene to lin
colle þat Cheldrik had by se
gede but nouzt zitt taken And
þei comen vppon Cheldrike &
vppon his peple or þei hit wist
þere þat þei were and hem egre
ly assaylede ¶ The kyng &
his meynye defendid hem ma
ly by her power but king Ar
thur and his men quellede
so menye Saxons þat neuer
ar were seyn suche a slauzter
And Cheldrike and his men
þat were lefte alyue fledden
a wey and Arthur hem pursue
de and drof hem in to a wode þt
þei myzte no ferþer passe ¶ Chel
drik and his men sawe wel
þat þei were brouzte in to muche
disese and hem zolden to Arthur
in þis man wise þat he scholde
take her hors and here armur
and al þey had þat þei moste
onliche gon in fote to here schippis
And so þey wolde gon in to her
owne lande and neuer come a
zene in to þis lande and vppo
assuraunce of þis þing þei zeue
him good hostages ¶ And Ar
thur þorouz conseyl of his me
graunteде þis þing and resceyu
nede þese hostages And vpon
þis þese or wente to here schip
pis And whenne þei were in
þe hye see her wille chaun
gede as þe deuel hit wolde
and þei retornede here nauye
and come azens in to þis lande
and aryuede att tottenesse &
wente out of here schippis &
nome þe lande and claue rob
bid hit And michel peple
slough and token alle the
armure þat þey myzte fynde

and so þei wente forth til þei
come to Bathe: but þe men of
þe toun schetten faste her ȝatis
and wolde nouȝt suffren hem
come with inne þe toun and
þei defendid hem wel and ar-
pidly aȝens hem. ¶ How
Arthur ȝaf bataile to þe Say-
snes whenne þei comen aȝe(n)
and bysegede þe towne of Ba-
the and hem ouercom/ ca. lxxiij.

W henne Arthur herde
þis tidinge: he lete
honge anon the hosta-
ges and lefte hoel of Brytaig-
ne his nevewe for to kepe the
marche towarde Scotlande wt
half his peple and him selfe
wente to helpe rescue þe toun
of Bathe and whenne he com
þeder he ȝaf a stronge bataille
to cheldrik and quelde alle
most al þe peple þat he had:
for no man myȝte him with
stande ne endure under the
stroke of his swerde and there
boþe were slayn colegryn &
bladud his broþer ¶ And chel-
drike fledde þennus and wolde
haue gon to his schippis but
whenne arthur hit wiste he
toke x. ml. knyȝtes to cador
þat was erle of cornewayle
for to lette and stoppe his comyng
and Arthur him selue wente
aȝen towarde þe marches of
Scotlande ffor messangeres tol-
den him þat þe Scottis had byse-
gede hoel of Brytaigne þere þt
he lay sike and þerfore he hastid
þederwarde and cador pursue-
de after cheldrike and toke hy-
er þat he myȝte come to his schip-
pis and quelde cheldrik and
his peple and whenne cador
had don his viage he hastede
him aȝen as faste as he myȝte
towardes arthur and founde hy(m)
in Scotlande þere þat he had rescu-
ede hoel of Brytaigne: but þe
Scottis were alle fled wiþinne
ȝonnyef and þere þei helde hem
a while but Arthur hem pursue-
de and þey fledde þennus forþ
in to Lynnoigne þat was in þt
cuntre lx. iles and grete plente
of briddes and grete plente of
egles þat were wonte to come
and fighten togederes & make
grete noyse: whenne folk come
to robbe þat lande and weren
as muche as þei myȝte and so
þei deden for þe Scottis were
so grete raueners þat þey token
al þat þei myghten finde in
þe lande of Lynnoigne wiþ oute
eny sparinge and þere with þey
chargide aȝen þe folke in to Scot
lande for to wende ¶ How
kyng Arthurus merveilede of ayeslyn

þe auentures of vj. þe laste
kyngis þat weren to regne in
Engelond and how þe lande
shulde ende. Ca° lxxv°.

Syne quod Merlyn in þe
zere of þe incarnacion
of Ihesu Crist. a M. CC. xv
shal come a lambe out of wyn-
chestre þat shal haue a white
tonge and trewe lippes and
he shal haue wryten in his
herte holynesse. ¶ þis lambe
shal make many goddes hous.
and he shal haue pees þe most
of al his lif. and he shal ma-
ke on of þe fayrest places of þe
worlde þat in his tyme shal
nouzt fully ben made an ende.
And in þe ende of his lyf a
wolf of a straunge londe shal
done him grete harme þoruz
but att þe ende þe lambe shal
ben maister þoruz helpe of a rede
ffox þat shal come out of the
North west. and him shal ouer-
come and þe wolf shal dye
in water. and after þat tyme þe
lambe shal leue non while
þat he ne shal dye. ¶ his sede
þan shal be in straunge lande
and þe lande shal ben with-
oute gouernour a litil tyme.

And after his tyme shal
come a dragoun imelled
wiþ mercy and ek wiþ
wodenesse þat shal haue a berde
as a got þat shal zen in Englond
shadewe and shal kepe þe lande
fram colde and hete and his oo
fote shal ben sett in Wyk. and
þat oþer in london. and he shal
vnbraten iij habitaciouns and he
shal opene his mouth toward
Walis. and þe tremblinge of
þe hidoun of his mouth. his
heres shullen strecche toward
many habitaciouns and cuntrees
and his brep shal ben ful swete
in straunge londe. and in his ty-
me shullen ryuers ronne wiþ
blood and with brayn. and he
shal make in places of his
lande walles þat shullen done
muche harme vnto his seed
after his tyme. ¶ þan shal þer
come a peple out of þe Northwest
duryng his regne þat shal
ben lad þoruz a wicked here þat
þe dragoun shal don qoune
kyng. þat afterwarde shal flee
ouer þe see. wiþ oute comynge
azein. for drede of þe dragoun.
And in þat tyme þe sonne shal
ben as rede as blode as men
shulle se þoruz al þe worlde
þat shal by tokene grete pesti-
lence and deþ of folke þoruz
dent of swerd. and þat peple
shal ben sederles til þe tyme
þat þe dragoun shal dye þoruz

an hare þat schal mene aȝens
him were in þe ende of his lif
þat schal nouȝt fulliche ben en
did in his tyme. This dragoun
schal ben halde in his tyme þe
best bodye of alle þe worlde &
he schal dye bisides þe marches
of a strange lande. and þe lande
schal dwelle faderles wiþ oute
a good gouernour. And men schal we
pe for his deth fram þe rise of
[illegible] vn to þe hauen of Marcill.
wherfore allas schal ben the co
mune songe of faderles folk
þat schulle ouer lyuen in his
lande distroyede.

And after þis dragoun
schal come a gote out
of kar. þat schal haue
hornes and a berde of siluer.
and þer schal come out of his
nostrell a drop þat schal bitokene
hunger. and sorowe and grat deþ
of þe peple and muchel of his
lande in þe bygynnynges of
his regne muche schal be wasted.
This goot schal gon ouer in to
ffraunce and schal open þe flour
of lyf and of deþ. In his time
þer schal arise an egle in Corne
waile þat schal haue feþeres of
golde þat of pride schal ben wiþ
oute per of al þis lande and he
schal dispise lordes of blode. &
after he schal slee schame fully

by a were att Grauesende and after
schulle ben made brigges of men
vppon þe costes of þe see. and sto
nes schullen falle fro castell. and
meny oþer tounes schulle ben
made playn. In his tyme schal
seme þat þe rere schal brenne
and a bataile schal be done vppon
þe armes of þe see in a felde or
deyuede as a schelde. and att þa
taill schullen dye meny whi
te hedes. wherfore his bataille
schal ben callede þe white ba
taill. And þe forsaide bere schal
don þis goot muchel harme &
hit schal ben out of þe South
west and of his blood. þan schal
þe goot lese moche of his lande
til att þe tyme þat schendschipe
schal him ouer come. and þanne
schal he clothen him in a lyouns
skyn. and þan schal he wynne
þat he had lost and more þerto
ffor a peple schal come out of þe
Northweste þat schal make the
goot ouer to ben a drad. And he
schal venge him of his enemys
þorugh counceil of þo ij. owles þat
ferst schulle ben in perile for to
ben vndon. þe olde owle schal
wende ouer þe see in to a stran
ge lande and þer he schal dwelle
vn to a certeyn tyme and after
he schal come aȝen in to þis land
þese ij. owles schullen don grete.

harme to meny on and so they
schulle conuecalle þe goot þat
he schal arere werre azens þe
forsaide bere and att þe laste þe
goot and þe owles schullen
come att Wyre vp Dyuert and
schullen wende oute and for
drede þe bere schal flee and a
swan with him for his compa
nye to Wyr' to warde þe northe
and þe þei schulle ben wiþ an
harde schoure and þan þe swan
schal be slayn wiþ sorowe and
þe bere taken and bi heueded
aft' next his neste þat schal
stande vppon a broken brigge
vp wham þe sonne schal caste
his bemes and meny schullen
him seke for vertue þat for him
schal come In þat same tyme
schal dye for sorowe and tye
a peple of his lande so þat me
nye landes schullen ben vppo
him þe more bolder afterwarde
and þo ij owles schullen don
muche harme to þe forsaide flour
of lif and hir' schulle lede in
distresse so þat sche schal passe
oute in to ffraunce for to make
pees bitwene þe goot and þe
flour delice and þe sche schalle
duelle til a tyme þat hire sede
schal come to seche hir' and
þe þei schullen ben stille til a
tyme þat þey schulle hem clepe
wiþ grace and þei schulle seche
þe owles and schul putt hem to
dispitous deth And after schal
þis goot ben brouzte to disese
and grete anguische and sorowe
he schal lyuen al his lyf
After þis goot schal come
oute of Wyndesore a bore
þat schal haue an hede
of white a lyouns herte a pite
lokynge his visage schal ben
faire to sike men his brest schal
ben staunching of þerst to hem
þat ben a þerst þ of schulle haue
his worde schal ben gospel his
beringe schal ben meke as a
lombe in þe ferste zere of his
regne he schal haue grete pay
ne to iustifien hem þat ben vn
trewe and in his tyme schal his
lande ben multiplied with a
bens And þis bore þorouz fers
nesse of herte þat he schal haue
schal make wolues by come lam
bes and he schal ben called þo
rouz oute þe worlde bore of holy
nesse of fersnesse of nobley and
of mekenes and he schal done
mesurabliche al þat he schal ha
ue to done vn to þe bingh of
Ierslm and he schal whette his
teþ vppon þe zatis of Paris &
vppon foure landes Spaigne
schal tremble for drede of him
Gascoigne schal swete in ffraunce

he shal putt his wynges. his gret
taile shal reste in Engelonde
Bothe Almayn shal quake for
drede of him ¶ This boor shal
zeue batailes to ii townes of yn
gelande and he shal make the
ryuer renne with blood and with
brayn and he shal make many
medewes rede. and he shal gete
as muche as his auncetres dede
and er þat he ben dede he shal
bere þre corones. and he shal putt
o lande in to gret subieccion. and
after hit shal ben releuede. but
nouzt in his tyme ¶ This boor
after þat he is dede for his douzti
nesse shal ben enterede att Co
loigne and his lande shal ben
þan fulfillede al with gold.

After þis boor shal come
a lombe þat shal haue
feet of lede an hed of
bras an herte of a lopard a swy
nes skyn and an harde and in
his tyme his lande shal ben in
pees. þe forste zere of his regne
he shal don make a citee þat al
þe worlde shal speke þer of. þis
lambe shal lese in his tyme a
gret part of his lande þorouz an
hidous wolf. but he shal recoue
hit and zeue a lordship to an
Egle of his landes. and þis Egle
shal wel gouerne hit til þe ty
me þat pride shal him ouer gou

erne as þe worlde. for he shal dye
þorouz his broþers swerde. and
after shal þe lande falle to þe
forsaide lambe. þat shal gouerne
þe lande in pees alle his lyfe
tyme and after he shal dye &
þe lande be fulfillede of alle
maner good.

After þis lambe shal co
me a Moldewerpe cursid
of goddis mouth a cay
tif a cowarde as an hare. he
shal haue an elderliche skyn
as a goot and vengeaunce shal
falle vpon him for synne. in
þe firste zere of his regne he shal
haue of al good grete plente
in his lande and toward him
also. and in his lande he shal
haue grete preising til þe ty
me þat he shal suffre his
peple lyuen in to muche pride
with oute chastisinge. wher
fore god wil ben wroþ ¶ Þan
shal arisen vp a dragon of
þe North þat shal ben ful
fers and shal meue werre
azens þe forsaide moldewerp
and shal zeue him bataille
vpon a ston. þis dragon shal
gadre azen in to his companye
a wolf þat shal come out of
þe west þat shal bygynne
werre azens þe forsaide mol
dewarpe in his side and so

schullen þe dragoun and he-
wynde here taillis togedre, þa
schall come a wolf out of Irlond
þat schal falle in companye wiþ
hem: and þan schal tremblen
þe londe þat þan schal ben cal
lede Engelonde as an aspe lef
and in þat tyme schullen castels
ben fallede adoun vppon Tham
se. and hit schal semen þat Se
uerne schal ben drye for þe bodies
þat schullen falle dede þerinne.
¶ The foure chief flodes of Enge
londe schullen renne in blood.
and grete drede schal ben and
anguisshe þat schull arisen. aftir
þe moldewarpe schal flee for dre
de and þe dragoun. the lyoun
and þe wolf hym schull dryuen
away: and þe londe schal ben
wiþ out hem. and þe moldewarp
schal haue no maner power saf
only a schip wher to he may
wende and aftir þat he schal gon
to londe whenne þe see is wiþ
drawe. ¶ And aftir þat he schal
zeue þe þridde part of his lon
de for to haue þe ferþe part in
pees and reste. and aftir he schal
lyue in sorowe al his lyues ty
me. And in his tyme þe hote
bathes schullen bycome colde
and aftir þat schal þe molde
warpe schal dye aventurosly and
sodeinly. allas þe sorwe for
he schal ben drenyt in a flode of
þe see. his seed schal bicome þere
faderles in straunge londe for euer
more. and þan schal þe londe
be departede in iij. parties. þat is to
seyn. to þe wolf to þe dragoun
and to þe lyoun and so schal hit
ben for euermore. and þan schal
þis londe be callede þe londe
of conquest and so schullen þe
riztful heires of Engelonde
ende.

¶ How arthur ouercome Gyllomer þat was kyng of Irlonde and how þe Scottis bycomen his men. Ca lxxvj^to.

Whenne Gillomer þat
was king of Irlande
had tydinge þat kinge
Arthur was enterede at Glas
tingberye he ordeynede a gret
power of yrissh men & come
to þe see wiþ his yrissh peple
and so come in to Scotlonde ouer
þe see and arryuede faste by
þere þat king Arthur was wiþ
his hoste. and anon as he herde
þer of he wente towardes him
and zaf him bataile. and ouer
come him anon right and
Gillomer fledde with his
men azen in to Irlande. and
whenne þis discomfiture was
done. Arthur turnede him a
zen þere þat he was in to the
place þat he had be laste þe

Scottis wolde hem alle haue slayn. ¶ But þe bisshopis abbotis and oþer folke of þe cuntre & ladies openhede comen bifore kyng Arthur and criede him mercy and seyde Oure gentil kyng and mighti haue mercy and pite on vs and as þou owest kepe of þe rightfulle lawe to holde and maytene cristendome ful grete disshonour it schulde ben to quelle hem þat leueth in alle myghti god as ȝe done and for goddis loue haue mercy and pite of vs and soffren vs for to leuen for we haue had mochel sorowe & pine for þe Saxones hauen mony tymes þorugh oure londe passed but þat is nouȝt þer now to ȝow for often tymes þei haue don vs muche sorowe and disseise for oure castels þei haue taken and oure bestis slayn and eten and muche harme þei haue vs done and if ȝe wolde now vs quelle it were non honour to a kyng to quelle hem þat crien him mercy for þer now ȝe haue done and vs ouercome and for þe loue of god soffir vs for to leue and haueth mercy on cristen peple þat bileue in god as ȝe done ¶ Whanne kyng Arthur herde þis sorowe he had pite of hem and ȝaf hem lyf and lyme and alle þei fellen doun to his fete and bicome his liege men and he toke of hem homages ¶ And after þat kyng Arthur turnede aȝen wiþ his ost and com aȝen to ȝorke and þer he abode duringe þat viage and þo ȝaf he all loegers to Loth þat had spousede his sister and oþer ȝiftes grete plente & þo was Gaweyn his cosyn but of ȝonge age and to alle his oþer men þat him had serued in his werre he ȝaf riche ȝiftes and he þankyd hem muche of her gode seruise

¶ How kyng Arthur spousede Gunnore þat was Cadores cosyn Erle of Cornewayle and after he conquerede of Gullomer alle Irlande Capitulo lxxvijmo

Whenne Arthur had brouȝte his lande in pees and reste and in good state and reste was in al cuntree and þo nome he and weddid a wyf þat me callede Gunnore and made hir quene aftur lady and a gentil þat Cador þe Erle of Cornewayle had longe tyme norisshede in his chambre þat was his owene cosyn but neuer þei hadden childe to gider And noþeles kyng Arthur loued

hire wardeyn wel & derliche
And anon as wynter was pas
sed he lete assemble a grete
host and alle his barouns &
saide þat he wolde wende in
to Irlande for to conquere the
lande and he taried nouȝte
longe þat he ne passede ouer
to Irlande ¶ And Guillomer
þe kyng of Irlande lete assem
ble a gret host and ȝaf bataile
to kyng Arthur but Guillomer
was discomfitede and ȝelde
him to þe king Arthur and bi
come his man and to him dede
feaute and homage and of him
helde alle þat lande so þat ty
me forwarde And after passede
king Arthur ferþermore and con
querede Gutlande and Islande
and toke homages of folke of
þe lande and þe dwellede xii
ȝere in pees and regnede wiþ
ioye and myrthe and werrede
vpon noman man ne noman
vpon him ¶ And he bicome
so curteis and large and so
honorable þat þe Emperours
court of Rome ne none þorȝ
out alle þe worlde was none
acountede to king Arthures
þat euy man wiste ne none
so wel praisede and þerfore þe
beste knyghtis of alle man lon
des comen to him for to duelle

and hem refreyned with good
wille and reuerence And alle þe
knyghtis weren so good þat no
man knewe þe werste And þerfor
king Arthure made þe rounde
table þat whenne þei schulde
sitten to þe mete alle schulde
ben yliche hye and euenliche
serued att þe table þat non
miȝte make avaunt þat none
were hier þan oþer And kynge
Arthur had att þat table Britons
Frenschemen Normannes Fle
myngis Burgunneres Mansers
Loherinz and of alle þe landes
a this half þe mount of Gouis
and of his lande of Britaigne
and of þe grete Cornewaile of
Walis and of Irlande and of
Scotland and schortly to telle
of alle þe landes þat wolden
worschepe and cheualrie seche
comen to king Arthures courte

How king Arthur come in to Fraunce and conquerede þat londe of Frolle þat was a Romayn & him quelde ca° lx

Sith hit byfelle þt | xviijmo
king Arthur þorȝ con
seille of his barouns
and lordes wolde gon to conque
re all Fraunce þat þo was cle
pid Galle þorȝ Romayns þt
þo helde þat lande in her power
and in here lordschepe And þe

Romayns had take þat lande
to a noble knyght and worthye
of bodye þat me callede ffrolle
And whenne he wiste þat Ar
thur come: he ordeynede an
host and a gret power and fou3te
wt þe king. and he and his fol
ke weren discomfitede and þan
nes þey fledde vn to parys.
And entrede þe town and closed
þe 3ates And þo ham helde Ar
thur wiste þat ffrolle was gon
to parys he pursuede after and
come þeder and him bisegede
but þe cite was stronge and wel
arraiede and þo þat were with
inne defended ham wel and
manliche [K]yng Arthurs dwel
led þere more þan a monþe and þe
was so muche peple in þe citee
And had dispended alle here vi
tailles þat were with inne &
so grete hunger bicome amon
ges ham þat þei deiden wondir
thikke wiþ inne þe cite for hung[er]
And comen to ffrolle and praiede
him to ben acorded with king Ar
thur for to haue pees And þey
wolde 3elde ham to him and
þe town also [T] ffrolle saide þat
no kyng he ne my3t holde þe
town a3ens his wille. and truste
gretliche vpon his owene stre
ngþe: and sent to king Arthur
þat he schulde come to fi3te wt

him body for body and so schulde
þei departe ffraunce bitwene
ham two [K]ing Arthur anon
grauntede hit and wolde þat
none of his peple [illegible] take
þe bataille for him. & And vpon
þe morowe boþe comen wel
armyd wiþ outen parys þere þat
þei schulde fi3te and anon þei
smeten togedres so fersly and
so wel þei foughten in boþe
sydes þat no man couþe deme
þe better of ham. And so hit byfel
þat ffrolle 3af Arthur suche a
stroke þat he knelede to the
grownde wolde he nolde he. &
as ffrolle wiþ drowe his swerde
he wounded king Arthur in þe
forhened þat þe blode felle a
down bi his ar3en and his face.
Arthur anon sterte vp hertely
whenne he felede him hurte as
a man þat [illegible] almost wode
And he nome Calibourne his
gode swerde and drowe hit vp
an hey and 3af ffrolle suche a
stroke þat þe wiþ he clefte his
hede down to þe schuldres so
þat his helme my3t nou3t ben
his warraunt. and so he felle
a down dede þere in þe place. &
þo of þe citee maden grete
sorowe for ffrolle and anon
anyeyons 3elde ham to king
Arthur and þe town also and

bicomen his men and deden to
him homage and feaute and he
vndirfenge ham and toke of ham
gode hostages. And king Arthur
after þat wente forth with his
host and conquerede Angoy and
Aungeoys, Gascoigne, Peyto, Na
uerne, Burgoyne, Berrie, Loherene,
Turyn and Peitiers and alle þe
oþer landes of Fraunce. he conque
rede holliche. and whenne he had
alle conquerede and taken hir ho
mages and feautes he turnede a
3en to Parys and þer he duellede
longe tyme and ordeynede pees
longe tyme ouer al þe cuntres and
þoru3 out al Fraunce. And wha
pees was made ouer al þoru3 his
noble kny3thode þat he had &
also for his owne worthinesse.
and no man were he neuer so
grete a lord dorste nou3t meue
werre a3ens him nor to arise &
for to make þe lande of Fraunce
in quiete and pees. he wonede
þer ix 3er and dede þere manye
grete wondres and repreuede many
proude men and hir tiraunt3
and hem chastisede after hire der
nise.

How king Arthur auaunced
alle his men þat had trauaylede
in his seruice. Cao. lxxiij.mo

And afterwarde hit bifel
...ynis att Estrene þere
þat he helde a feste att
Parys richely he gan auaunce his
kny3tis for hire seruice þat þei had
holpen in his conqueste. he 3af to
his Stewarde þat me callede Kay
Angoy. and Aungeoys vn to Bede
ler his botiler. he 3af Normandie
þat þo was callede Neustrie. And
to Holdyn his chamberlayn he
3af Flaundres and Maunce and
to Borell his cosyn he 3af Bologne
and to Richard his neuew he 3af
Pountif. and to alle oþer he 3af
largely landes and fees after þat
þei were of state. And whanne
Arthur had þus his kny3tis feffed.
att Aueril after next comynge
he come a3en in to Britaigne his
owne lande And after att Witson
tide next sewynge by conceyl
of his barouns he wolde ben
corouned kyng of Glomergon &
halde a solempne feste and lete
somoune kinges. Erles and Ba
rouns. þat þei schulde come þe
der echone. þer was Scater.
king of Scotlande. Cadwal king
of Southwalis. Guillomer king
of Northwalis. Maled king of
Irelande. Malgamus king of
Gutlande. Achilles king of Iße
lande. Aloth kyng of Denmark.
Gonewas king of Northwey.
and Hoel his cosyn king of Bor
genye. Cador king of litil Bry
taigne. Morewith erle of Cornewayl.

Maran erl of Gloucestre. Guerdo
erl of Wynchestre. Boel erl of Her
ford. Vigenti erl of Oxenforde
Cursall erl of Bathe. Jonas erl of
Chestre. Enerall erl of Dorcestre.
Kymar erl of Salesbery. Walath
erl of Cauntbery. Jugerne erl of
Chichestre. Arall erl of Leycestre
and þe erl of Warwik and me
ny oþer riche lordes. Brytouns
also þe were ynow. þat is to sey
Dippon Donand. Genz and me
ny oþere þat ben nouȝt here nemp
nede weren at þat feste. And
many a faire fest king Arthur
had halde bifore but neuer non
suche ne nos so plenteuous as þat
laste .xv. dayes wiþ muchel honour
and merþe. Off þe lettre þat
was sente fram þe citee of Rome
for pride to king Arthur. capitulo iiij.xx.

The þridde day as king
Arthur sate att his
mete amonge his kinges
and amonge hem þat seten att
þe feste byforn hem comen .xij.
eldyrne men of age Richely arayed
and curteisly salued þe king and
saide þey comen from Rome sent
messangers fram þe Emperour. and
token to him a lettre þat þis muchel
was to vndirstande. Lhiberius þe
[illegible] Arthur þat now art ones
so hardy wiþ eyen in þi heuede
to maken open werre and contak
aȝeins vs of Rome: þat wene al
þe worlde to deme. for þou hast
neuer ȝitt byfore þis tyme preuede
ne assayede þe strengþe of þe Romay
ns. and þerfor þou hit schalt in a
litil tyme. ffor Julius Cesar con
querede al þe lande of Britaigns
and toke þerof truage. and oure folk
longe tyme haue hit had. & now
þorȝ þi pride þou wiþholdist hit.
wherfore we comaundith þe þat
þou hit ȝelde aȝen. and ȝitt hast
þou more folye done. þat þou hast
slayn frolle þat was oure baroun
of ffraunce al wiþ wronge and
þerfore alle þe communes of Rome
weren and comaunden þe vppo
lyf and lyme þat þou in hast ben
att Rome amendes to make of þi
mysdedes þat þou hast done and
if it so be þat þou come nouȝt we
schulle passe þe hulle of Joye wiþ
strengþe and we schullen þe seke
where euere þou myghte ben founde
and þou schalt nouȝt haue a foot
of londe of þin owene þat we
ne schal distroye and after wiþ ȝour
bodye we schul do oure wille.

Whenne þis he was rad and alle
men hit herde þey were annoyede
alle þat were att þat Parlemente
and þe Brytouns wolde haue slayn
þe messangers but Arthur wol
de nouȝt soffren hit. and sayde
þat þe messangers schulde haue

non hayne and moche by resoun non desire· but he comaunded he to ben worschepfully serued & aftir mete he nome counceil of kynges erles and barouns what answer me miȝte ȝeuen to þe messangers· and þei counceylede him att ones· þat he schulde assemble a gret power of alle þe landes of þe whiche þat he had lordschip· and manliche avenge him vpon þe empour of þe despite þat he had sente to him oneche a lettre and þei sworen by god and by his names þat þei schulde him puruoie and serue in as muchel as þei myȝte and sayde þat þei wolde neuere faile king Arthur and rathir to ben dede and þei lete writen aftir to sende to þe Empour by þe same messangers in þis maner.

Off þe wolde answer þat kinge Arthur sente to þe empour of Rome and to þe Romayns Ca° iiijxx j°.

Vnderstondith amonges ȝow of Rome þat y am kyng Arthur of Britaigne and frely hit holde and schal holde and att Rome hastely y schal be nouȝt to ȝeue ȝow truage but for to axen truage for Constantin þat was Eleyns sone þat was Empour of Rome and of al þe honour þat þer to bilongith· ffor Maximian king of· ffraunce and Almaigne· and Mountioye passede and conquerede al Lumbardie· and þere too weres myn auncestres· and þat þei had and helde y schal haue þorouȝ godis wille·

Off þe reuerence þat kyng Arthur dede to þe Empours massangers of Rome:// Cap° iiijxx ij°·

Whenne þis lettre was made and enseelede king Arthur to þe messangers ȝaf grete ȝiftes· And aftir þat þe messangers nomen his leue and wenten þennes and comen to þe courte of Rome aȝen and tolde þe Empour how worthely þei were vnderfongen· and whiche a ryal companye he had him to serue· And how he was more ryally serued þan þe Empour or any kyng leuynge in þe worlde·

And whenne þe Empour had seyn þe lettres of Arthur· and herde what was þer in· and sawe þat Arthur wolde nouȝt be rewlede aftir him: he lete assemble and ordeyne an huge ost for to distroie king Arthur if þat he myȝte & king Arthur as touchinge his partie ordeynede his powers and knyghtis of the rounde table·

Off the kynges and lordes þat comen to helpe kyng Arthur aȝens þe Empour of Rome Cap° iiijxx iij°·

The kynges of Scotlande
and of Irelande and of
Gutlande of Denmarc
and of Almaigne eche of hem
had x. m^l. of men. þei of Nor-
mandye. Gascoigne and Almai-
ne. fflaundres & Peyto and of
Bologne had iiij. m^l. Geryn of
Chartres had x. m^l. Hoel of Bry-
taigne xij. m^l. and him self of
his owene lande. xij. m^l. and of
Alblastres and of archiers and
of oþer folke in fote þat no man
couþe hem noumbre and whane
þei were alle redy for to wen-
de. King Arthur his lande and
Gunnore his wif toke to kepe to
on of his Nevewes þat was a
wys knyzt and an hardy þat
me callede Mordrede but he was
nouzt alle trewe as ze schulle
here afterwardes. King Arthur toke
alle his reaume to his Mordre-
de saf onliche þe corone.

And after þat King Arthur no-
me his ost and wente to South-
ampton þere þat þe schippes
weren brouzte and þe folke
assemblede. and þei deden hem
to þe see. and had good wynde
and weder at wille. and assone
as þei myzten þei arryvede att
Barflete and assone as they
myzte þei wenten out of here
schippes & spradde alle þe cuntree

How kyng Arthur faughte wt
a geaunt in Spaigne þat me
callede Denabz. þat quelde
Elayne þat was king Hoeles
cosyne of litil Britaigne. ca. iiij^xx xv

Kyng Arthur nad ¶ iiij^to
nouzt dwellede in the
cuntre but a litel while
þat men me tolde þat þere was ·hv·
comen a geaunt in to Spai-
ne and had ravysched faire Elay-
ne þat was cosyn to Hoel of Bri-
taigne. and had brouzt hire
uppon an hille þat is callede þe
mont of Seint Bernarde. and
þere was no man in þat cuntree
so bolde ne so hardy þat durste
with him to fighte ne come nyz
þe place þere þat þe geaunte
dwellede. and me callede him
Dynabus þat miche sorowe
dede in þe cuntre. ¶ Whanne
kyng Arthur herde þis tiding
he callede Key and Bedewer
and comaundid hem þat they
schulde gon prively and aspye
wher þe Geaunt myzten be
founde. and þei comen to þe
Ryvage þere þat men schulde gon
to þe mount þat was all en-
closede alle aboute with water
and zitt is and ever more schal
bee. And þei sawe a brennynge
fyre uppon þe hull and þere was
also anoþer hille nyz þat þere.

was vppon anoþer hill brennynge
key and bideuer comen to þe
nexte hille. and founden a
widewe opun hede sittynge
besides a tombe sore wepinge
and grete sorowe made and
ofte sche sayde. Eleyne. Eleyne
and key and bideuer axede
what hyo was. and wherfor
sche made so grete sorowe &
ho lay in þat tumbe. Wo quoþ
sche what sorwe and what
mysaventure faire lordes speke
ȝe her. for yf þe geaunt may
ȝow here fynde ȝe worth dede
anon. Ben stille good wyf
quoþ þey þerof dismaye ȝe nouȝt.
but telle vs þe sothe why
þou makest so mucho sorowe
and wepinge. Sires quoþ
sche for a damisell þat y no
rissched with my breste þt me
callede Eleyne þat was nece
to hoel king of brittaigne. and
here lith þe body in þis tumbe
þat to me was bitaken to
norissche. so þe come a deuel
a geaunt and rauisched hir
and me also and lad vs bo
the away. and he wolde haue
forleyn þat mayde þat was
so ȝonge and tendre of age.
but sche myȝte hit nouȝt suf
fren so grete and so huge
þe geaunt is. and if he nou

come as he is wonte to done.
certis he wole ȝow quelle boþe
two. and þerfore faste wendeȝe
hennes. and wherfor sayde
þei go ȝe nouȝt hennes.
Certis sire quoþ sche whenne
þat Eleyne was dede the
geaunt made me to abide
to done and haunte his wille
and me most nedis his wille
and god hit woto y do hit nouȝt
wiþ my good wille. for leuer
me were to ben ded þan wt
him to dele. so mucho payne
y haue. whenne he me for lith.
whenne key and bedewer
had herde al þat þe woman
had tolde þey turnede aȝen &
comen til kyng Arthur. and
tolde him al þat þey had seyn
and herde. Arthur anon
nome hem boþe wiþ him &
wente priueliche by nyȝte þt
non of his ost hit wiste and
come on þe morowe erly to
þe geaunt and faught wt
him strongely and att the
laste hym slow. and Arthur
bade bedewer smyte of
his hede and bringe hit to
þe host to schewe hem for a
wonder for hit was so gret
and so huge. Whenne þei
comen aȝen to þe ost þei tol
den wherefor þei had ben

oute & schewede

oute and sterwede to hem þe hed
and euery man was glad and ioy
ful of þe worthy dede þt kinge
Arthur had done hur lordes//
And hoel was ful ioiouseful for
his nece þat was so loste. and
after whan he had pees he lete
make a faire chapel of oure lady
ouer Eleynes tumbe. How
kyng Arthur ȝaf batailles to þe
Emperour in þe whiche bataille
þe Emperour was slayn. Ca. iiij.xx v.o
Arthur and his peple
had tidinge þat the
emperour had assembled
a greet power as wel of Saraȝy
nes as of payens and cristen
men wher of þe noumbre was
iiij.xx m.l of hors men and fote me
Arthur and his peple ordeyne
de forth faste in his way tow
arde þe Emperour and passede
Normandye and Fraunce vn
to Burgoyne and wolde euene
haue gon to þe host: for men
tolde him þat þe Emperours host
wolde come to Lucie þe Empero
and his host in þe bygynnynge
of August remenede fram Rome
and come forth ryȝte þe waye
towarde þe ost. Tho comen king
Arthures aspies and saide if
þat Arthur wolde he schulde
fynde þe faste besides þe Empero
but þei seiden þat þe Emperour
had so greet power wiþ him of
kynges of þe lande and of pay
nymes ifere and also cristene
peple: þat hit nere but greet
folye to kyng Arthur for to me
ten with him. for þe aspies tol
de þat þe Emperour had v. me
or .vj. aȝens on of his. King
Arthur was bolde and hardy &
for no þing him dismayede &
sayde. go we boldely in goddis
name aȝens þe Romaynes þt
wt hem had Saraȝins and pay
nys þat no man trust þei haue
to god: but oneliche vpon her
strenghþe. Go we now and
seche hem sharpliche in the
name of almyȝti god: and sle
we þe paynymis and cristen me
þat ben enemyes with hem for
to distroien cristen men: and
god schal vs helpe for we haue
þe right. and þerfor haue we
goode trist in god: and don we
so þat þe enemyes þat ben to
cristendome and to god mowe
ben dede and destroyede: and
þat men mowe redresse þe wor
thinesse of knyȝthode. Whenne
king Arthur had þus sayde þei
answeden alle wiþ an hye voys.
God fader almyghty worschepid
ben þy name with outen ende
Amen. And graunte vs grace
wel to done and to destroye

oure enemyes þat ben azens
cristendom in þe name of the
fader and of þe sone and of þe
holy gost amen ¶ And god zeue
hem neuere grace ne worschepe
in þe worlde ne mercy of him
to haue þat þis day schal feyn
ten wel for to smyte and are
dy. And so þei riden softely &
ordeynede her wynges wel
and wisely ¶ The Emperour
herde telle þat king Arthure &
his folke were redy arayed for
to fizte wiþ him and redy þei
come where he ordeynede his
wynges in þe beste manere þat
he myzte and more triste vpon
his strengþe þan in god almizti
and þat was seyn afterwardes
ffor whanne þe two hostes mette
togedre þe Emperour loste such
forme of his folke as dede king
Arthur and so many were
slayn what in o side and in
þat oþer þat hit was gret pite
to wete and to seen ¶ In þis
bataille were slayn þorouz king
Arthur .x. kinges of þe paynims
and of oþer wonder muche pe
ple and king Arthures men
fouzten so wel þat þe Romayns
and paynymes had no more
strengþe to wiþstonde þan .xx.
schepes azens .v. wolfes
¶ And so hit bifelle þat in þis

bataille in a schort þat was
wonder harde and longe durid
in þat o side and in þat other
þe Emperour amongis hem þere
was slayn but noman wiste for
soþ ho him slouz ¶ Hou king
Arthur lete entere his knyztis
þat he had lost in bataile and
how he sente þe Emperours body
to Rome þat þere was slayn
in bataille ¶ Ca° iiij. vj.° /100

Whanne þe Romayns
wiste þat þe Emperour
was ded þei forsoke
þe felde and þe paynymes also
and kyng Arthour after hem cha
cede til hit was nyzt and so
many of hem quelde þat hit
was wonder to telle and tho
turnede king Arthur azen þo
hit was nyzte and þankede
almyzti god of his victorie &
in þe morne he lete loke and
seke al þe felde for his knyztis
þat he had þer loste þat is to seyn
Borel erl of Maunis Bedewere
and Key and Lygers erl of Bo
loigne Gerin erl of Baat Aloth
erl of Wynchestre Cursale erl
of Chestre and after Holdyn erl
of fflaundres þese were the
grete lordes þat king Arthure
loste in þat bataille amonges
oþer worthi knyztis and somme
he lete entere in Abbayes by

þe cuntre and come he lete be
bore in to his owne cuntre &
þe Emperours body he lete take
and putt vpon a bere and sente
hit to Rome. and sente to sey to
Romayns þat as for Britaigne
and ffraunce whiche þat he hel
de oþer tribute he wolde none
paye. and if þei axed him eny
oþer tribute. ȝit suche tribute
he wolde hem paye. Than þe king
Arthur lete bere Key to Kenen
his owne castell and þere he was
enterede and Bedwer was bore
to Bologne þere þat he was lord
And Holden was bore to fflaun
dres and þere he was entered
and alle þe oþer he lete entere
with muchel honour in abbeys
and in houses of religion in þe
cuntre þere þat þei were dede.
And Arthur him self soiourned
þat same ȝere in Burgoyne wt
his ost. and þouȝte þe same
ȝere folowynge. passe þe mount
of Ioye. and haue gon to Rome
al for to take þe cite & haue
putt þe Romayns in subiection
but þe wickede tyraunt Mordred
him lette as after ȝe shal here.

How Mordred the traytour to
wham kyng Arthur toke his
lande to kepe and his cas
tellis. and helde hit aȝens
him. Cap°. iiij^xx. vj°.

Whanne Arthur þe king
had taken to Mordred.
his reaume to kepe and
was gon aȝens þe Emperour of
Rome and was passede þe see
Mordred anon toke homages &
feautz of alle hem þat were in
þis lande. and wolde haue had
þe lande to his owne vse. and
nome castell aboute and lete
hem arere and after þis false
nesse he dede anoþer grete wronge
for aȝens þe lawe of cristente he
nome his owne Emes wyf as
a traitour shrewede. and ordeyned
him a grete host. aȝens Arthures
comynges to halde þe lande a
ȝens him wiþ strengþe for euer
more. and to sle king Arthure
if þat he myȝte. and lete sende
by þe see and lande and lete
assemble paynymes and cristen
peple. and he sente to Saxones
and to Danoys for to helpe him
and also Mordred sente to Chel
dike to done men come to him
out of Saxoyne þat was a wor
thy duke. and he hete him yf þt
he brouȝte with him muche he
wolde graunte him in heritage
for euermore. al þe lande fram
byȝonde humbre vn to Scotlande
and alle þe lande þat Engist
hadde of Vortigers ȝifte whe
þat he had spousede his douȝter.

And Cheldrik com with grete
strengþe and power of peple ⁊
Mordred had assembled also in his
half. þat þei had xl.ml. of stronge
knyztis whanne þat þei hadde
nede ¶ How Arthur anchasede
Mordred þe traytour and how he
was slayn and also þat kyng Ar-
thure was woundid to deth. ca°.

Whanne þis tydyng | iiij.xx. xiij°.
come to kyng Arthur þe
þat he was in Burgoyne
he was ful sore annoyede ⁊ toke
alle Fraunce to Hoel for to kepe wt
halvendel of his men. and praiede
him þat he wolde hit kepe til þat
he come azen. for him self wolde
wende into Britaigne and aven-
gen him vppon Mordred þat was
his traytour. and forth wente his
way. and come to Whitsande ⁊
made his men to gon into ship
and wolde haue arryvede att
Sandwiche and brouzte with
him a gret hoste of Fraunce also
with his owene lande ¶ But er
þat he myzte come to londe wiþ
his peple þat wer comen out of
þe schippes. Mordred was comen
with alle his power and zaf a
stronge bataille. so þat kyng Arthour
loste meny a man er þat he myzte
comen to londe ffor þer was Gawe-
ayn his neuew slayn And An-
guissel þat helde Scotlande and
meny oþer. wherof kyng Arthur
was ful sorye ¶ But after þat þei
were comen to londe Mordrede
myzte nouzt azens hem endure
but anon was discumfitede and
fledde þennes þe same nyzt wt
his men. And vppon þe morne
com to london: but þos of þe citee
wolde nouzt suffren hym come in
and fram þennis he fledde to
Wynchester and þere halde him
with his peple þat with him co-
men ¶ Kyng Arthur lete take
þe bodye of Gawayn his cosyn ⁊
þe body of Anguissel and lete
hem be bore into Scotlande unto
her owne cuntre and þere þei
were entered. And after anon kyng
Arthur nome his wey to destroye
Mordrede. And he fledde fro þen-
nes in to Cornewaile ¶ The
quene Gunnor þat was kinge
Arthurs wyf þat þo soiournede
att York and herd þat Mordred
was fled þennes þat he was
and mighte nouzte endure azens
kyng Arthur. She was sore a-
drad and had grete doute. and
wiste nouzt what was best
to done. for sche wiste wel þat
hire lord kyng Arthur wolde
neuer of hire haue mercy for the
grete schame þat sche to him had
done and nome hire way priu-
ly with fewe men wiþ out mo

And come to Kerlyoun and þere
nome and þe sche duellede al
hire lyf þat neuer was seyn a-
mongis folc hire lyf durynge
Arthur wiste þat Mordred was
fled in to Cornewayle and lete
sende after his men in to Scotlande
and Northumberland vn to
Humber and lete assemble folke
with outen nombre and comen
his þennes vn to Cornewaile to
seche and pursue after Mordred.
And Mordred had assemblede to
hym al þe folke of Cornewayle and
had peple with out nombre and
wiste þat Arthur was comyng
and had leuer to dye and take
his chaunce þan lenger flee and
abode and 3af an harde batalle
to kyng Arthur and to his peple
so þat so muche peple was slayn
what in þat on half and in þat
oþer þat noman wiste ho þat
had þe bett[er] partye. But so hit
bifel att þe laste þat Mordred
was slayn and al his folke.
and alle þe good Chiualrie þat
kyng Arthur had gadred and
norysshed of diuerse landes and
also þe noble kny3tis of the
rounde table þat so muche we-
re preisede þorw out alle the
worlde were þer slayn. And
Arthure him self was woun-
ded to deth. but he lete him be

born in a liter to Aveloun to be
helede of his woundis. And 3it
þe Britouns supposen þat he
leuyþ in anoþer lande. and þat he
schal come 3itt and conquere al
Brittagne but certis þis is the
prophecie of Merlin. he saide þat
his deth schulde ben doutous and
he saide soth. for men þer of 3itt
han doute and schullith for euer
more as me saith. for me wote
nou3t wheþer þat he leuith or is
dede. Arthur was born to A-
voun þe xxij 3er of his regne
after þe incarnacion of oure
lord Jhesu crist v.c. & xlj 3ere.

Hou kyng Arthur delyuerede þe
reaume to Constantin þe sone
of Cador his neuew. Ca. iiij.xx. ix°.

When kyng Arthure
wiste þat he my3te no
lenger regne he lete
come bifore him Constantin
þat was Cadors sone Erle of
Cornewaile his cosyn. and to
him bitoke all his reaume and
to him saide. and bade him þat
of to ben king til þat he comen
a3en. for as muche as he had
non heir of his body bigeten
and grete harme was hit þat
so noble a kyng and so dou3ti
had no childe of his body by
geten. but alle þing þat god
wolde haue don most be don

whoos name ben blessid with
outen ende amen ¶ How king
Constantin was werrede of
Mordredes two sones Ca° iiij^xx x°

This Constantin was
a noble knyzt and a wor
thy of body. and pe ij.
sones pat Mordred had by ge
ten: had grete envye to consta
tin pat po was corouned king
and so pat pey bygonne to me
ne wer' azens him and assem
blede a gret host of hem pat
had ben bifore wip Mordred
and had ben driuen away &
pey deden muche sorowe poruz
al pat londe. pat o brop' ordeyne
de him to london for to take
pe Citee and pat oper to wyn
chest'. but Constantin come to
london and slough him pat
was pere and aft' he wente
to wynchest' and slough him
pat pe was also so pat bope
his enemyes were dede and
when Constantin had regnede
worpely. iiij. zer'. he deide and
lith att london ¶ Of pe kinges
Adelbright and of Edelf Ca°
iiij^xx xj°

After king Con
stantinus deth. pe were
ij. kingis in Britaigne
pat on me callede Adelbright
pat was a Danoys and helde
pe cuntray of Northfolk and
Southfolk. pat oper hizte Edelf
and was a britoun. and helde
a Nichole Lyndesaye and al pe
lande vn to humber ¶ These
ij kinges faste werrede to ge
dres. but aft' wardes pei were
accordid and lovede to gedre
as pei had ben born of o body
pe king Edelf had a suster pat
me callede Orewenne. and he
zaf hire poruz grete frendschep
to king Adelbright to wif. &
he bigate on hire a dought' pat
me callede Argentill. and in pe
iij. zer' aft' him com vppo' a sike
nesse pat nedis he most dye
and he sente to king Edelf his
brother in lawe. pat he schulde
come and speke with him. and
he come to him with good wille.

Tho prayede he pe kinge and
coniurede also in pe name of god
pat aft' whan he were dede
he schulde take Argentill his
dought' and pe lande and pat
he kepe here wel and norsshe
in his chaumbre and whenne
sche were of age he schulde
don hire ben mariede to the
strongest and worthiest man
pat he myzte fynde. and pan
he schulde zelde vp hire lande
azen. Edelf hit grauntede and
by hit confermede his prayer
And whanne Adelbright was

Chapters, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96 are missing

ben pope þat is to seyn aftir þe
incarnacioun of oure lord Jhesu
crist D xx iiij vij zer as the
cronicles tellyþ ¶ How seint
Austin baptizede and cristid
king Adelbright and two bi
sshoppis þat he made his fe
lawes c° iiij xx xvij°

Whanne seint Austyn
come ferst in to En
gelonde he arryvede
in þe Ile of Tenett and so pas
sede forþ and come vn to Caunt
berye and þe sojournede and
king Adelbright of Kent þat
was of þe lynage of Engist
fair vnderfenge Seint Austyn
and his felawes with muchel
honour and hem fonde al þat
hem nedid and ferþermore he
zaf hem a faire place þat now
is callede þe Abbaye of Seint
Austins in whiche place he liþ
him self shrynede ¶ And þis
king Adelbright was a good
man and with good wille herd
Seint Austins predicaciouns & (and)
zaf him leue to preche þorouz
alle his londe of Kent to tune
and to conuerte to him al the
peple þat he myzte ¶ Hit
fel so afterwarde þorouz goddis
grace þat in litil tyme þe king
him self was conuertede to
god and al his peple of his
lande was baptisede and
in þe mene tyme while the
peple tornede hem to god seint
Austin come to Rouchestre and
þe prechede goddis worde the
paynyms þerfore him scornede
and caste on him ryche tailes
so þat al his mantel was
honged ful of ryche tailes & (and)
for more despite þai caste vppon
him þe gottis of ryche and of
fisshe wherfore þe goode
man seint Austin was sore
annoyede and greuede and
prayede to god þat alle the
children þat shulde be born
afterwarde in þat citee of Rou
chestre most haue tailes ¶ And
whanne þe king herde & wiste
of þis vengeaunce þat was
falle þorouz Seint Austynes
prayer he lete make an hous
in honour of god wher in wym
men shulde haue children att
þe kynges ende in whiche
hous wymmen zit of þe citee
ben delivered of childe ¶ Whe
Seint Gregorye had herde
telle how þe englisshe men
were tornede to god and con
uertede he sent to Seint Austyn
his pallioun by a bisshop þat
me callede Paulyn and ma
de him primat and Erchebisshop
of alle Engelonde and Seinte

worde þat he þan schulde ordey
ne and make bisshopis in this
lande. And anon as Seint Au
stin had þe pallion of þe dig
nite of þe erchebisshop he made
ij bisshoppes of his felawes
þat come wiþ him fram Rome
on þat me callede Melit and
he duellede att London and þe
oþer me callede Justyn þat hel
de þe dignite of Rouchestre.
¶ And þis bisshop Mellite tho
wente to preche into Essex and
baptisede þe king of þe cuntre
þat me callede Sicebrith þat
was king Adelbrightes cosyn
his suster sone. ¶ Tho Justyne
wente to preche in Suthsex and
turnede muche of þe peple to
god. And Seint Austyn wente
him self prechinge þorugh out
Engelonde.

¶ **How Seint Au
stin wente into Walis þere þat
þe Britouns were and how
þei nolde nou3t be obedient
to þe Erchebisshop of Kaunt
erbyre. cap°. iiij. xviij°.**

Whanne alle Engelond
was baptisede and
turnede to god. Seint
Austyn wente in to þat londe
þere þat þe Britouns were and
for to kepe hem fro Englisshe
men þat is to seyn into Wa
lis. And þere he fonde monkes
and Abbeys and vij bisshoppes
for þe Britouns destroyede al
wey þe cristen peple þat Seint
Austin had conuertede. And saide
to þe bisshoppes þat he was a
legatt of Rome and primat of
al Engelond. And þat þei scholde
by al resoun to him be obedient
and þei sayde þat þei nolde
but to þe erchebisshop of Kar
lyoun and saide þei nolde ne
uer for no man þing ben obe
dient vn to þe englissh men. For
þe Englissh men þey sayde ber
ben oure adversaries and oure
enemyes and hauyþ dreuen vs
out of oure owne cuntree. and
we ben cristen men. And euere
haue ben. and þe Englissh men
hauyþ euermore ben paynymes.
But now late þat þei ben conuer
tede. ¶ Seint Austin my3te of
hem non oþer ansuer haue. but
sayden apertly þat þey nolde neuer
hem meke to him ne to þe pope
of Rome. And Seint Austin tur
nede þo a3en to Adilbright þat
was king of Kent and tolde hym
þat his folke nolde nou3t be to
no man obedient ne to noman
but to þe Erchebisshop of Karlyon.
And whenne þe king herde þis
he was sore annoyede. and sey
de þat he wolde hem destroye
and sent to Elfride kinge of þe

Northumbirlande þat was seke
þat he schulde come to him wiþ
al the power þat he myghte and
þat he schulde mete him att ley-
cestre and fram þennes þei wolde
gon in to Walis and destroye þe
Erchebisshop of karlioun and alle
þo þat had refusede saint Austin.

¶ How king Adelbright and þe
king Elfride quelde Brecinal
þat was a king of britouns þat
helde þe cuntre of leicestre. ca°

Hit bifel so þat ¶ iiij xx xix°
þere was a king Britoun
þat helde þe cuntre of
leycestre and alle þe cuntre a-
boute him of Brecinal. And þis
king Britoun herde telle þat þo
ij. englisshe kinges wolden mete
þere att leycestre for to wende in-
to Walis he lete ordeyne alle
þe power þat he had for to fizte
with þese two kinges but litel
it avayled him. for his folke þat
he had were slayn and him self
fled and loste his landes for euer-
more ¶ Than þese ij kinges Adel-
bright and Elfride duelled a
while att leycestre and departede
þe lande amonges hem and token
homages and feautez of folk of
þe cuntree. And after þei wente
towarde Walis. And þo of Wa-
lis had herde telle of þe discom-
fiture þat Brecinal had att ley-
cestre and were wonder sore
adrad of þo ij kinges. And nome
and chosen amonges hem goode
men and holy of heremytes. mon-
kes and prestes and prestes and of
oþer folk grete plente þat wen-
ten barfote and wolleward for to
haue mercy of þo ij king ¶ But
þo kinges were so sterne and so
wroþe þat þei nolde nauzt spe-
ke wiþ hem. but quelde hem
euerichon. allas þe sorowe for þei
ne sparede hem no more þan
þe wolf doth þe schepe. but smy-
ten of þe hedes of euerichone &
so alle were þei martirede þat to
hem come. þat is to vnderstande
B.C. and xl ¶ And afterwarde
þo ij kingis wente fro þennes
to Bangor for to quelle alle þo
þat þei myzte þere fynde of þe
Brittouns. and whan þe Britouns
þat herde þei assemblede and
ordeynede alle her power for to
fizte with hem ¶ þo was þe-
re a baroun in Walys þat me cal-
lede Bledrik of Cornewaile
þat somtyme was lord of De-
uenschire but þe king Adel-
bright had dryven him into
Walis and zeue him batayle
and att þat batayle was king
Adelbright slayn and Elfride
wounded sore and forsoke þe
felde and þe most part of his

folke slayn: and Elfride fley
in to Northumbirland þᵗ was
his owne lande and aftir ward
þe peple of leycestir þorȝe ma-
de worth strenghþe Cadwaladre
þat was Bregnaldes sone king
of leycestir and he aftir regned
nobly and worth grete honour.

How Cadwaladre king of leycestir and Elfride king of Northumbirlande were frendis. And of þe debate þᵗ aftir was bytwene Edwyne and Cadwalayn þat were boþe hir sones. Ca° centesimo.

And aftir þat þis batail
was done þe Britons
assemblede hem and
wente þennes and comen vn-
to leycestir. and made Cadwa-
ladre þat was Bregnaldes sone
king of leycestir and of alle
þe cuntre: and aftir þat he as-
semblede a grete host and saide
he wolde gon in to Northum-
birlande to destroye king El-
fride and slee him yf þat he
myȝte. and whenne he was
comen þedir: frendes wente
so bitwene hem and made
hem acorded in þis manere.
þᵗ Elfride schulde holde alle
þe lande fram humbre vnto
Scotlande and Cadwaladre
schulde haue al þe londe a þis
half humbre vn to þe Southe.
and aftir þat þei becomen good
frendes al hir lif duringe &
lovede to gedre: as þei had ben
two breþeren. And þis Elfride
had a sone þat me callede Ed-
wyne þat had and helde alle
þe londe of Northumbirlond
aftir his fadres deth as his
fader had holde al his lyf ty-
me. And Cadwaladre had
anoþer sone þat me callede.
Cadwalyn þat helde his fa-
dres lande as he hit helde
while he was alyue and þey
lovede to gedre as þey had
ben breþeren and þe love laste
by twene hem: but only .ij.
ȝer. and aftir bigan debate
bitwene hem þorȝ a Duerne(?) en-
vious cosyn of Cadwalyn þᵗ
men callede Brians. so þat þei
assemblede a stronge ost in boþe
parties. and att þe laste hit bifel
þat Cadwalyn was disconfi-
tede. and Edwynne him pur-
suede and drof him fro place
to place: so att þe laste he fley
into Irlonde. and þis oþer distroy-
ede his lande and caste adoun
castelles and brente his ma-
nors and departede al Cadwalay-
ns londe amonge his frendes
And longe tyme aftir come
Cadwalayn aȝen from Irlonde

with a stronge power and in playn
bataylle quelde Edwyne and
alle his frendschippis and name
ly þo þat with helde his lan
des þoruȝ Edwyng ȝifte.

How king Oswolde was quel
de þoruȝ king Cadwalyn and
Peanda. and how Oswy þat
was seint Oswaldus broþer
regnede after him and quelde
Peanda. Capitulum centesimo primo.

When þat Edwyn
was slayn. Offrius his
sone vnder toke the
werre aȝens Cadwalyn his
fem. so þat þis Offrius deide
duringe þe werre. and after þe
deth of Offrius. þo regnede a
gentil cristen man þat muche
lovede god. þat had alle the
lande of Northumberland by
heritage þat me callede Os
wolde and he was kyng of al
þe lande but for as muche as
he was frende to Edwyne &
helde a gret part of þe lande of
Cadwalyn. þe same Cadwaly
werrede vpon him and drof
him towarde Scotlonde & whe
Cadwalyn saw þat he wolde
noȝt abide. Cadwalyn wolde
no lenger him pursue. but toke
summe of his folke to Peanda
his broþer in lawe. and prayede
Peanda to pursue Oswolde til
þat he were take and slayn
And Cadwalyn turned tho
hom aȝen. When Oswolde
herde þe tidinge þat Cadwa
lyn turnede home aȝen. he
wolde no lenger flee. but a
bode Peanda and ȝaf him ba
taile. and Peanda was discom
fitede and fley and come aȝē
to Cadwalyn and seide þat
he wolde neuer holde a fote
of londe of him. but if hit
were so þat he wolde a venge
him of Oswolde. Cadwaly
lete assemble a grete host for
to fighte with Oswold so þat
he and Peanda come vnto
Northumberland and ȝeuen ba
taille vnto Oswolde. And in
þat same bataile was Oswold
slayn and his heued smyten of
and after he was enterede att
þe abbey of Bardeneye in whi
che place god hath wrouȝte for hym
meny a fair miracle boþe þe
and ellis where. And anon
Oswy his broþer entrede in to his
londe al þe lande þat was Os
waldus and þe folk of Northu
berland lovede him wonder
wel and helde him for her lord
but he hadde men of his kyn
worthy ynow þat wolde haue
departede þe londe. and they
werrede to gedre and for as

muche as þei were nouȝt
strenge ynow þey comen to Pe
anda and praiede him of help
and socour and bihete him
of þat londe largely vppon co-
uenaunt þat he wolde hem
gyde and helpe and counceile
Peanda herde his prayer and
so spake with þe kyng Cad-
walyn þat he schulde ordeyne
a grete host and fast ordeyne
him in to Northumbirlande
for to fiȝte with Oswey · and
Oswy was a meke man and
muche louede pees and charite
and praiede Peanda of loue
and pees : and proferede him of
golde and of siluer grete
plente ¶ And þis Peanda was
so proude þat he nolde graunte
him pees for no maner þing
but for al þing he wolde wiþ
hem fiȝte · so att þe laste þe
was sette a day of batayle ⁊
Oswy euer had trist vppon god
and þis Peanda trist to mu-
che vppon his pride and vppo
his host þat he had and to ge-
dre þei metten egerly : but
Peanda anon was discumfited
and slayn and þat was aftir
incarnacion of oure lord Ihu
crist · d · c · ⁊ · lv ȝere ¶ And
þis Oswey þo regnede xxviij
ȝere · and a king þat me called

Oswyn þat was Peandas his
cosin werrede vppon king Os-
wy and to gedre fouȝten · but
Oswy hadde þe victorie and
Oswyn was discomfitede and
slayn and liþ att Tynmemouth ·

Of king Offa þat was souereyne of alle þo kinges of Engelonde · and how euerich werrede vppon oþer in his tyme · Capitulo C° secundo ·

It bifel so þat alle þe
kinges in þat tyme þat
were in þe londe · as
þo of Westsex · Merchenerich ·
Estangle of Kent and of South-
sex and of oþer costes eche
werrede vppon oþer · and he þat
was most myȝtiest byname
þe londe of him þat was feble
last ¶ But þe was a king a-
monges hem þat me callede
Offa · þat was Seint Oswal-
dus kyn · þis Offa conquerede
alle þe kinges of þe londe ⁊
regnede aboue hem alle
¶ And so grete was þe werre
in euery cuntre bitwene kinges
þat no man myȝte write how
þe lande wente · But abbotis
priours · and men of religion
writen þe lifes and þe dedes
of kinges : and how longe eu-
erich regnede had : and in what
cuntre : and in what manere

And tolde him how queyntly
he had quelde king Edmunde
for enchesoun and loue of him
so þat king Knoght al Engelond
in his power holliche mizt haue
O þou fals traitour hast þou my
trewe brother slayn for enche-
soun of me. a man þat y moste
louede in þe worlde. Now be
my trouthe and be myn heuede
y schal for thy trauaylle þe wel
rewarde as þou hast deseruede
And anon lete him take & binde
hondes and fete in maner of
a traitour and lete caste him in
to þe Thamyse and in þis ma-
ner þe false traitour ended his lyf
þis king nome þe too children &
toke hem þe Abbot of Westmyn-
ster to warde and to kepe til he
wiste what was best wt hem
to done. How king Knoght
sente Edmundes sone ouer into
Denemarc for to slee & how
þei were sauede. Cao. Cmo. xvimo.

It bifell sone after þat
king Knoght had al þe
lande in his hande &
spoused þe quene Emme þorow
consente of his baronage. for sche
was a faire womman and was
Eldredus wyf and þe dukes
suster of Normandye. and þei
loueden togedre wt muche
loue as resoun wolde. The
kynge axede vpon a day coun-
cel of þe quene what was best
for to done wiþ þe sones þat
were Edmundes Irensides.
Sire quod sche þei beth righte
heires of þe londe and yf they
liuen þey wil do zow muche
sorowe wiþ werre. And þer-
fore lete sende hem into a straunge
lande afer to som man þt may
hem defoule and destroye. The
king anon lete calle a danoys
þat me callede walgar and
commaunded him þat he schulde
lede þo ii. children into Dene-
marc and so don for hem and
ordeyne þat neuer þei herde
more tydinge of hem. Sire saide
þis walger gladly zour comaun-
dement schal be done. And
nome þo ii. children and ladde
hem in to Denemarc and for
as muche as he saw þat the
children were wonder faire
and also make. he had of hem
grete pitee and routhe & wolde
nouzt hem slee but ladde hem
to þe kynge of hungre for to so-
iere. for þis walgar was wel
knowen wiþ þe king and wel
beloued. Anon þe king axed
where þe children were. &
walgar tolde him and saide
þat þei were þe righte heires
of Engelonde and þerfore men

wolde hem distroye: and þerfore
were to zow þei ben come merci
and helpe to be reche. And for
wyþe zif þei mowe leuen zour
men þei schulle bicomen and
of zow þei schulle halde alle
hire landes. þe king of hungre
hem vnderfenge wiþ michel
honour and lete hem worthily to
be kepte. And þus hit bifel after
warde þat Edwyn þe zonger
broþer deide and Edwarde þe
elder broþer leuede a faire man
and a stronge and large of body
and gentil and curteis of con
dicions. so þat alle men him
louede. And þis Edwarde
in þe Cronicles ys callede and
ye Englisshe men Edwarde
þe Outlaghe and whenne he
was made knyght þe kinges
doughter of hungre so miche
him louede for his godenesse
and his fairenesse þat sche ma
de and callede him hire derlinge.
þe king þat was hire fader
perceyuede wel þe loue þat was
bitwene hem too. and had
non oþer but þat doughter. and
þe king forchade his doughter
to noman as wel as he dede
vn to him. þat sche louede &
sche him. and he zaf hire to
him wiþ good wille and Ed
warde hir spousede wiþ michel
honour. þe king of hungre courte
after alle his baronage & made
a solempne feste and a riche
weddinge. and made alle
men to vnderstonde þat he
schulde be king whenne þat
he were dede. and þerfore alle
þei maden grete ioye and of
þat tydinge þei were ful glad
þis Edwarde bygate vppon
þis lady. a sone me callede Ed
gar heþing. and afterwarde
a doughter þat me callede Mar
garete þat afterwarde was
Quene of Scotlonde. and by
þe kyng of Scotlande þat me
callede Malcolom sche had a
doughter þat man callede Maude
þat was Quene afterwarde
of Engelonde þourz king henry
þat was þe first sone of þe
conquerour þat hire weddid. &
he bigatte on hire a douzter þat
me callede Maude þat after
warde was Emperes of almayne
and of þis Maud come the
king of Engelonde þat in to
þis day is callede henry the
Emprices sone. And zit had
þis Edwarde anoþer doughter by
his wyf þat me callede Cristian
and sche was a nonne.

How king Knoght þat was
a straunge man conquered
Norwey: and how he was

Aftir warde meke and milde
Capitulo Centesimo .xx.mo

Now have ȝe herde
of Edmundus sones
wt pensyde þe king
knoght wende þat þei hadde
ben ded as he had comanded
walgar by forn. ¶ And this
knoght had in his hande alle
Englonde and Denmark &
aftir þat he wente to Norwey
þat lande to conquere. But
þe king of þe lande þat me cal
lede Olaf come with his pe
ple and wende his lande
wel have kepte and defende
And so þere he faughte with
hem til att þe laste he was slayn
in þat bataille and þo this
knoght come al þat lande
in to his hande ¶ And whan
he had conquerede Norwere
and taken feaute and homages
þo he come aftir aȝen in to
Englonde and helde him
self so grete lorde þat him þouȝt
in alle þe worlde his pere no
man was. And become so
prowd and hauten þat it was
grete wondir ¶ And so hit
byfel vpon a day as he had
herde masse att Westmynster
and wolde have gon in to
his paleys. þe wawes of þe
Tamyse so swiftely aȝens
him comen þat al most þey
touchede his fete. ¶ Þo saide
þe king wiþ a prowde herte y
comaunde þe watir to turne
aȝen. or elles y shal þe make
þe wawes for his comaunde
ment wolde nouȝt spare.
but flowed euer in hyer more
and more ¶ Þe king was so
prowd of herte þat he wolde
nouȝt flee þe watir but abode
stille in þe watir. and bete þe
watir wiþ a smal ȝerde þat
he helde in his hande. and
comaundede þe watir þat hit
schulde wende no ferþer. but
for al his comaundement þe
watir wolde nouȝt cesse but
euer wax more and more an
hier so þat þe king was alle
wete and stode depe in the
watir ¶ And whanne he sawe
þat he had abide þere to longe
and þe watir wolde no þinge
done his comaundement. þo sone
he wiþ drowe him and tho
stode vpon a stone and helde
his hondes in hye and sayde
þis worde in heryinge of alle
þe peple ¶ Þis god þat makiþ
þe see þis arise an hye: he is
king of alle kingis and of miȝ
tis most. and y am a caytyf &
a man dedly and he may neuer
dye (And he may never dye:)

And alle þing doth his comaun-
dement and to him is obedy-
ent. ¶ To þat god I praye he be
my warraunt for I knowliche
me caitif feble and of no power
and þerfore I wil gon to Rome
withoute eny lettynge my wyc-
kydnesse to punisshe and me to
amende. ¶ For of þat god I clayme
me my londe for to holde and
of noon other. And anon made
his cher and him self wente
to Rome withoute eny lettynge
and by þe wey dede manye al-
mesdedis and whenne he come
to Rome also. ¶ And whenne
he had ben þere and for his syn-
nes done penaunce he come a-
ȝen in to Engelonde and bicome
a good man and an holy and
lefte al maner pride and stoute-
nesse and leuede an holy lyf al
his lyf after and made two abbeys
of Seint Benet on in Engelond
and þat other in Norweye for as
muche as he louede specially
Seint Benet. And for alle other
Seintz. ¶ And muche he louede
also Seint Edmunde þe king.
and ofte he ȝaf grete ȝiftes to
þe hous. wherfore hit was
made riche and he ȝaf grete
ȝiftes to þe hous. wherfore
hit was made riche. and whe
he had regnede xx ȝer he deide
and lith att Wynchestre.

¶ Off king Harold þat leuer had gon on fote þan ryde on hors. Capitulo Centesimo xxi^{mo}.

This knoght of wham
we haue spoken before
had two sones by his
wyf and þat one was callede
Hardi knoght and þat other Harold
and he was so liȝte of fote þat
men callede him þerfore comelich
Harold Harefote. And þis Harold
had noþing þe condiciouns and
þe maner of king knoght þat
was his fader. for he sette but
litil prys of cheualrye ne of
curtesye ne of worship: but
only by his owne wille.
And he bicome so wicked þat he
exiled his moder. and she
wente out of þe londe in to
fflaundres and þere duellede
with þe erle. wherfore after þe
was neuer good loue bitwene
him and his broþer for his broþer
him hatede dedly and whenne
he had regnede ii ȝer and a
litel more he deide and lith
at Westmynstre.

¶ Of kinge Hardeknoght þat was Haroldes broþer. Capitulo C^{o} xxii^{o}.

Aftir þis Harold Harefote
regnede his broþer Har-
deknoght a noble knyȝt
and a worthy and muche loued

Chirche & alle maner good
nesse. ¶ And whenne þis Har
de knoght had regnede a litel
while: he lete vncouer his
broþer Harold and smyte of his
heuede þat was his broþer att
Westmynster. and lete caste þe
heuede in to a gonge and þe
bodye in to Thamyse and after
come fysshers. and toke þe body
wiþ here nettis be nyȝte and
bere him to Seint clementis
chirche and þere him beryede &
in þis maner avenged him
Hardeknoght of his broþer for in
non oþer maner he myȝte nouȝt
ben avenged. ¶ This king Harde
knoght was so large ȝeuer of
mete and drinke: þat his ta
bles were euery day þre tymes
ful wiþ real metis for his owne
meyne and for alle þat comen
vn to his court to ben refreshe
ssede of real metis. ¶ And
þis king Hardeknoght sente
after Emme his moder & made
hire come aȝen in to Engelond
for he was driue out of Enge
londe whiles þat Harold har
fote regnede þorȝ counceil of
þe Erle Godewyne: þat þo was
þe grettest lord of al Engelond
next þe king. and most myȝte
done what he wolde þorȝ al
Engelond þorȝ his comaunde
ment for as muche as he had
spousede þe douȝter of þe good
king knoght þat was a danoys
which douȝter he had by his
firste wyf. ¶ And whene þis
queue was dryue out of En
gelonde and come to þe Erle
of fflaundres þat me callede
Baldewyne his cosyn: he fonde
hire þere al þing þat her nedid
vn to þe tyme þat sche wente
aȝen in to Engelond þat the
king Hardeknoght had sente a
ȝen for hire þat was her sone
and made hire come aȝen wiþ
muchel honour. ¶ þis king Harde
knoght whenne he had .v. ȝer
regnede he deide and liþ att
Wynchester. ¶ Off þe vilonye
þat þe danoys dede to þe Englissh
men. Wherfore fram þat tyme
afterwarde was no danoys
makede king of Engelonde.
Capitulo Centesimo .xxiij.mo

After þe deth of kynge
Hardeknoght for as he
had no childe of his
body by gete: þe Erlis and Barouns
assemblede & maden a counceil
and nome more after þat time
no man þat was a danoys þorȝ
he were neuer so grete amo
ges hem he schulde neuer ben
king of Engelond for þe despite
þat þe danoys had done to

Englisshe men ¶ ffor euermore
biforn honde yf hit were so þt
englisshe men and Danoys hap
peden to mete vpon a brigge þe
englisshe men schulde nouȝt
ben so hardy to meve ne stir
o fote but stande stille til þat
þe Danoys were passede forth
And more ouer if þe Englisshe
men had nouȝt bowede a doun
her hevedes to don reuerence
vnto þe Danoys: þey schulde
haue ben bete and defoulede
and suche maner despites &
vilonyes deden þe Danoys to
oure englisshe men wherfore
þey were dryuen out of the
lande after tyme þat king Hard
knoght was dede. for þei had
no lorde þat hem myȝt mayn
tene in þis maner voided the
Danois Engelond þat neuer þei
comen aȝen ¶ þe Erlis and
Barounes by here comun assent
and counceyle senten in to Nor
mandye for to seche þo two
breþeren Alured and Edwarde
þat were duellinge wiþ the
Duke Richard þat was here em
in entent for to corounne Alured
þe elder broþer and him make
kynge of Engelonde And of
þis þing to make an ende: þe
Erlis and Barounis made here
oth. But þe Erle Godewyne

of Westsex falsly and traytour
ly þouȝte to slee þo ij. breþeren
anon as þei schulde come into
Engelonde in entent for to
make his sone Harold king þe
whiche he was bigetete vpon
his wyf þat was king knoght
douȝter þat was a Danoys.
¶ And þis Godewyn priueliche
wente him vnto Southampton
for to mete þere þo ij. breþren wher
þat þei schulde come to londe
And þus hit bifelle þt þe mes
sangere þat wente in to Norman
dye founde nouȝt but only
Alured þat was þe elder broþer
for Edwarde his broþer wente
was to Hungre for to speke wt
his cosyne Edward þe outlaghe
þat was Edmundes sone wiþ
þe Irenside ¶ þe messangere
tolde and saide to Alured how
þat þe Erlis and Barounis of
Engelonde sente after him
and þat he boldeliche schulde
come in to Engelonde And
vnderfonge þe reame for king
Hardeknoght was dede and
alle þe Danoys dryuen wher
out of þe londe ¶ How Gode
wyn þe false traitour toke Alu
red vpon Gyldesdoun whenne
he come fro Normandye to ben
kyng of Engelonde and dede
hym ben martirede in þe Ile

Of Ely ca° centesimo .xxiiii°.

Whenne Alured herde
þis tydinge he þankid
god and into schippe
wente wiþ al þe hast þat he
myʒte and passede þe See and
arryuede att Southampton þer
þat Godewyn þe tretour was
and þo þis tratour sawe þat
he was come he welcomede
him and vnderfenge him wiþ
muche ioye. and saide þat he
wolde lede him to london þer
þat alle þe barouns and lordes
of Engelonde him abode for to
maken him king. and so they
wente in her way towarde lon
don. and whenne þei comen
vppon Gildesdoun þo saide þe
tratour Godewyn to Alured &
saide take kepe ser & se aboute
ʒow lope in þe lifte side and
in þe righte side. And of al ʒe
schullen be king and of suche
an hundred more ¶ Now for
sothe ser Alured y bihote and
yf y be king y schal ordeine and
make suche lawes wher of god
and alle folk schullen holde
hem wel paiede ¶ Now had
þe tratour commanded alle
his men þat were wiþ him þat
whenne þei were come vppon
Gildesdoun þat þei schulden
slee alle þo þat were Aluredis

companye þat com wiþ him
from Normandye. and after þei
taken Alured and laden him
in to Ile of Ely and þer putt out
boþe his eyen of his heued and
afterward bringe him vnto
deþ. and so þei deden. for þei
quelde alle his companye þat
þer were in nombre of gentil
men þat weren comen wiþ Alu
red from Normandye and after
nomen Alured and lad him
in to þe Ile of Ely and putte
out his eyen of his hede and
rentte his wombe and nomen
þe chief of his bowellis and
putt a stake in to þe grounde &
an ende of þe bowellis þer to
fastenede and wiþ nedeles
of iren þei pricken þe good child
and so made him gon aboute
þe stake til þat his bowellis
were drawen alle out. and
so deide þere Alured þorʒ tre
soun of þe Erle Godewyn.
¶ Whenne þe lordes of Engelonde
had herde and wiste how Alu
red þat schulde haue ben her
king was putt vnto þe deth
þorʒ þe false tratour þe Erle
Godewynne þei weren alle
wonder wroth and swore by
twene hem by god and by
his holy names þat he schulde
dye in more werse deth þan.

dede Wulf of Stratton þat had be traytoure his lorde Edmunde Irensyde. And þei wolde haue taken him and putt him vnto þe deth. but þe forsaid traitour fleyȝen was in to Denmark. And þei helde him .iiij. ȝere and more and lost al his londes in Engelonde.

Off Seint Edwarde þe confessour þat Aldredes broþer how he was king of Engelonde. Capitulo Centesimo xxv°.

And whanne þis was done alle þe barouns of Engelonde senten anoþer tyme into Normandye þat Edwarde schulde come into Engelonde with muchel honour. and þis Edwarde in his childehode louede almyghty god. and him dradde. and in honeste and clennesse lad his lyf. and hatede synne as deth. And whenne he was crownede and anoynted wiþ ryal power. he forȝate nouȝt his good maners and condiciouns þat he first vsede. and forȝatte alle goode customes for no mannes honour ne for no richesse ne for no mannes hyenesse but euermore ȝaf him to goodnesse and wel louede god and almesdede and louede god and holy chirche passinge alle manere þing And pore men also and hem louede and helde as þei had ben his owene breþeren and to hem ofte ȝaf grete almesse wiþ good wille.

Off þe ferste speciale þat god schewede for Seint Edwardus loue by his lyf. Capitulo Centesimo xxvj°.

Hit byfel vppon a day as he wente fram þe chirche of Westmynster and had herde masse of Seint John euangelist for as muche as he louede Seint John euangelist more specially after god and oure lady þan he dede any oþer seint. And so þere come to him a pilgrime and prayed him for þe loue of god and of Seint John euangelist som good him for to ȝeue. And þe kinge priueliche nome his ringe of his finger priuely þat noman perceyued hit and ȝaf hit þe pilgrime and he hit vnderfenge and wente þennes. This good king Edwarde made alle the good lawes of Engelonde þat ȝitt ben most holden and was so meke and so full of pitte þat noman miȝte ben more.

How þe Erle Godewyn come aȝen in to Engelonde and had aȝen al his londe. and afterwarde Seint Edwarde wedded his doughter. Capitulo Centesimo xxvij°.

Whanne þe Erle Gode
wyn þat was duellyng
in Denmark had mu
chel herde of þe goodnesse of
Edward and þat he was ful
of pitee and þouzt þat he wolde
gon azen into Engelond for
to seche and to haue grace of
him and þat he mizt haue his
londe azen in pees and array
ed him as muche as he mizte
and putt him towarde þe see
and come into Engelond to
London þere þat þe king was
þat tyme and alle þe lordes
of Engelonde and helde a par
lement ¶ Godewyn sente
to hem þat weren his frendes &
were þe most gretest lordes of
þe londe and prayede hem to
beseche þe kinges grace for hym
and that he wolde his pees
and his londe grunten him his
enemys ladden him bifore þe
king for to seche grace ¶ And
anon as þe king him sawe
he appelede him of tresoun &
of þe deth of Alurede his broþer
and þese wordes vnto him
saide ¶ Traitour Godewyn
quod þe king I þe appele þat þou
hast bytrayede and slayn my
broþer Alured ¶ Certis sire quod
Godewyn sauve zoure grace
and zoure pees and zoure

lordship I neuere him bytrayde
ne slouzhe and þerof I putte me
in rewarde of zoure court ¶ Now
faire lordes quod þe king ze þat
ben my kynges Erles and Barons
of þe londe þat here ben assem
bled ful wel ze haue herde
myn appele and þe answere
also of Godewyn and þerfore I
wile þat ze awarde and doth
ryzte ¶ The Erles and Barons
þo drowen hem alle to gedre
for to don his awarde by hem
self and so þei spaken dyuersliche
amonges hem for somme sayde
þat þere was neuer alliaunce by
homage seruice ne by lord
ship bytwene Godewyn and
Alured for which þing þei mizt
him drawe ¶ And att þe laste
þei demede þat he schulde putt
him in þe kinges mercye Alto
gadres ¶ Tho spake þe Erle Le
wyche of Couentre a good man to god
and to al þe worlde and tolde
his resoun in this manere and
sayde þe Erle Godewyn is þe
beste frended man of Engelond
after þe king and wel mizte
hit ben sayn sauve þat wiþ
oute counceil of Godewyn Alu
red was neuer putt vnto deþ
¶ Wherfore I awarde as touching
my parte þat hym self and his
sone and eny of oure xii Erles þat

ben his frendis wente bifore
þe king charged wiþ as much
gold and silver as we moste
bere bitwene oure hondis and
preyinge þe king forȝeue his
evel wille to þe Erle Godewyn
and restorye his homage & his
londe ȝelde aȝen. and alle þei
acorded vnto þat awarde. and
comen in þis manere þat is above
sayde everyche of hem wiþ gold
and silver as muche as þei miȝte
bere bitwene here hondes bifore
þe king. and þei praiden þe forȝiuenes
and remanere of hire acorde and
of here awarde. ¶ þe king wolde
nouȝt hem gayn: but as muche
as þei wolde ordeyne and graunted
and confermede and so was þe
Erle Godewyn acorded with
þe king and hadde aȝen al his
londe. ¶ And afterwarde he bare
him so wel and so wysliche þat
þe king lovede him wonder
muche and wiþ him was ful
prive. And with inne a litel
time þe king lovede him so much
þat he spousede Godewyns
douȝter and made hire quene.
And notheles for al þat þouȝ þe
king had a wyf he lovede ever
more in chastite and in clennesse
of body wiþ oute eny flesshly de
de doynge wiþ his wyf. And þe
quene also in hire half ladde

holy lyf. ii ȝer. and deide and
afterwardis þe king lovede alle
his lyf wiþ oute eny wyf./
¶ þe king ȝaf þe Erldome of Ox
enforde to harolde þat was Go
dewyns sone and made him
erle. And so wel þei were be
lovede boþe þe fader and he
and so prive with þe king boþe
þe fader and þe sone þat þei
miȝt done what þinge they
wolde by riȝht. For aȝens
riȝhte he wolde no þing done
for no manere man. so good
and trewe he was of conscience
and þerfore oure lord ihesu crist
grete special love to him schew
ede. ¶ Hows Seint Edwarde
sawe Swyn king of Denne
mark drenchede in þe see in
þe Sacrament as he stode &
herde his masse. Ca° C xxviij°.

HIt byfel vpon Whit
sunday as king Ed
warde herde his mas
se in þe grete cherche of West
mynster riȝht at þe levacion
of ihesu cristis body. ¶ And as
alle men were gadered in to the
cherche and comen nere þe
auter seinge for to see þe
king his hondes lefte vp an
hye and a grete laughter toke
vp. wherfore alle þat aboute
him stode gretly gonne wonder

and aftir masse þei axed why
þe kinges laughter was

¶ ffayre lordes quod þe king sithe
þe ȝonger þat was kinge of
Denmark come in to þe see wt
al his power for to haue come
into Engelonde vppon vs for
to haue werrede: and y sawe hym
and all his folk drenchede
in þe hye see. and al þis sawe
y in þe eleuacion of ihesu cristis
body by twene þe prestis han
des. and y had þerof so miche
ioye þat y myzte nouzt my laugh
ter holde ¶ And þe Erl leue
riche besides him stode att the
leuacion. and openliche he sawe
þe forme of bred turne in to
lykenesse of a ȝonge childe and
name vp his right hande and
first blessede þe king and aftir
warde þe Erl. and þe Erl anon
turnede him anon towardes
þe kynge to make him see þat
holy sighte ¶ And þo saide þe
king. Sire Erl quod hey see wel
þat ȝe sey þankede be god þat
y haue honourede my god my
sauiour visibely ihesu crist in form
me of man whos name ben
blessede in all worldes Amen.

¶ How þe ringe þat saint Edward
had ȝeue to a pore pilgrym for
þe loue of saint Iohn euange
list come aȝen vn to king Ed

warde Capitulo C.mo xxx.o

This noble man Saint
Edwarde regnede xxiij
ȝere and þus hit bifalle
vppon a tyme bifore er he deide
þat ij men of Engelonde
were wente to þe holy londe &
hadden done hire pilgrimage and
were goynge aȝen towarde hire
owene cuntree ¶ And as they
wente in þe wey þey mette a
pilgrime þat curteisly hem salue
de and axede of hem in what
lande and in what cuntre þey
were borne. and þey saide in
Engelonde ¶ þo axede he ho
was king of Engelonde and þei
answerde and saide þe good king
Edward. ffayre frendis þo saide
þe pilgrime whenne þat ȝe come
into ȝoure cuntre aȝen I praye
ȝow þat ȝe wolde gon vn to
kinge Edwarde and ofte times
him grete in my name & oftene
times þanke him of his grete
curtesye þat he to me hap done
and namelicke for þe ringe þat
he ȝaf me whenne he hadde herde
masse att westmynster for saint
Iohns loue euangelist. and nome
þo þe ringe and toke hit to the
pilgrimes and saide y praye ȝow
for to gon and bere þis ringe
and take hit to king Edwarde
and telle him þat y sende hit hym

and a ful riche ȝifte y wile him
ȝeue. ffor vppon þe twelf day he
schal come to me. and euermore
dwelle in blisse wiþouten ende
Sire saide þe pilgrimes what
man ben ȝe and in what place
is ȝoure dwellynge. ¶ ffaire
frendes quoþ he y am John euan
gelist. and am dwellinge wiþ
almyghty god. and ȝoure kinge
Edwarde is my frende and y
loue him specially for enchesoun
þat he hath euer leuede in clennesse
and is clene maide. and y praye
ȝow my message al for to done
as y haue to ȝow sayde. ¶ When
seint John euangelist had thus
hem charged sodeinliche he voi
ded out of hire sighte þe pilgrimes
þo þankede almyghti god and
wente forth in hir way. ¶ And
whane þei had gon ij or iij mile
þei bygonne to wexen wery and
sette a doun hem for to reste and
so þei fille a slepe. ¶ And
whanne þei has slepte wel on
of hem awoke and lifte vp his
hed and lokede aboute and saide
vn to his felawe arise vp and
wende we in oure way what
saide þat o felawe to þat oþer wher
be we now. ¶ Certis saide þat
oþer hit semeth me þat hit is
nouȝt þe same cuntre þat we
laide vs in for to reste & slepe

for þei were þo fram Jerslm but
iij miles. ¶ þei nome vp hire
handes and blessede hem and
wente forth in hire way and as
þei wente in hire way þei sawe
schepherdes goynge with hire
schep þat speken non oþer langa
ge but englissche. ¶ Leue frendis
quoþ on of þe pilgrimes what
cuntre is þis and who is lorde þer
of. And on of þe schepherdes
answerde þis is þe cuntre of kent
in Englonde of þe whiche þe
good king Edwarde is lord.
þe pilgrimes þankede þo almyghti
god and seint John euangelist
and wente forth in his way &
come to Caunterberye and fro
þennes vn to london and þere
þei fonde þe king and tolde hym
fro þe bygynnynge vn to the
ende as muche as seint John
had hem chargede and of alle
þingis how þei spedde by the
weye and toke þe ringe to king
Edwarde and he vnderfonge
hit and þankede almyghty god
and seint John euangelist &
þo made him a redy any day fro
day for to wende out of þis lyf
when god wolde for him sende.

¶ How seint Edward deide on xij ¶ day. ca° vj. x°

And after hit
felle þus in cristemasse
euene as þe holy man

Edwarde was att goddis seru
ise matines for to here of þat hye
feste he bicome ful sike and
in þe morowe andurede with
muche peine þe masse for to here
and after lete him be lad in to
his chaumbre þere for to reste
him: But in to his halle amonges
his barouns and his knyȝtis myȝt
he nouȝt come hem for to comforte
and solace as he was wonte for
to done att þat worthy feste.
Wherfore alle his myrþe & com
forte amonges alle þat were in
þe halle was turnede in to care
and sorowe for enchesoun þat
þei drad for to lese here good lord
þe king. ¶ And vppon seint john
his day euangelist þat þo come
next þe king vnderfenge his
riȝtis of holy chirche as fallith
to eny cristene man and abode þe
mercy and þe wille of god.
¶ And þe ii pilgrimes he lete bifore
him come and ȝaf him riche ȝiftis
and bitoke hem to god ¶ And also
þe Abbot of Westmynster he lete
byfore him come and toke him
þat rynge in honour of god & seint
marie and of seint john þe euange
list and þe Abbot nome and putt
hit amonge oþer relikes. so þat it is
att Westmynster and euermore shal
be ¶ And so lay þe king sike tille
þe twelfþ euen and þo deide the
king Edwarde att Westmynster
and þere lith he for whos loue
god hath done manye meracles.
And þis was in þe ȝere of in
carnacion of oure lord ihesu crist
M¹ lxvi ȝer and after he was
translatid and putt in to the
schryne þorouȝ þo noble marter
seint thomas of Caunterbery.

¶ How harold þat was Godewyn
nis sone was made king. and
how he scapede fro þe duke of
Brittaigne ca° vi^xx xi^mo

When seint Edwarde
was gon out of this
worlde and was gon
to god and worthely enterede
as perteynede to suche a lorde
for to ben þe barouns of þe lan
de wolde haue had Edwarde
helyngus sone to Edwarde þe
outlaghe þat was Edmundis
sone ireniside to ben king for
as muche as he was moste
kyndest kinges blood of the
reaume ¶ But haroldis sone
þorouȝ þe Erle Godewynne &
þe strengþe of his fader Gode
wyn and þorouȝ oþer grete lordes
of þe reaume þat were of his
kyn and vn to him helde seisede
al Engelonde in to his hande
and anon lete crowne him
kyng after þe enterement of
Saint Edwarde ¶ This harold

þat was Godewynus sone þe
secunde 3er after þat seint
Edwarde was dede. wolde
haue gon in to Flaundres. but
he was dryue þorugh tempest
into þe cuntre of Pountyf &
þer he was take and brou3hte
to þe Duke William wolde
haue ben avengede vpon hym
for enchesoun þat þe erle Go
dewyne þat was Haroldis
fader had lete quelle Alured
þat was seint Edwardis
broþer. and principally for enche
soun þat Alured was quene
Emme sone þat was Richar
des fader Duke of Norman
dye þat was a sire to þe duke
William. ¶ And neþeles
whenne þe Duke William
had Harolde in prisoun and
vnder his power for as mu
che as þis Harolde was a
noble knyght wyse and wor
thye of bodye and þat his
fader and he were acorded
wiþ þe good king Edwarde
and þerfore wolde nou3t mys
done hym but alle maner
þinges þat bitwene hem
were spoken and ordeynede
Harolde by his good wille
swere vpon a boke and vpo
holy seintes þat he schulde
spouse and wedde duke

Williames dou3hter after the
deþ of seint Edwarde and þat
he schulde besily done his
deuer for to kepe and saf þe
reaume of Engelonde to the
profite and avauntage of duk
William. ¶ And whenne Ha
rolde had made þis his oth
vnto duke William he lete hi
gon and 3af hym menye riche
3iftes. ¶ And he þo wente þennes
and come in to Engelonde. And
anon dede in þis manere when
seint Edwarde was dede and
as a man falsliche for swore he
lete croune hym king of Enge
londe. and falsly brake þe coue
nauntz þat he had made bifore
wiþ duke William. wherfore he
was hym wonder wroth and
swore þat he wolde vpon hym
ben avengede what euer so
hym by fel. ¶ And anon Willia
lete assemble a grete ost and
come in to Engelonde to aven
ge hym vpon Harolde. and to con
quere þe londe yf þat he my3te
And in þe same 3ere þat Harolde
was crounede Harolde Harefhen
ge king of Denmarc arryvede
in Scotlande and þou3t haue
ben king of Engelonde and he
come in to Engelonde and quel
de and robbede and destroyede
al þat he my3te til þat he come

to york and þere he quellede me
nye men of armes. a þousande
and an hundred prestis.
Whenne þis tidinge come to
þe king he assemblede a strenge
power and wente for to fighte
wiþ Harolde of Denmark &
wiþ his owene hande him
quellde: and þe Danoys were
discumfitede and þo þat lefte
alyf wiþ muchel sorowe fley
to her schippis and þus king
Harolde of Engelonde quellde
king Harolde of Denmark.

Hou William bastarde Duke
of Normandye come in to En
gelonde and quellde kinge
Harolde Ca°. vj. xij°.

And whenne þis batai
le was done: Harolde
bicome so prowde &
wolde no þing parte wiþ his
peple of þing þat he had gete
but helde hit al towarde him self
wherefore þe most parte of his
men were wroþ and hatede him
departede: so þat ounethe wiþ
him lefte no man but his sou
diours. And vpon a day as he
satte att þe mete a messangere come
to him and saide þat William
Bastard duk of Normandye
was arryuede in Engelonde
wiþ a gret host and had taken
al þe lande aboute Hastinges

and had also arrynede þe cas
tel. Whenne þe king hadde
herde þis tydinge he wente þe
der wiþ a litil peple wiþ alle þe
hast þat he mighte for a litel
peple was wiþ him lefte. And
whenne he was come þeder
he ordeynede for to zeue batay
le to þe duk William: but þe
duk prayede him of pes in þin
gis yf þat he wolde haue his
doughter to wyf as he hadde
made and swore his othe and
be highte or þat he wolde halde
þe landes of him in tryuage or
þat he wolde detinne þis þing
þorw bataile. This Harolde
was a prowd man and a stout
and trusted wonder muche
vppon his owene strengþe and
saide þat wiþ þe duke and wiþ
peple but Harolde and his
men were discomfitede and
hym self was þer slayn and
þis bataile was endid atte
Tonbregge in þe secunde zer
of his regne vppon seint Kalex
tus day and he lith att Wal
tham.

Off king William
bastard and how he gouernede
him wel and wisely and of
þe werre bitwene him and
þe king of Fraunce. Capi
tulo vj° xiij°.

When William bastarde duke of Normandye had conquerede al þe londe: vppon cristemasse day þo next ffolwynge he lete crowne him kyng att Westmynster and was a worthy king and ȝaf to englisshe men large londes and to his knyghtis. And afterwarde he wente ouer þe see and come in to Normandie and þer duellede a while: and in þe secunde ȝer of his regne he come aȝen in to Engelonde and brouȝt with him Maude his wif and lete crowne hire quene of Engelonde in Whitsonday. ¶ And þo anon after þe kyng of Scotlande þat me callede Malcolum bigan to werre and fiȝt wiþ þe duke William and he ordeynede hym þo towarde Scotlande wiþ his men boþe by londe and by see for to destroye þe king Mancolin but þei were acordid and the king of Scotlande Malcolyn bicome his man and helde al his londe of him and king William resceyued of him his homage and come aȝen in to Engelonde. ¶ And whanne king William hadde ben kyng .xvij. ȝer Maude þe quene deide on whom king Willia had geten meny faire children þat is for to seyn Robt Curthose Willia le Rous Ric also þat deide. Henry Beauclerc and Maude also þat was þe erles wyf of Bleynes: and oþer some douȝters. After his wiues deth: grete debate bigan bitwene him and þe king of ffraunce Philippe: but at þe laste þei were acorded and þo duellede þe kinge of Engelonde in Normandye and noman him werrede. And he noman longe tyme. ¶ And þe king of ffraunce saide vppon a day in scorn of kinge Willia and saide þat king William had longe tyme leyn in childe bedde and longe tyme hath restede him. ¶ And þis worde come to þe king of Engelonde þer þat he lay in Normandye att Roen and for þis worde was wrooþ payede for that worde and eke wonder wroth towarde þe king of ffraunce and swore þo by god: þat whanne he were arise of his gesyne: he wolde lyȝte a þousande candelles to þe king of ffraunce.

¶ And anon lete assemble a gret host of Normandye and of Englisshe men. And in þe bygynnynges of heruest he come to ffraunce: And att þe laste he

brende þe citee of Maundes & commanded his peple for to bere wode and as muche as he myȝte berne and him selfe halpe þer to alle þat he myȝte wiþ a good wille. ¶ And þer was grete hete what of fire þat was so grete and of þe sonne þat þo was wonder hote þat alle stuffeled him self by come & felle in to a grete sykenesse & whenne he sawe þat he was so stronge sik he ordeynede & assignede al Normandye vnto Robert curthose his sone and alle Engelonde to William þe Rous and by quest to Henry beauclerc al his tresour ¶ And þo he had þis done he vnderfenge alle his sacramentz of holye chirche and deide þe xxiiij ȝer of his regne and lith att Caam in Normandye

¶ Off king William Rous þat was William Bastardes sone þat destroyede tounes and hous of Religioun for to make the newe foreste Capitulo ·vj.xx· xiiijmo

And after þis William Bastarde regnede his sone William Rous. And þis William was a wonder couetouse man to god and to holy chirche and lete amende and make þe toun of Cardeys þat þe paynymes had destroyed. ¶ This king William destroyede holy chirche and alle hire possessiouns in what parte he myȝte hem finde ---- and þerfore þer was so muche debate bitwene hem and þe archebisshop of Caunterbury Ancelm for encheson þat he vndirtoke him for his wickednesse þat he destroyede holy chirche and for encheson þat of þe king to him bare grete wraþ and for þat cause he exilede him out of þe londe and þe archebisshop þo wente to þe courte of Rome and þere dwellede wiþ þe pope ¶ And þis king made þe newe forest and caste and destroyede .xxxvj. tounes and .iiij.xx. houses of religioun al for to make his forest lenger and bradder and bicome wonder glad and proude of his wode and of his foreste and of þe wilde bestis þat were þerinne þat hit was meruaillous for to write. so þat men callede him kepere of wodes and of pastures and þe lengere þat he leuede þe more wickede he bycome bothe to god and to holy chirche and to alle his men. ¶ And þis kinge lete make the grete halle att Westmynster so þat vppon a day at Whitsontide

And halde þe nyne his ferste
feste he lokede aboute & saide
þat þe halle was to litel be
half en dell ¶ And att þe laste
he be come so vicious þat al
þing þat plesede god displesed
him. and alle þing þat good
men louede he hatede dedeliche.
And so hit byfelle þat he dre
mede and mette vppon a nyzte
bifore a litel or þat he deide þt
þat he was lete blood & bledde
a grete quantite of bloode and
a streame of blood lepte an hey
towarde heuene more þan an
hundred ſwenith. and þe clere
nesse of þe day was turnede
al in to derkenesse and þe fir
mament also ¶ And whanne
he awoke he hadde grete drede
so þat he niste what to done
And tolde his dreme to menye
of his counsaile and saide þat
he had grete drede and supposed
þat him was som meschaunce
comynge ¶ And þe secunde
nyghte bifore a monk dremede
of þe housholde þat þe kinge
wente in to a chirche wt myche
peple and he was so prouder þt
he dispisede alle þe peple þat
was wiþ him and þat he nome
þe ymage of þe crucifixe and
shamefully bote hit wiþ his
teeþ. and þe crucifixe mekely
suffrede alle þat he dede but
þe king as a wode man rente
of þe armes of þe crucifixe &
caste hit vnder his fete and de
foulede hit and pissed hit alle
a brode. and a grete flame of fyr
come oute of þe crucifixes mouthe.
of the whiche dreme meny men
had grete wonder ¶ This good
man þat dremede þis dreme
had tolde hit to a knyght þat
þo was most prive wiþ þe king
of alle men. and þe knyzte me
callede hammundus sone. and þe
monke and he tolde þe dreme
to þe king and saide þat hit schol
de bitokene oþer þing þan good
And neþeles þe king laughede
þerat .ij. or .iij.es and litel sette þer of
And þouzte þat he wolde gon
hunte and pley in þe forest and
his men him counseilede þat
he schulde nouzt þat day for no
manere þing come in þe wode
so þat he abode att home afore
mete ¶ But anon as he hadde
eten no man myzte him lette þt
he nolde gon to the wode for to
haue his disporte ¶ And so hit
byfel þat one of his knyghtes
þat hizte Walter Tyrel wolde
haue schotte to an herte and his
arewe glasede vppon a braunche &
þorz mys aventure smote the
kinge to þe herte and so he felle

dom dede vnto þe grounde wiþ
oute eny worde spekinge. and
so he ended his lyf. ¶ And hit
was no grete wonder for þe day
þat he deide he had late to ferme
þe Erchebisshopriche of Kaunterbury
and .xij. Abbayes also. and eu[er]mo
re dede grete distruccion to holy
chirche þorugh wrongeful takinges
and axinges for noman dorste
wiþ seyn þat he wolde haue done
and of his lyþernesse he wolde neu[er]
wiþ drawe nor to amende his
lyf. and þerfore god wolde suffre
him no lenger regne in his wicked
nesse and he had ben kinge .xiij.
ȝer and .x. wekes. and att Wyn
chestre he lyth. ¶ Off kinge Hen
ry Beauclerc þat was William
Rous broþer. and of þe debate bi
twene him and Robt curtose his
broþer. capitulo .C.xv.

And whanne þis Willia[m]
Rous was ded Henry
Beauclerc his broþer
was made kinge for anchesoun
þat William Rous had no childe
by gete of his bodye and þis Hen
ry Beauclerc was corouned
kinge att London þe ferþe daye
after þat his broþer was dede þat
is to seyn þe fifte day of August
And anon as Ancelin þat was
erchebisshop of Kaunterbury þat
was att þe court of Rome herde
þat William Rous was dede
he come aȝen into Engelonde
And þe king Henry Beauclerc
welcomede him wiþ muchel ho
nour. ¶ And þe first ȝere þat
king Henry was corounede he
spousede Maude þat was mar
garetes doughter þe quene of
Scotlande. and þe Erchebisshop
Ancelin of Kaunterbury weddid
hem. ¶ And þis kynght by gatte
vppon his wif .ij. sones and a
doughter þat is to seyn Willia[m]
Richard. and Maude. and this
Maude was after wyfe þe emp
eresse of Almaigne. ¶ And in þe
secunde ȝere of his regne his
broþer Robert curthose þat was
duke of Normandye come wiþ
an hugee navye into Engelon
de for to chalaunge þe lande
but þorugh councele of þe wise
men of þe lande þei were acor
ded in þis maner. þat þe kinge
shulde ȝef þe duke his broþer
a þousande pounde eu[er]y ȝere
and whiche of hem lengeste
leuede shulde ben eyþer heir
and so bitwene hem shulde be
no debate ne strif. ¶ And when
þei were þus acorded þe duke
wente home aȝen into Norma[n]
dye and whanne þe king had
regnede .iij. ȝer þer aros a grete
debatte bitwene him and the

Erchebisshop of Cauntirberye
Ancelm for cause þat þe Erche
bisshop wolde nouzt graunte þe
kinge for to take taillages of chir
ches att his wille. and þerfore
afterwarde þe erchebisshop wente
ouer þe see to þe courte of Rome
and þere duellede with þe pope

¶ And in þe same zere þe duke of Nor
mandye come into Engelonde for
to speke with his broþer and amon
ges oþer þinges þe duke of Norman
dye forzaf to þe king his broþer þe
forsaide þousande pounde by zere
þat he schulde paie him: and wiþ
good loue þe duke wente tho a
zen into Normandye ¶ And whe
þo two zere were agoon þorug enti
cement of þe deuel and of wikke
men: a grete debate aroos bytwe
ne þe king and þe duke: so þat
þe king þorug conceile wente ouer
þe see into Normandye and whan
þe king of Engelonde was come
into Normandye alle þe grete lor
des of Normandye turnede to þe
king of Engelonde and helde a
zens þe duke her owene lorde
and him forsoke and to þe kynge
hem zelden and al þe castell &
þe good townes of Normandye
and sone after was þe duke take
and lad with þe king into Enge
londe and þe king lete putt þe
duke into prisoun and þis was
þe vengeaunce of god for whanne
þe duke was in þe holy londe god
zaf him suche myzte and honour
þat wherfore he was chose to ben
of Jerusalem and he wolde nouzt ben
hit but forsoke hit. and þerfore god
sende him þat schame and dispite
for to ben putt into his broþers pri
soun

¶ þo ceisede king Henry al
Normandye into his hande. and
helde hit alle his lyues tyme &
in þe same zere come þe bisshop An
selm from þe court of Rome into
Engelonde azen and þe king and
he were acorded

¶ And in þe zere
next comynge after þe bigan a
grete debate bitwene king Phe
lipp of ffraunce. and king Henry of
Engelonde wherfore king Henry
wente into Normandye: and þe
werre was stronge betwene hem
two: and þo deyde þe king of
ffraunce and lowis his sone was
made king anon after his deth &
þo wente king Henry azen into
Engelonde and mariede Maude
his douzter to Henry þe Emperour
of Almaigne

¶ Off þe debate
þat was bytwene king lowys of
ffraunce & king Henry of Engelonde &
how kyng Henries two sones were
loste in þe hye see Ca° vj.xx. xvj.to

Whanne king Henry had
ben king xvij zere a grete
debate aroos bitwene

kyng lowys of ffraunce and king
henry of Engelonde for enche
soun þat þe kynge had sente
in to Normandye to his men
for þei schulde ben helpinges to þe
Erl of Bleues as muchel as þei
myghte in werr azens þe king
of ffraunce and þat þei were as re
dye vn to him as þei wolde ben
vn to her owene lorde for enche
soun þat þe Erle had spousede
his Suster Dame Maude for whi
che enchesoun þe king of ffraunce
dede muche sorowe to Norman
dye wherfore þe king of Enge
londe was wonder wroth and
in haste wente ouer þe See wiþ
a grete power and come in to Nor
mandye for to defende þat londe
and þer were bitwene hem laste
ij zer til att þe laste þey too fough
ten togedre and þe king of ffraunce
was disconfitede and vnneþe
stapede away wiþ muche peyne
and þe most partie of his men wer
taken and þe king dede wiþ he
what him lykede and somme
of hem he lete gon frelich &
somme he lete putt to deth but
afterwarde þer kinges were
acorded ¶ And whenne king
henry had holliche al þe landes
of Normandye and disconfitede
his enemyes of ffraunce he turned
azen in to Engelonde wiþ muchel
honour and his ij sones William
and Richarde wolde come after
hire fader and wente to þe See
wiþ a grete companye of peple
but er þat þei myzte come to londe
þe schippe come azens a roche &
brake alle in to peces and alle
were drenchede þat were þerinne
saf o man þat was in þe same
schippe þat astapede and þis was
on saint katrines day ¶ And þese
were þe names of hem þat were
drenchede þat is to seyn William
þe kinges sone Richard his brother
þe Erle of Chestre Ottowell his
brother Gyffray Rydell Walter
Emmery Godefray Archedekene
þe kingis dorzter þe Countesse of
Perches þe kinges nece ¶ the
countesse of chestre and merye of
whenne kyng henry and oþer lor
des herynede were in Engelonde
and herde þis tidinges þey ma
de sorawe ynow and alle hire
mirthe and ioye was turnede þo
in to mornynge and care ¶ How
**Maude þe Emperesse come azen in
to Engelonde and how sche was
afterwarde weddyd to Gaufray
þe erle of Angoy' ca^{o}. vj^{xx}. xviij^{mo}.**

And whenne þat ij zer
wer gon þat þe Erle
had dwellede wiþ þe
kinge þe erle wente þe fro þe king
and bigan to werre vpon him &

dede muche harme in þe lande of Normandye wherfore kinge Henry was sore annoyede whan he herde þe tidinge wiþ al þe haste þat he myzte he passede þe see and come in to Normandye and toke þe strounge castel and þer he duellede al þat zere. And þo come to him tydinge þat Henry þe Emperour of Almayne þat had spousede Maude his douzter was ded and þat sche duellede no lenger in Almaigne and þat sche wolde come azen unto Normandye to hire fader. ¶ And whanne sche was come to him he nome hir wiþ him and come azen in to Engelonde and made þe englissche men to done othe and feaute unto þe Emperesse. And þe firste man þat made þe oth was William þe erchebisshop of Caunterbyre and þat oþer king Dauid of Scotlande and after hy alle þe barouns and erles of Engelonde. ¶ And also after þe noble man þe erle of Angoy a worthy knyght come to þe king of Engelonde þat he wolde graunte him for to haue his douzter to spouse Maude þe emperesse. ¶ And for enchesoun þat hire fader wiste þat he was a noble man þe kinge grauntede him and consentede þerto. And þo nome his douzter and ladde hire in to Normandye and come to the noble knyght erle Gaufride and he spousede þe forsaide Maude wiþ muchel honour and þe erle by gate upon hire a sone þat me callede Henry þe Emperesse sone. And after whanne al þis was done king Henry duellede al þat zere in Normandye and after þat longe tyme a grevous sykenesse toke him wherfore he deyde and þis king Henry regnede xxxv zere and iiij monthes And after he deide as bifore is saide in Normandie and his herte was entrede att Redinge in þe Abbay of þe whiche abbaye he was bygynner and founder. ¶ How Stephene king Henryes sister sone was made king of Engelonde anno .v.^c^ xxviij.

After þis king Henry þat was þe firste was made king his nevew his sisters sone Stephene Erl of Bolougne For anon as he herde þe tydinge of his uncles deth he passede þe see and come in to Engelonde þorw councele and strengthe and helpe of manye grete lordes of Engelonde azens hire oth þat þei had made to Maude þe Emperesse. Nowe þe Remme

And lete croune Stephene king
of þe londe. And þe erche bis-
shope William of Caunterberye
þat ferste made þe oth of feaute
vnto Maude þe Empresse. Sette
þe croune ferst vpon king Ste-
phenes heede and hym annoy-
tede and bisshop Roger of Sales-
berye mayntenede þe kynges
partye in as muche as he myȝte
þe ferste ȝere þat king Stephene
bigan for to regne he assemblede
a grete host and wente hym
towarde Scotlande for to haue
werrede he vpon þe kinge
of Scotlande. but he come aȝens
hym in pees and in good ma-
ner and to hym truste. but he
made to hym non homage for
as muche as he had made
homage vnto þe Empresse
Maude. And þe iiij ȝer of
his regne Maude þe Empresse
come into Engelonde. And þo
bigan debate bitwene the
king Stephene and Maude
þe Empresse þis Maude wente
vnto þe citee of Nichole and
þe king hem bysegede longe
tyme and myȝt nouȝt spede
so wel þe citee was kepte
and defendede and þo þat were
wiþinne þe citee quentely
ascapede alway wiþ oute ony
maner harme. And þo toke þe

kinge þe citee. & duellede þe-
re til Candilmasse. And
þo come þe Barouns þat helde
wiþ þe Empresse þat is for to
seyn þe Erle Randulf of Ches-
tre. þe erle Robert of Gloucestre
Hughe Bygot Robert of Moleye
and fouȝte wiþ hem a stronge
power. How Maude the
Empresse wente fro Wynchestre
vnto Oxenforde and after
she ascapede to Wallyngeford
and what sorowe and disese
she hadde. capitulo. C. xixmo

Whanne þe kinge was
taken and brouȝte
in to warde in þe castel
of Bristowe þis Maude þe
Empresse anon was made la-
dye of Engelonde and alle
men helde hire for ladye of
þe londe. But þo of Kent
helde wiþ king Stephenes
wyf. and also William of
Ipre and his retenue halpe
hem and helde werre aȝens
Maude þe Empresse and anon
after þe king of Scotlande com
to hem with an huge nombre
of peple and þo wente they
yfere vnto Wynchestre þere þat
þe Empresse was and wolde
haue taken hire. but þe Erle
of Gloucestre come wiþ his
power and fauȝte wiþ hem

And þe Emperesse in þe mene
while þat þe bataile durede
scapede fro þennes and wente
vnto Oxenforde and þere hire
helde. And in þat bataile was
þe Erle of Glouceſtre destour-
bede and taken and with him
menye of lordes ¶ And for
his delyueraunce was kinge
Stephene delyuerede out of prison
And whenne he was delyuered
out of prison he wente þennes
to Oxenforde and bisegede þe
Emperesse þat was þo att Oxen
forde and þe sege endurede
fro Mighelmasse vnto Seinte
Andrewes tyde ¶ And þe Emp
esse lete þo clothen hire alle in
white lynen cloth for enchesoun
þat sche wolde nought ben knowe
ffor in þe same tyme þere was
michel of snowe and so sche
ascapede by þe Thamyse from
hem away þat were hire enemy
es and fro þennes sche wente
to Wallingeforde and þere hire
helde ¶ And þe king wolde
haue byseged her. but he had
so muche to done wiþ þe Erle
Randulph of Chestre and with
Hughe Bygod þat strongeliche
werrede vpon him in euery pla
ce þat he ne wiste whider for
to tirne. And þe Erle of Glou
cestre halpe hem wiþ his pouer

Thaw Gaufride Erle of Angoy
ȝaf vp vnto Henry þe Emperesse
sone al Normandye anno m. c. xl^mo

And after þis þe kinge
wente vnto Wiltone &
wolde haue made a
castel þere. but þo come to him
þe Erle of Glouceſtre wiþ a stronge
power and almoste had take
þe king. but ȝitt þe king asca
pede wiþ muche peyne and
William Martell þat was take
and for whos delyueraunce the
king ȝaf vnto þe Erle of Glou
cestre þe goode castel of Schyrbor
ne þat he had take ¶ And whe
þis was done þe Erle Robert
and alle þe kinges enemys
wente to ffaryngdone and bi
gonne þere for to make a stronge
castel. but þe king wiþ a stronge
power drofe hem þennes in þat
same ȝere ¶ þe Erle Randul
phe of Chestre was acorded
with þe king and come to his
court att his commaundement
and þe Erle wende haue safly
che come. and þe king anon
lete take him and putt him in
to prison and most neuer for
no þing come out þerof til þat
he had ȝelde vp vnto þe king
þe castel of Nichole þe whi
che he had take from þe king
wiþ strengþe in þe vᵗʰ ȝere

of his regne of king Stephe
ne. And Gaufride þe Erl of
Angeoy 3af vp to Henry his sone
al Normandy in þe 3ere that
nexte cam. And dide þe Erle
Gaufride and Henry his sone
þo anon turnede a3an to Angeoy
and he was made Erle with
muchel honour of his men of
þe londe. and to him deden fe
aute and homage þe moste
partie of his londe. And þo
was þis Henry þe Emperesse
sone Erl of Angeoy and Duk of
Normandye. In þe same 3ere
was made devorse bitwene þe
king of Fraunce and þe quene
his wyf þat was right eire
of Gascoigne: for enchesoun
þat hit was knowe and preuede
þat þey were sib and ny3 of
blood: and þo spousede hire
Henry þe Emperesse sone and
þo was erl of Angeoy duke of
Normandye and duke of Gas
coigne. In þe xviij 3er of þe
regne of king Stephene: þis
Henry come into Engelonde
with a stronge power: and by
gan for to werr oppon king
Stephene and nome þe castel
of Malmesbery and dede mu
che harme and þe king Ste
phene had so muche werr
þat he niste whider for to

wende: but att þe laste þey
wer acordid þorw þe Erche
bisshop Theobalde and þorw
oþer worthy lordes of Enge
londe vppon þis condicioun
þat þei schulde departe þe reau
me of Engelonde bitwene
hem: so þat Henry þe Emperesse
sone schulde haue holliche half
þe reaume: and whenne kinge
Stephene were dede he schul
de haue alle þe londe of Enge
londe: and þus þei were acor
did and pees cryed þorw out
alle Engelonde. And whenne
þe acorde was made bitwene
þo two lordes: king Stephene
bicome so sory because þat
he had loste half Engelonde
and felle into suche a maladie
and deyde in þe xix 3er ten
wekys and v. dayes of his
regne al in werr and in contak
and he lith in þe Abbay of Fe
versham þe whiche he lete ma
ke in þe vi 3er of his regne.

Off king Henry þat was þe
Emperesse sone in whos tyme
seint thomas of [illegible]bery
was chaunceler. Anno domini m^{o}. c^{o}. xl. primo

And after þis king Ste
phene regnede Henry
þe Emperesse sone and
was corounede of þe Erchebis
shop Theobaude þe xviij day

bifore Estermasse. and in þe sa
me ȝere Thomas Beket of Lo
don erchebisshop of Kaunterbury
was made þe kingis chaunce
ler of Engelonde ¶ þe secun
de ȝere þat he was crouned
he lete caste doun alle þe new
castell þat were longinge vn
to þe croune þe which kinge
Stephene had ȝeue vn to diuse
men and hem had made erles
and barouns for to holde wiþ
him and helpe him aȝeins hen
ry þe emperesse sone ¶ And þe
iiij ȝere of his regne he putte
vnder his owene lordship þe
king of Walys and in þe same
ȝere whenne þe kinge of Scot
lande had in his owene han
de þat is to seyn the cite of
karlill þe castel of Bamburgh
þe newe castel vp Tyne and
þe erldome of lancastre. the
same ȝere þe king with a grete
power wente in to Walys. and
lete caste adoun wodes and
lete make weyes and made
stronge þe castel of Rutlande
and Basyngwerk. and amon
ge þe castell he made an hous
of þe temple ¶ And in þe sa
me ȝere was Richarde his sone
born þat after warde was erle
of Oxenforde. and þe iiij ȝer
of his regne he made Gaufride
erle of Brittaigne and in that
ȝere he chaunged his monee
and þe vj ȝer of his regne he
lad an huge host vn to Tolouse
and conquerede hit. And the
vij ȝer of his regne deide Theo
balde þe erchebisshop of Kaunt
berye and þo al þe cite of Caunt
berye almost þorugh myschef was
brent þe ix. ȝer of his regne
Thomas Beket his chaunceler
was chosen to ben erchebisshop
of Kaunterbury and vpon saint
bernardis day he was sacrede.
And in þat ȝer born was Alia
nor þe kingis douȝter ¶ And þe
x ȝer of his regne Saint Edmun
de þe king was translatede wiþ
muchel honour ¶ And þe xj
ȝer of his regne he helde his
parlement att Northampton &
his pennes fled saint Thomas
erchebisshop of Caunterbury for
þe grete debate þat was by
twene þe king and him. for if
he had be founde in þe morne
he had be slayn and þerfor he
fledde þennes wiþ iij felaw
es on foote onely þat noman
wiste where he was & wente
ouer þe see to þe pope of Rome.
And þis was þe principale en
chesoun for as muche as the
kinge wolde haue putt cler
kes to deþ þat were atteint

of felonye wiþ oute eny priuile
ge of holy chirche. And the
xij zer of his regne was Iohn
his sone born. and þe xiij zer of
his regne deide Maude þe Em
peresse þat was his moder. And
in þat same zer was Iohne his
dou3ter born. þe xiiij zer of his
regne þe duke Henry of Saxoine
sposede Maude his dou3ter and
he bigatte on hire iij sones. Henry
Othus. and William. And in
þe xv. zer of his regne deide þe
good Erle Robert of Gloucestre þat
founded þe Abbey of Tewkes of
Eton. And in þe same zere Ma
nel king of Grekis conquerede
Babiloigne. þe xvj zer of his
regne he lete coroune his sone
Henry att Westmynster and him
corounede Roger þe Erchebisshop of
York in harmynge of Thomas þe
erchebisshop of Kaunterbery. wher
fore the same Roger was acursede
of þe [illegible]

Off king Henry þat was þe Emperesse sone and of þe debate þat was bitwene him and his fader while þat he was in Normandye M^l.C^mo.xlij^o.

After þe coronacion of
king Henry þe sone of
king Henry þe Emperesse
sone þat same Henry þe Emper
esse sone wente ouer in to Norman
dye. and þere he lete marye Elyr

nore his dou3ter vnto Wellmes
þat was king of Almaigne. And
in þe viij zer þat þe Erchebisshop
[illegible] Thomas had ben oute
lawede. þe kinge of ffraunce ma
de þe king and [illegible] thomas
accorded. and þo come Thomas
þe Erchebisshop to Kaunterberye
azen to his owene chirche and
þis accord was made in the by
gynnynge of Aduent. And after
ward he was quelde and mar
tirede þe v. day of cristemasse
þat þo next come. After kinge
Henry pou3t vppon [illegible] thomas
erchebisshop of Kaunterbery on
cristemasse day as he satte att
his mete and þese wordis say
de. þat yf he had eny good kni3t
wiþ him he had ben menye day
Avengede vppon þe erchebisshop
Thomas. And anon sir Wil
liam Breton. sir Hughe Morvi
le. sir William Tracy. and sir
Reynalde fitz Vrse. barones
in Englisshe pruely wente vn
to þe see and comen in to En
gelonde to þe chirche of Kaunter
bery and him þere þei martirede
att saint Benettis auter in the
moder chirche and þat was in
þe zer of incarnacion of Ihesu
crist. M^l. C. lx. and. xij zer.
And anon after Henry þe newe
king bigan for to make werre

vppon kyng Henry his fader &
also vppon his breþeren also. //
And vppon a tyme þe kynge of
ffraunce and alle þe kinges sones
and þe kinge of Scotlande and
þe grettest lordes of Englonde
were arisen aȝens þe Henry þe
fader. And att laste as god wolde
he conquerede alle his enemys
and þe king of ffraunce and he
were acorded. And þo sente king
Henry þe fader specially vn to
þe king of ffraunce and prayede
him hertely for his loue þat he
wolde sende to him by lettre
þe names of ham þat bigonne
þe werre vppon him. And þe
king of ffraunce sent aȝen to him
by a lettre þe names of ham þat
bygonne þe werre. ffirst was
Iohn his sone and Richarde his
broþer and Henry his sone þe newe
king. Þis was Henry þe kinge
wonder wroth. and cursede the
tyme þat euer he hem bygatte.
And while þe werre durede Hen
ry his sone þe ȝonge king deide
sore repentinge his mysdedes
and moste sorowe made of eny
man for cause of Seint Thomas
dep of Kaunterbery. And prayede
his fader wiþ muche sorowe of
herte mercy for his trespace and
his fader forȝaf hit him & had
of him grete pitee and after he
deide þe xxxvj ȝere of his regne
and liþ att Redinge.

How þe cristen men loste þe holy lande in þe forsayde kynges tyme þorȝ a false cristen man þat bicome a Sarasine. Capitulum centesimo xliij^mo.

And while þat king Henry
þe Emperesse sone lyuede
and regnede þe grete ba
taile was in þe holy londe bitwe
ne the cristen men and þe Sara
sines. But þe cristen men were þe
quelde þorȝ grete tresoun of þe
erl of Tripe þat wolde haue had
to wyf þe quene of Ierusalem
þat som tyme was Baldewynus
wyf but sche forsoke him and toke
to hire lord a kniȝt a worþi man
þat me callede Sire Gy perser.
Wherfore þe erle of Tripe was
wroth. and wente anon riȝhte to
Saladyn þat was Sowdan of
Babiloigne and bicome Sarasine
and his man and forsoke his
cristendome and al cristene lawe
and þe cristene men wiste hit noȝt
of þis dede but wente for to had
grete helpe of him as þey were
wonte to haue bifore and when
þei comen to þe batayle þis false
cristen man turnede vn to þe Sa
rasines and forsoke his owene
naciouns and so were þe cristene
men þer quelde wiþ þe Sarasines
and þus were þe cristen men

slayn and putte to horrible deþ
and þe citee of Jerusalem destroyed
and þe holy crosse born away.
¶ Þe king of Fraunce and alle þe
grete lordes of alle þe lande
letten hem croice for to gon into
þe holy londe. and amonge he
wente Richarde kinge Henries
sone first after þe king of Fraunce
þat toke þe crois of þe Erche-
bisshop of Turs. but he come
nouzt þe viage att þat tyme for
encheson þat he was lette by
oþer manie werres and nedes to
ben don. ¶ And whenne kinge
Henry his fader had regnede
xxxv ȝer and v. monþes. and
iiij. dayes he deide and lith att
Fount Euerard.

¶ Off kinge Richarde þat conquerede alle þe holy lande þat cristene men had loste. Capitulo C.mo xliiij.to

And after þis king Henry
regnede Richarde his
sone a stronge man &
a worthy and also bolde. and he
was corounede att Westmynster
of þe erchebisshope Baldewyne
of Caunterbery þe iij day of Sep-
tember. and þe secunde ȝer of
his regne king Richard hymself
and Baldewyne þe erchebisshop
of Caunterberye. and Hubert bissho-
pe of Salesberye. and Randulph
Erle of Gloucester and oþer manye
lordes of Engelonde wente
into þe holy lande and in that
viage deide þe Erchebisshop of
Kaunterberye. and king Richarde
wente bifore into þe holy lande
and reste nouzt til þat he come
forth in his way vnto Cypres &
toke Cypres wiþ grete force. and
siþen he wente forþ towardes
þe holy lande and gate aȝen as
muche as þe cristene men hadde
loste bifore kynge Richard gate
hit and conquerede aȝen þorouz
grete myzte saf only þe holy
crois. ¶ And whenne kynge Richard
come to þe toun of Acres for to
gete þe citee. a grete debate aros
bitwene him and þe kyng of Fraunce
so þat king Richard wente aȝen
into Fraunce and was wroth
towarde þe kynge of Fraunce
but er king Richard wente aȝe
he toke þe citee of Acres ¶ And
whane he had takene hit he dwel-
lede in þe citee a while. but to
him come tydinge þat þe erle
John of Oxenford his broþer wol-
de haue conquerede al Engelonde
in to his honde and Normandye
also and wolde corounne him king
of þe lande. ¶ And whenne
kinge Richarde herde þis tiding
he wente aȝen towarde Enge-
londe wiþ al þe spede þat he might
but þe duke of Ostriche mette wiþ

him and toke him and brouzt him vnto þe Emperour of Almaigne · and þe Emperour brouzte hym in to his prisoun and aftir warde he was deliuerede for an huge raunsoun þat is for to paie an hundred þousande pounde ·

And for whiche raunsoun to ben paiede eche ordre chalice of Engelonde was malte and made in to monee · and alle þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux zeuen alle her wolles þorouz Engelonde to done hem for to selle and þat raunsoun for to paie ·

How king Richarde come azen fram þe holy lande and avengede him of his enemys cap · c · xlvij

Whiles þis king Richarde was in prisoun þe king of Fraunce werrede vpon him strongeliche in Normandye and John his broþer werrede vpon him in Engelonde but þe bisshoppis and þe barouns of Engelonde wiþstoden hem wiþ alle þe power þat þei hadde and myzte gete and geten þe castel of Wyndesore and alle oþre castelles · And þe forsayde John sawe þat he hadde no myghte ne power azens þe barounnis of Engelonde for to fyghte · but anon hym wente ouer þe see vn to þe kinge of Fraunce · And whenne kynge Richarde come out of prisoun and was deliuerede and come in to Engelonde · anon aftir candilmasse in grete haste he wente vnto Notingham and þe castel of Notingham to him was zelde and þo disheritede he John his broþer and alle þat wiþ him helde and aftir he wente vn to þe citee of Wyncestre and þere he lete him crowne king aftersoune · and aftir he wente in to Normandye for to werre vpon þe king of Fraunce · And þe king of Fraunce come wiþ iij · c · knyztis towarde Gisors · and þe king Ric mette wiþ him and þo wolde haue zeue him bataille · but þe kinge of Fraunce fledde and an hundred knyghtis of his were take · and ij · hundred stedes were trappede wiþ iren · And anon aftir wente king Richarde for to bysege þe castel of Gaillard ·

And as he rode vppon a day by þe castell for to take avisement of þe castell an arblaster smote him wiþ a quarel þat was envenemede · and þe king drew out þe shafte of þe quarel but þe quarell hede abode stille in his heuede · and hit bigan for to rancle þat he myzte nouzt helpe him selfe ne mene his

armes. And þo he wiste þat he
had dethes wounde þat he mizt
nouzt ben hool for no manere þing
he comaunded anon Marchadys
alle his men for to assaile the
castel: so þat þe castel was taken
er þat he deide. and so manlich
his men deden þat þe peple þat
were in þe castel were alle taken
and þe king dede wiþ hem what
þat he wolde. and comaunded his
men þat þei schulde bringe by
fore him þe man þat him so herte
and so wounded. And whanne
he come bifore þe kinge þe kinge
axede what was his name: &
he sayde sire my name is Ber
tram Gurdon. wherfor saide þe
kinge hast þou me slayn: sir þat
y dede þe neuere non harme.
Sire saide he þou zedede me
neuere harme ze haue done to
my frendes muchel harme for
zoure self wiþ zoure hande
quelde my fader and my broþer
and þerfore y haue now quyt
zour trauaille. Tho saide
king Richarde. he þat deide
vppon þe crois to bringe mannis
soule fram þe princ of helle for
zeue zow my deth. and y also
for zeue hit þe. þo comaunded
þe kinge þat no man schulde
him mysdone. but for alle þe
kinges defendinge somme of
his men him folowede and þer
fore him quelde. and þe vij day
after þe king deide ynschryue with
grete repentaunce hauynge of
his mysdedis. and was houseled
and anoynted and þis king
ne regnede but ix zere & xxxix
wokys. and deide and lith be
sides his fader att ffounteuerard.

Off king Iohn þat in þe fifte
zere of his regne lost al Norma
dye. cap. vi^xx. xl. vj^to

Whenne king Richarde
was dede for enchesoun
þat he had non heir
mene ne doughter his broþer Iohn
was made king and corowned
att westmynster of hubert þat
was þo archebisshop of kaunterbury.
And whenne he bygan for to reg
ne he bicome so mychel louere
and wente ouer into Norman
dye and werrede vppon þe king
of ffraunce and so longe þey wer
rede to gedre til att þe laste king
Iohn loste Normandye & Angeoy
wherfore he was sore annoyede
and was none meruaille. Sire
late he assemble byfore him att
london. Archebisshoppis. bisshop
pis. Abbotes and priours erles
and baronnis and helde þere a
grete parlement. and axede þe
of þe clergie þe tenþe of euery
chirche of Engelonde for to

conquery and gote azen Norman-
dye and Angoy þat he hadde
loste: and þei wolde nouzt graunte
þat þing wherfore he was wonder
wroth. ¶ And in þe same tyme
deide þe bisshop Hubert: and þe
priour and þe couent of Caunter-
berye chosen azens þe kinges wil
to ben archebisshop maister Ste-
phene of Langetone a good clerk
þat wonede att þe court of Ro-
me and wente to þe pope hire
elecciouu: and þe pope confer-
mede hit and sacrede hit att
Viterbe ¶ Whenne þe king wist
þis tydinge he was wonder
wroþ: and drof þe priour and þe
couente fro Kaunterbery and exi-
led hem out of Engelonde: and
commaundid þat no man lettre þat
come fro þe court of Rome ne no
maundement schulde be vnder-
fonge ne pleted in Engelonde.
¶ Whenne þis tydinge come to
þe pope he sente vn to kinge
Iohn by his lettre and praiede
him wiþ good wille and good
harte þat he wolde vnderfonge
Stephene archebisshop of Caun-
terberye vn to his cherche and
wiþ þe priour and his mon-
kes to come azen vnto here owe-
ne dwellinge but þe king wil
nouzt graunte hit for no þing

¶ How kyng Iohn wolde no þing done for þe popes commaundement wherfore alle Engelonde was enterditede and suspende a° m° cc° viij°

And att þe laste þe pope
sente by his autorite
and comaunede to Bis-
shoppis of Engelonde þat yf þe
kinge wolde nouzt vnderfonge
þe priour of Caunterbery and his
monkes þat þei schulde done ge-
neral enterditinge þorouz out alle
Engelonde and graunted full
power to iiij bisshoppis to pro-
nounce þe enterditinge if hit
were nede. ¶ The firste was
bisshop William of London &
þat oþer Eustace bisshop of Ely
þe iij was Water bisshop of Wyn-
chestre and þe ferþe was Giles
bisshop of Herforde ¶ And þese
iiij bisshoppis praiede þe kinge
knelinge on here knees & oure
wepinge þat he wolde done þe
popes commaundement and schew-
ede him þe bulles of þe enterditinge
but for no prayer þat þey myzte
praye he wolde nouzt consente
þer to: and whenne þe bisshoppis
sey þis þey wente fram þe king
and in þe morne after þe Annun-
ciacion of oure lady þey pronoun-
cede þe general enterditinge þorouz
out alle Engelonde: so þat þe
cherche dores were schette wiþ
keyes and wiþ oþer fastnyngis

And wiþ wallis. ¶ And whan þe entredityng was pronuncede þan þe king bigan for to wexe a-louṭ of mesure and nome into his hande alle þe possessiouns of þe iiij bisshoppis and of alle þe clergie þorouȝ alle þe lande & ordeyne men for to kepe hit þat þe clerkys myȝte nouȝt haue hir leuynge wherfore þe bysshoppis cursede alle hem þat putt or schulde medle with holy cherche goodes aȝeins þe wille of hem þat hem owede And whenne the king wolde nouȝt cesse of his malice for no manere þing. þe iiij bisshoppes aboue sayde wente oute þe see and wente to þe bysshope of kaunterbery and tolde him alle þe doyngis. ¶ And þe erchebisshop to hem saide þat þei schulde gon aȝen to kaunterberye and he wolde come þider to hem for elles he wolde sende þider certeyn persones in his stede þat schulde done as muche as him self were there. ¶ And whe þe bisshoppis herde þis þei turnede aȝen vnto Engelonde & comen vnto kaunterberye. ¶ þe tydinge come to þe kinge þat þe bisshoppis were comen aȝen to kaunterbery and him self myȝte nouȝt come þider þat tyme. he sente þider bisshoppis. Erles. Abbottis for to trete wiþ hem þat þe kynge schulde vnderfonge þe erchebisshop Stephene & þe priour and alle þe monkes of caunterbery: and þat he schulde neuer after þat tyme noþing take of holy cherche aȝeins the wille of hem þat owede the goodes. and þat þe kinge schulde make ful amendes to hem of wham he had any goodes takes. and þat holy cherche schulde haue alle hire ffraunchises as ferforth as þei had in seint Edwardis tyme þe confessor.

¶ How Stephene of Langeton come into Engelande þorouȝ þe [illegible] commaundement and wente aȝen. Capitulo C^m^o xlviij.

Whenne þe fourme of acorde þis was ordeyned hit was in a paire of endentures and þei putt hire seales to þat o parte and þei þat comen in þe kinges name putt hire seales to þat oþer of þe endentures and þe iiij bisshoppis aboue sayde take þat o parte of þe endentures wiþ hem: and þat oþer parte of þe endentures þei bere wiþ hem for to schewe the king. ¶ Whanne þe kinge sawe þe fourme and vnderstode he

helde him ful wel paiede of
al maner þing as þei had orden
nede oftene as touchinge þe
restitucion of þe goodes for to
make azen to þat þing he nol
de nouzt accorde. and so he sente
worde azen to þe forsayde iiij
bisshoppis þat þei schulde done
out and put away þat o poynt
of restitucion. and þey answered
þat þey nolde nouzt done o word.
þo sente þe king to þe erche
bisshop by þo iiij bisshoppis þat
he schulde come to Kaunterbery
for to speke wiþ him þe which sente
vn to him saf condit vnder
plegges þat is to seyn his justi
cers Gilbert Peyteuyn William
de la Brewer & Johan le Fitz
Hughe þat in hire condut sau
liche he schulde come and gon
azen att his wille. and in þis
manere þe erchebisshop Stephe
ne come vn to Kaunterbery.

And whenne þe erchebisshop
was come þe king come to Gil
ham for he wolde come no ner
Kaunterbery att þat tyme but
he sente by his tresorer bisshop
of Wynchestre þat he schulde
done out of þe endentures þe
clause of restitucion for to ma
ke of þe goodes. ¶ And the
erchebisshop made his othe þat
he wolde neuer done oute o

worde þat of ne chaunge of þat
þe bisshoppis had spoken. and
ordeynede. and so þe erchebis
shop wente azen to Rome wiþ
oute any more doynge. ¶ King
John þo was moche wroþ þan
ene he was byfore. and lete ma
ke a comen crye þorouz out alle
Engelonde þat alle tho þat had
holy cherche rentz and wente
ouer þe see. þat þei scholde come
azen in to Engelonde at a cer
tayn day and ellis þei schulde
lese here rente for euermore and
þat he comaundid to any schereff
þorouz out Engelonde þat þei
schulde enquere of any bisshop
Abbot. priour or any oþer prelate
of holy cherche fro þat day after
warde resteynede any maunde
ment þat come fro þe pope. þat
þei schulde take þe bodye and
bringe hit bifore him and þat
þei schulde take in to þe kinges
hande alle hire landes of holy
cherche þat were zeuen vn to
any man þorouz þe erchebisshop
Stephene or by þe priour of
Kaunterbere fram þe tyme of
þe electioun of þe erchebisshop
And comanded þat alle the
wodes þat were þe erchebisshop
pis schulde ben caste a doun
vn to þe grounde and alle
solde.

How king John destroyede þe
ordre of Cisteaux &c. [capitulo] xlix.

And in þe same tyme
þe Iresshe men bigonne
for to werre vpon
king John. and king John ordei
nede him for to wende in to
Irlonde. and lete arere an huge
taxe þorugh out alle Engelonde
þat is to seyn xxx. þousande
mark and sente þorugh alle En
gelonde to þe monkes of the
ordre of Cisteaux þat þei schulde
helpe him of sixe þousande
mark of silver ¶ And þei an
swerede and sayde þat they
dorste no þing done wiþ out
hire chief Abbot of Cisteaux
Wherfore king John whanne
he come azen fram Irlande he
dede hem so muche sorowe
and care þat þei niste where
to abide for he toke so muche
raunsom of eny hous of hem
þat þe somme amountede
ix. þousande and iij. hundred
mark so þat þei were clene
loste and destroyede & voyded
hire hous and hire landes þo
rugh out al Engelonde ¶ And
þe abbot of Wauerleye drad
so muche his manace and he
forsoke al þe abbeye & wente
þannes and priueliche ordeyne
de him ouer þe see to þe hous
of Cisteaux ¶ Whanne þe ty
dinge come to þe pope þat þe
kyng had done so muche mali
ce. þo was he toward þe king
ful wroth and sente ij legatio
un to þe king þat on me called
Pandolf and þat oþer Durant
þat þei schulde warne þe king
in þe popes name þat he schul
de cesse of his persecucioun þat he
dede vn to holy chirche and a
mende þe wronge and þe trespace
þat he had done to þe archebis
shop of Caunterbury and to þe priour
and vn to þe monkes of Caunter
bery and to alle þe clergie of
Engelonde and þat he schulde
restore þe goodes azen þat he
had taken of hem azens hire
wille. and ellis þei schulde cur
se þe king by name and to done
þis þing and to conferme the
pope toke hem his letters in
bullis patent ¶ These ij legatio
come in to Engelonde and come
to þe king of Norhampton þe
þat he helde his parlement &
ful curteisly þei him salued
and saiden sire we ber comen
fram þe pope of Rome þe pees
of holy chirche and of þe lande
for to amende ¶ And we mo
neste zow ferste in popes half
þat ze make ful restitucioun of
þe goodes þat ze haue rauisshed

of holy chirche and of þe lande
and þat ȝe vnderfonge Staphe-
ne erchebisshop of Kauntbery
in to his dignite and þe priour
of Cauntberye and his mon-
kys and þat ȝe ȝelde aȝen vnto
þe erchebisshop alle his landes
and rentis wiþ oute eny wiþ-
holdinge ¶ And ȝere ȝit more
ouer þat ȝe suche restitucion
hem make as holy chirche shal
holde hire payede ¶ þo answe-
rede þe king as touchinge þe
priour and his monkys of Kaunt-
berye al þat ȝe haue sayde y wol
gladly do. And al þing þat ȝe
wil ordeyne ¶ But as touching
þe erchebisshop y shal telle
ȝow in myn herte as hit lyth:
þat þe erchebisshop lete his
Bisshopriche and þat þe pope
þan for him wolde praye. and
þan vpon aventure me shulde
like som oþer bisshopriche for to
ȝeue him in Engelonde. And
vpon þis condicion y wolde
him restore and vnderfonge.
And neþeles in Engelonde is
erchebisshop yf he abyde. he
shal neuer haue no good safe
condutt þat he ne shal ben ta-
ke ¶ þo saide Pandolf vnto
þe king. holy chirche was wo-
nede neuer to disgrade erche-
bisshop wiþ oute cause resonable

but euer he was wonte to chas-
tise princes þat to god and holy
chirche were in obedient ¶ What
how now quoþ þe king manace
ȝe me ¶ Nay saide Pandolf but
ȝe now openliche haue tolde
as hit standith in ȝoure herte.
And to ȝow we wile telle what
is þe pope wille and þus hit
stant: þat he hath ȝow holy enter-
dited and acursede for þe wron-
ges þat ȝe haue done to holy chir-
che and to þe clergye. And for as
muche as ȝe dwellet and ben in
wille to abide in ȝoure malice &
wil nouȝt come to non amende-
ment ȝe shal vnderstande þat
fro þis tyme afterwarde þe senten-
ce is vpon ȝow ȝeuen. And halt
stede and strengþe. And vpon al
þo þat wiþ ȝow haue communed
byfore þis tyme ¶ Wheþer þat
þei ben Erlis. Barouns. or kniȝtis
or eny oþer what so euer þat þey
ben we hem assoille sikerly vn-
to þis day. And fro þis tyme
afterwarde of what condicioun
euer þat þei be we hem acurse
þat wiþ ȝow communen and so
do we sentence on hem openly
and specially ¶ And we assoy-
le quitly Erlys Barouns knightes
and alle oþer maner men of her
homages. seruices and feautes
þat þei shulde vnto ȝow done.

And this thing to conferme we
ȝeuen pleyn power to þe bisshop
of Wynchestre to þe bisshop of
Norwiche. ¶ And þe same power
we ȝeuith in Scotlande to þe bis
shoppis of Rouchestre and of Salis
bery. ¶ And in Walis we ȝeuen
þe same power to þe bisshoppis of
Saint Dauid and of landa and of
saint Asse. ¶ And more ouer we
sendith þorugh alle cristendome þat
alle þe bisshoppis byȝonde þe see
þat þei done acurse alle þo þat
helpith ȝow or eny counceille
ȝeue in eny maner nede þat ȝe
haue for to done in any partye
of þe worlde. And þat assoiler
alle hem þat aȝens ȝow in eny
any maner were. ¶ And we as
soille hem alle also by þe aucto
rite of þe pope and comande hem
also wiþ ȝow for to werre and wiþ
him þat is enemy vnto alle holy
chirche. ¶ Þo answerde þe kinge
What mowe ȝe done me more
þan answerde pandolf we seyn
to ȝow in verbo dei þat ȝe ne non
heir þat ȝe haue neuer after þis
day may be coronede. ¶ Tho
seyde þe king by him þat is al
myghti god and I hadde wiste
of this thinge er þat ȝe come in
to my lande þat ȝe had me brouȝt
suche tidinge, y schulde haue
made ȝow ride alle an hole ȝere.

Þo answerde pandolf ful wel
wende we att oure firste comynge
þat ȝe wolde haue ben obedient
to god and to holy chirche and
haue fulfillede þe popis wille &
comaundement. And now we haue
shewede and pronouncede vn to
ȝow þe popes wille as we were
chargede þer with. ¶ And as now
ȝe haue saide þat yf ȝe hadde wist
þe cause of oure comynge þat
ȝe wolde haue made vs ride al
an hool ȝere and as wel ȝe miȝte
haue saide þat ȝe wolde haue
take an hool ȝere of respite by þe
popis leue. ¶ But for to wisse
what deth þat ȝe couþe ordeyne.
we schulle nouȝt spare for to telle
ȝow holliche al þe popis message
and his wille þat we were char
gede wiþ. ¶ Thow pandolf dely
uerd a clerk þat falsly had count
fetid þe kinges moneye byfore
þe king him self. ca° c° quinquagesimo

Anon þo comaunn ¶ sinno
did þe king þe Shereues
and baillefs of Northamp
tone þat were in þe kinges pre
sence þat þei schulde bringe forþ
alle þe prisoneres þat þey miȝte
ben don vn to þe deth bifore pan
dolf for encheson þe kinge we
de þat þei wolde haue gayn say
de his dedes for cause of þey
al þyng þat he had spoken afore.

Whenne þe prisoners were come
bifore þe king. þe kinge comanded
somme to ben honged & somme to
ben drawe and somme to drawe
out hire eyen of hire hevede and
amonge alle oþer þer was a clerk
þat had falsede þe kingis monee.
And þe kyng comaunded þat he schul
de be honged and drawe. ¶ And
whenne Pandolf herde þis com
maundement of þe kyng he sterte
him up smartely and anoon axed
a book and candelle and wolde
have cursede alle hem þat sette
upon þe clerk any honde. ¶ And
Pandolf him self wente for to
seche a cros. and þe king folowed
him and delivered him þe clerk by
þe hande þat he schulde done wit
¶ what ever he wolde. and þus
was þe clerke delyvered & wente
þennes. and Pandulf and Durant
his felawe wente fro þe kinge
John and come aȝen to þe pope
of Rome and tolde him þat king
John wolde nouȝt amendid ben
but ever abidin as acursede. ¶ And
noþeles þe pope graunted þat a
ȝer þoruȝ out Engelonde þat men
myȝte synge masses in covena
ble cherches and make goddis
bodye and ȝeve hit to sike man
þat passe schulde out of þis worl
de. and also þat man myȝt cristen
children over al. ¶ And whenne

þe pope sawe and wiste þat þe
kyng wolde nouȝt ben under þe
reule of holy cherche for no man
þing. þe pope þo sente to þe king
of ffraunce in remission of his syn
nes þat he schulde take with
him alle þe power þat he myȝte
and wende in to Engelonde for
to destroye king John. ¶ Whenne
þis tydinge come to king John
þo was he sore annoyede and
sore drad leste þat he schulde
lese his reaume and him selfe
be done to þe deth. ¶ þo sente he
to þe pope messangers and saide
þat he wolde ben iustifiede and
come to amendement in al man
þinges att his owne wille. þe
messangeres come to þe pope and
tolde him þe kinges wille and
sayde þat he wolde come to a
mendement in alle þinges and
wolde make satisfaction to alle
manere man after þe popes ordina
ce. ¶ þo sente þe pope aȝen into
Engelonde Pandolf and oþer
messangers and comen to Caunt
berye þer þe king abode and þe
xiii day of May þe king made
an oth for to stande to þe popes
ordinaunce bifore Pandolf þe
legat in alman þinges for þe
whiche he was acursede and þat
he schulde make ful restitucion
to alle men of holye cherche &

and of religiouns of þe goodes þat he had take of hem azens hire wille and alle þe grete lordes of Englonde swore vppon þe book and by þe halydome þat yf the king wolde nouzt holde his oth þey saide þat þey wolde make hym halde hit by strengþe. ¶ þo putt þe kyng him to þe court of Rome and to þe pope and þo zaf vp the Reme of Englonde and of Irlande for him and for his heires for euermore þat schulde come aftir him so þat king John and his heires schulde take þe ij reames of þe pope hande and schulde halde þo ij reames of þe pope as to ferme payinge euery zere to þe court of Rome a þousande marc of silver. And þo nome þe king þe crowne of hevede and sette hy on his knees and þese wordes saide in herynge of alle þe grete lordes of Englonde. Here y resigne vp þe crowne and þe reamme of Englonde into þe popes han de Innocent þe þridde and putt me holliche in his mercys and in his ordinaunce. ¶ þo vnderfonge pandolf þe crowne of king John and kepte hit fyue dayes as for sesinge takinge of þo ij reames of Englonde and of Irlande and confermede alle manere þinges by his chart[er] þat folowep aft[er].

¶ Off þe lett[er] obligatorie þat king John made to þe court of Rome wherfore þe petrus pens be gadrede þorz alle Englonde. ca[pitulum]. c[entesimum]. iiij[°] h[°].

To alle cristen peple þorz out þe worlde duellinge John by þe grace of god king of Englonde gretinge to zoure vniuersite. and knowe þing hit be. þat for as muche þat we haue greuede and offended god and oure moder chirche of Rome. and for as muche as we haue nede to þe mercye of oure lorde Jh[es]u crist and we may no þing so worthy offre competent satisfac cion to make to god and to holy chirche but yf hit were oure owne body as wiþ oure reames of Englonde and of Irlonde. þanne by þe grace of þe holy gost we desiren for to maken vs for the loue of hym þat mekede him to þe deþ of þe crois. þorz counseyl of þe noble erlis and barons we offren and frely grunten to god and to þe apostolis seinte Petre and seint Poul and to oure moder chirche of Rome and to oure holy fader þe pope Innocent þe þridde and to alle þe popes þat comen after him alle þe rea mes and patronages of chirches of Englonde and of Irlande

wiþ alle þe appurtenaunces for
remissioun of oure synnes &
helpe and helthe of oure kyn
soules and of alle cristen
soules. so þat fro þis tyme after
warde we wile resceyue and
holde as oure moder chirche
of Rome as fee ferme doynge
feaute to oure holy fader the
pope Innocent þe þridde and
to alle þe popis þat comith after
him in þe maner abouesayde.
And in presence of þe wise man
Pandolf þe popis southdekene
we maken liege homage as
hit were in þe popis presence &
bifore him were. And we schul
done alle maner þinges aboue
saide and þerto we bindith vs
and alle þat cometh after vs
and oure heires for euermore with
oute any gaynsayinge to the
pope and also þe warde of chir
che vacaunt. And in tokene of
þis þing euer for to laste we
wile conferme and ordeyne
þat oure special rentz of the
forsaide Reaume sauynge Sent
peter is pens in alle þing to
þe moder chirche of Rome pay
inge by ȝere a þousand mark
of siluer att two termes of
þe ȝere for alle maner customes
þat we schulle done for the
forsaide Reaumez. þat is to sayn

att michelis masse and att ester
þat is to sayn vii hundrede
mark for Engelonde and iii c
for Irelande sauynge to vs &
to oure heires oure Iustices and
oure other fraunchises and oure
realtez þat perteyneth vnto þe
corone. And alle þese þinges
þat bifore ben saide we wile þat
hit be ferme and stable with
outen ende. and to þat obliga
cioun we and alle oure succes
sours and oure heires in this
maner ben bounde þat yf we
or any of oure heirez þorw any
presumpcion falle in any poynt
azen þese þingis aboue saide
and he ben warnede and wil
nouzt riзt amende him he schal
þanne lese þe forsaide reaumes
for euermore and þat þis chartre
of obligacioun and oure warant
for euermore be ferme and sta
ble wiþ oute gaynsayinges. we
schul fro þis day afterwarde be
trewe to god and to þe moder
chirche of Rome. and to the
pope Innocent þe þridde. and
to alle þat comyth after him
and þe reaumes of Engelonde
and of Irelonde we schulle
mayntene trewelich in alle
maner poyntes azens alle
maner man by oure power
þorw goddes helpe.

How þe clerkes þat were outlawede of Engelande come aȝen. and how kinge Johu was assoilede. capitulo C. lxij.

Whanne þis chartre was made and ensealede: þe king vnderfenge aȝen þe coroune of Pandolfus handes. and sente anon vnto þe erchebisshop Stephene and to alle his oþer clerkes and lewede men þat had exiled out of his lande þat þei schulde come aȝen in to Engelonde and haue aȝen her landes and her rentis: and þat he wolde make restitucioun of þe goodes þat he had take of hem aȝens her will. Tho þe king him self þo and Pandolf and Erles and Barouns wente tho. vn to Wynchestre aȝen þe erchebisshop Stephene: and whenne he was come þe king wente aȝens him. and felle adoun vnto his feete: and saide to him Faire sire ȝe ben wel come and I crie ȝow mercye for encheson þat I haue trespassede aȝens ȝow.

Tho þe erchebisshop toke him vp þo in his armes and kissede hym curteisliche ofte tymes. and after ladde him to þe dore of Seint Swithunus cherche by þe hande and assoillede him of þe sentence and him recounsilede to god and to holy cherche and that was on Seint Margaretis day. And þe erchebisshop anon wente for to singe masse and þe king offrede att þe masse a mark of gold.

And whenne þe masse was done alle þei wente for to vnderfonge alle her landes wiþoute any meners agayn sayinge and þat day þey made alle mirþe and ioye y now: but ȝit was nouȝt þe entredite relessede for encheson had ouȝte þat þe entreditinge schulde nouȝt ben vndone til þe king had made ful restitucioun of þe goodes þat he had take of holy cherche & also þat him self schulde done homage to þe pope by a certayn legatt þat he schulde sende into Engelonde.

Tho þo nome Pandolf his leue of þe king and of þe erchebisshop and wente aȝen vnto Rome. and þe erchebisshop anon lete come byfore him þe prelatis of holy cherche att Redynge for to trete and counseile how moche and what þei schulde axe of þe king for to make restitucioun of þe goodes þat he had take of hem.

And þei ordeynede and saide þat þe kinge schulde ȝeue to þe erchebisshop iij. þousande mark for þe wrong þat þe king had done vnto him

and also to oþer clerkes by þor-
ciouns xv. þousande mark. &
in þe same tyme Nicholas bis-
shop of Tusculan cardinal þeni-
tauncer of Rome come in to
Engelonde þorgh þe popes com-
maundement þe v. kl. of Octobr.
and come to london þe v. Non
of Octobr. for encheson þat king
John and alle þe kinges þat comen
after him shulde evermore halde
þe reames of Engelonde and
of Irelonde of god and of the
popes paynge to þe pope by zer
as is above saide. ¶ How þe
entirditinge was undon in
Engelonde. and of þe debate
þat was bytwene king John
and þe barouns of þe reame.
Capitulo centesimo x. iii.

When king John had
done his homage to
þe legat þat shewede
him þe popes letter þat he shul-
de paie to Juliane and zelde a-
zen þat was king Richardus
wyf þe iii. parte of þe londe of
Engelonde and of Irlonde þat
he had wiþ holde or þat king
deide. ¶ Whenne king John
herde þis he was wonder wroþ
for certeynliche þe entirditinge
mizt nouzt ben undone til þat
he had made gree and restitu-
cioun to þe forsaide Juliane of
þat sche axede. ¶ þe legate wen-
te þo azen to þe pope after cristo-
masse. and þe king sente his
messangers over þe see to Juli-
ane þat was king Richardes wyf
for to have a relesse of þat sche
axede of him. ¶ And so hit
felle þat Juliane deide anon
after Ester. and in so muche the
king was quit of þing þat
sche axede. but þo att þe feste
of seint John þat come nexte
after þorgh þe popes comaunde-
ment þe entirditinge was
forsthe relesede þorgh alle Enge-
londe þe viii. day of Juill and
vii zer was þe londe entirditede
and on þe morewen men songe
and songe masses þorgh out
london and so after þorgh alle
Engelonde. ¶ And þe nexte
zere after þer bygan a grete
debate bitwene king John and
þe lordes of Engelonde for en-
cheson þat he wolde nouzt
graunte þe lawes and haldes þe
whiche seint Edwarde had
ordeynede and had ben usede
and holde un to þat tyme þat
he had ham broken for he wolde
no lawe holde but dede alle
þing þat him lykede and dishe-
ritede many men wiþ oute co-
sente of lordes and peres of
þe londe and he wolde have

Disheritede þe good Erle Ran
dulf of Chestre for encheson
þat he vndernam him of his
wickydnesse. And for cause þat
he dede so muche shame and
vilonye to god and to holy cher
che. and also for he helde and
hauntede his owene brothers wif
and lay also by manye oþer wym
men grete lordes douztres for
he sparede no womman þat him
likede for to haue. wherfore all
þe lordes of þe lande wer wt
him wonder wroth and wen
te to london and toke þe citee
And for to cese þis debate and
sorowe þe king and þe erche
bisshop and oþer grete lordes
of þe lande of Engelonde asse
blede hem byfore þe feste of
seint John þe Baptist in a me
dewe besides þe toun of Sta
nes þat is callede Romemede
and þe king made hem þer a
chartre of fraunchises suche as
þei wolde axen and in suche a
manere þei were accorded. And
þat accordement laste nouzt
ful longe. for þe kyng him self
sone after dede azens þe pointes
of þe same chartre þat he had
made wherfore þe moste partie
of þe lande of lordes assem
blede hem and bygunne to
werre vpon king John and
brente his townes and robbed
his folke and dede alle the
sorowe þat þei myzte and made
hem as stronge as þei myzte
wiþ alle þeir power and þouzte
dryue him out of Engelonde
and make Lowys þe kinges sone
of fraunce king of Engelonde.
And kyng John sente þo ouer
þe see. and ordeynede so mu
che peple of Normannes &
of Picardes and of Flemyn
ges so þat þe lande myzt nouzt
hem sustayne but wiþ muchel
sorowe. And among alle
þis peple þat was come of Nor
mandye þat me callede Fau
kes of Brent. and þis Norman
and his companye sparede
noþer chirche ne hous of religion
þat þei ne brende and robbed
hit and bare awey al þat they
myzte take. so þat þe lande
was alle destroyede what
in o side and in þat oþer. The
barons and lordes þo of En
gelonde ordeynede amonge
hem þe beste spekers and wy
sest men and sente hem ouer
þe see to king Philip of fraunce
and praiede him þat he wolde
sende Lowys his sone into
Engelonde to ben kynge of
Engelonde and vnderfonge
the corone.

Hou Lowys þe kinges sone of
ffraunce come into Engelonde
wiþ a stronge power of peple
to ben king of Engelonde Ca-
pitulo Centesimo lxiiij

When kyng Phelip
of ffraunce herde this
tydinge he made cer-
tayne aliaunce bitwene hem
by here commune electioun þat
Lowys king Philippus sone of
ffraunce schulde gon with hem
into Engelonde and dryue oute
kyng Iohn of þe londe and alle
þat were in presence of Lowys
made unto hym homage and
bicome his men and þe barons
of Engelonde helde hem stille
att London and abiden þe Low-
ys þe kinges sone of ffraunce &
þis was next Satday bifore þe
Ascencioun of oure lorde þat Lowys
come into Engelonde wiþ a stronge
power and þat tyme king Iohn
had take alle þe castelles of
Engelonde into aliens han-
des And Lowys come þo to
Rouchestre and bysegede the
castell and toke hit wiþ streng-
the and þo þursday in whit-
son weke Lete honge alle the
aliens þat were þerinne and
þe þursday þo next folwinge
he come to London and þere he
was underfonge wiþ muchel
honour of þe lordes þat abiden
him þere and alle to him þei made
homage And after warde in þe
tywesday next after þe Trinite
Sonday he toke þe castel of
Reygate and in þe morowe after
þe castel of Gildeforde and the
friday next after þe castel of
farneham and þe moneday next
after þe citee of Wynchestre to
hym was yolde and in þe mo-
rewe after seint Iohnes day þe
Manere of Wolnesey and þe tew-
ysday next after þe feste of seint
Petre and seint Paule þei token
þe castel of Odiham And þe
moneday next after seint Mar-
garete day he ordeynede him
towarde Wyndesore for to bysege
þe castell and þere he duellede
xv dayes and myȝt noȝt gete
þe castell and þan wente þey
þennes and come to London &
þe Tour to him was yolde

Hou in þe same tyme þe [illegible]
sent into Engelonde a legat
þat me callede Swalo and of
king Iohnes deth Capitulo Centesimo lxv

And in þe same tyme the
[illegible] sente into Enge-
londe a legat þat me
callede Swalo and he was
prest Cardinal of Rome for to
mayntene king Iohnes cause
aȝeins þe baronns of Engelonde

but þe barouns had so huge
parte and helpe þourȝ lordys þe
kinges sone of ffraunce þat king
John wiste nouȝt wheder for to
turne ne gon ¶ And so hit
felle þat he wolde haue gon
to Nicchole. and as he wente þe
derwarde he come by þe abbaye
of Swynesheuede and þere he
abode ij. dayes ¶ And as he sate
att mete he axede a monke of
þe hous how muche a lof was
worth þat was sette by fore him
vppon þe table. and þe monke
sayde þat þe lof was worth but
an halpenye. O quod he þo. here
is grate chepe of brede ¶ Now
quod þe king and y may leue
suche a lof schal ben worth xx. d
or half ȝere be gon. and whanne
he had saide þis worde muche
he þouȝte and ofte tyme sighede
and nome and ete of þe brede.
and saide by god þe worde þat y
haue spoken hit schal ben soth.
The monke þat stode by fore þe
kyng was for þis worde ful
sorye in herte. and þouȝte rather
he wolde him self suffre pitous
deth. and þouȝte yf he miȝte
ordeyne þerfore som maner reme
dye ¶ And anon þe monke
wente to his abbot and was
schryuen of him. and tolde þe
abbot al þat þe king saide &
praiede his abbot for to assoille
him. for he wolde ȝeue þe king
suche a wassayle þat alle Enge
londe schulde be glad þerof and
joyfull ¶ Tho wente the
monke in to a gardeyne and
fonde a grate tode þer inne and
nome hire vp and putt here in
a cuppe and prikede þe tode þo
ruȝ wiþ a broche manye tymes
til þat þe venymme come out in
euche side in to þe cuppe and
þo he nome þe cuppe and filled
hit wiþ good ale and brouȝt hit
bifore þe king. and knelyng
saide ¶ Sire quod he wassay
le for neuer dayes of ȝour lyf
ne dronke ȝe of suche a cuppe.
¶ Bygynne monk quod þe king
and þe monke dranke a grete
drauȝte and toke þe king þe
cuppe and þe king also drank
a grete drauȝte and sette doun
þe cuppe ¶ þe monke anon riȝt
wente in to þe fermerie and
þere deide anon. on whos soule
god haue mercye amen ¶ And
v. monkes singen for his sou
le specialliche and schullen
while þe abbay stante ¶ þe
king roos vp anon ful euel att
ese and comandede to remeue
þe table and axede after the
monke. and men tolde him þat
he was dede for his wombe

was broke in sunder. ¶ When
þe king herde þis tidinge he co
maunded for to trusse but alle
hit was for nouȝt for his bely
bygan so to swelle for þe drin
ke þat he dranke þat he deyde
wiþ inne ij dayes þe morowe
after Seint lukes day. ¶ And þis
king Iohn had faire children of
his body geten þat is to seyn
Henry his sone þat was king aft'
his fader. And Richarde that
was Erle of Cornewayle and
Isabelle þat was Emprice of
Rome. And Alienore þat was
queene of Scotlande. ¶ And þis
king Iohn whenne he had reg
nede xvij ȝer' v monþes &
v dayes he deide in þe castel
of Newerk and his body
was beriede att Wynchester.

Off king Henry þe þridde þat was crownede att Gloucestre Capitulo centesimo l vjto

And after þis kinge
Iohn regnede Henry
his sone and was
crownede att Gloucester when
he was ix ȝer olde on seint
Symondis day and Iude of
Swalo þe legatt þorȝ coun
ceile of alle þe grete lordes
þat helde wiþ kyng Iohn his
fader þat is to seyn þe Erle
Randolf of Chester. William
Erle of Penbrok. William the
Erl Marchal William þe Brewer
Erle of Ferers. Fole de Maule
Baroun and alle oþer grete lor
des of Engelonde helde with
Lowys þe kyng' sone of Fraunce
And anon after whenne king
Henri was crowned Swalo
þe legatt helde his counseile
att Bristowe att seint Martins
feste & þer were xj bisshoppis of
Engelonde and of Walys and
of oþer prelatis of holye chirche
a grete nombre and Erlis and
Barouns and menye knyȝtis
of Engelonde. And alle þo þat
were att þat counceile swore
feautee vnto Henry þe kinge
þat was king Iones sone.
¶ And and after þe legatt enter
dited Walys for encheson
þat þei helde wiþ þe barouns
of Engelonde and also alle
þo þat holpen or ȝaf counceil
to make werre aȝens þe newe
kyng Henry he cursede hem.
And in þe begynnynge he putt
in þe sentence þe kinges sone
of Fraunce Lowys. ¶ And no
þeles þe same lowys wolde
nouȝt spare for to werre for al
þat. but wente anon and toke
þe castel of Berkhamstede

and also þe castel of Hertford
And fram þat day afterwarde
þe barouns dede so muche har
me þorouȝ alle Engelonde and
principaly þe Frensshe men þat
were come wiþ lowys wher
fore þe grete lordes and alle þe
commune peple of Engelonde
lete hem goue for to dryf lowys
and his companye out of Enge
londe ¶ But some of þe barouns
and also of þe Frensshemen wer
gon to þe cite of Nicchole &
taken þe cite and helde hit to
king lowys profite but þider
come king Henries men wiþ
a grete power þat is to seyn
þe Erle Randulf of Chestre
and William erle Marchal &
William de la Bruere erle of
Ferrers and meny oþer lordes
wiþ hem and ȝeue bataile vn
to lowys men ¶ And þere was
slayn þe erle of Perches and
lowys men were þere foule dis
fitede and þere was take Sere
erle of Wynchestre and Humfrey
de Boun erl of Herford & Robert
þe Sone of Walter and meny
oþer þat had bigonne werre
aȝens þe kyng þere were taken
and lad vn to king Henry king
Johnes sone ¶ Whanne the
tydinge of þis discomfiture com
vn to lowys he remeuede þennes
and wente vn to london and
lete schette þe ȝates faste of
þe cite ¶ And anon after the
king sente to þe burgeys of lon
don þat þei schulde ȝelde hem
vn to him and þe cite also &
he wolde hem graunte alle þe
fraunchises þat euer þei were
wonede for to haue and wol
de confirme hem by his grete
newe chartre vnder his grete
seal ¶ And in þe same tyme
a grete lorde þat me callede
Eustace þe Monk come out
of Fraunce wiþ a grete companye
of lordis and wolde haue
come in to Engelonde for to
haue holpe lowys þe kingis
sone of Fraunce ¶ But Hubert
of Burgh and þe v portis
wiþ viij schippis and nomo met
te wiþ hem in þe hye see and
assaillede hem egerly and ouer
come hem þorouȝ strengþe and
smyten of Eustacez the monkes
heuede and token also xxiiij grete
lordes of Fraunce and put hem
in to prisoun and quelde almost
alle þe men þat come wiþ him
and dreynchid þe schippis in
þe see

¶ Hou lowys turnede aȝen in to Fraunce & of þe deyinge of king Johnes chapitre CC.lviij

Whanne lowys herde þis tydinges he

hadde ordre to ben dede and loste
and lete or deyne and speke by
twene þe king and Lowys by þe
legatt Walo and þorz þe arche
bisshop of Kauntburye and þorz
other grete lordes þat alle the
prisoners of oon half and oþer
oþer half schulde ben delyuerede
and gon quite. and Lowys him
self schulde haue for his costa
ges a þousande pounde of
syluer and he schulde gone
out out of Engelonde & come
neuer þere inne azen. and in þis
manere was þe acorde made
by twene kyng Henry and Low
ys. and þo was Lowys assoillede
of þe popes legatt þat me called
Walo of þe sentence þat he
was in and þe barouns of En
gelonde also. And after this
kyng Henry and Walo þe legatt
and Lowys wente vnto Aston
and þere was þe pees conferme
de and by twene hem ordey
nede. and afterwardes Lowys
wente his weyes vnto London
and nome his leue and was
brouzt with muchel honour att þe
see by the archebisshop of
Kauntburye and by oþer bisshop
pis and also by erles and ba
rouns and so wente Lowys in
to Fraunce. And afterwardes
þe king and þe archebisshop and

erles and barouns assemblede
hem att London att Mighelis
masse þat next þo come sewe
ynge and helde þere a parlement
and þere were þo renewede alle
þe fraunchisez þat kyng John
grauntede hadde att Runnemede
and king Henry þo confermede
hem by his chartre þe whiche
zett beth holden þorz out alle
Engelonde. And in þat ty
me þe king toke of euery plough
lande .ii.s. and Hubert of
Burgh was made þo chief
iustice of al Engelonde. and
þis was þe iiii. zere of king
Henryes regne. and in þe same
zere was [illegible]
[illegible] translatede the
fiftyþe zere after his martirde
me. And after hit was ordey
nede by alle þe lordes of Enge
londe þat alle aliens schulde
gon out of Engelonde & come
no more þere inne. and þo king
nome þo alle þo castelles in
to his hande þat king John
his fader had zeue and taken
vnto aliens for to kepe þat
helde wiþ hem. But the
proude Fraunkes of Breaute neþe
ly lete assaye his castel of Be
deforde whiche he had of the
kinges ziste John and he helde
þat castel azens king Henries

wille wiþ myȝte and strengþ
And þe kyng come þeder wiþ
a stronge power and bysegede
þe castel. and þe erchebisshop
of Kaunterberye maister Stephe
ne of Langeton wiþ a faire co-
panye of knyghtis come to the
kyng hym for to helpe and hem
þe ascencion vnto þe assumpcion
of oure lady laste þe sege. and
þo was þe castel wonne and
take and þe king lete honge alle
þo þat were wente in to the
castel wiþ hire good wille for
to halde þe castel þat is for to
seyn. foure score men ¶ And þo
afterwarde ffaukes hym selfe
was founde in a chirche of Coue
tre and þe he forswor alle En
gelonde wiþ muche schame ne wiþ
muche schame and wente þo
azen in to his owne cuntre.
¶ And whiles þat king Henry sen
regnede Edmunde of Abyndon
þat was tresorer of Salesbery
was sacrede erchebisshop of
Caunterbery and þis king Hen
ry sente ouer þe see vnto þe
Erle of Prouince: þat he schulde
sende hym his doughter in to
Engelonde þat me callede Alie
nore and he wolde wedde
hir: and so sche come in to
Engelonde after Cristemasse &
in þe morne after Seint Hillary
þe erchebisshop Edmunde spou
sede hem to gedere att Kaunterbery
and att þe viij of Seint Hillary
sche was crownede att Westmyn
stre wiþ muchel solempnite
and þe was a feire sighte by
twene hem. þat is to seyn Ed
munde þat was nexte king after
hym his broþer Edm' of Lancastre
and of Leycestre. and Margarete
þat was afterwarde quene of
Scotlande. and Beatrice þat
was afterwarde Countesse of
Britaigne. and Katerine þat deide
maide in religioun ¶ Off the
quinȝime of goodes þat were
grauntede for the newe char
tres. and of þe purueaunce of
Oxenforde. Cap° C^mo. xviij°.

And þus hit fell þat þe
lordes of Engelonde
wolde haue some
addiciouns mo in þe chartre
of fraunchises þat þei hadde
of þe king and speken þus by
twene hem. and þe kyng grau
tede hem alle hire askinge &
made to hem ij chartres: þat
on is callede þe grete chartre
of ffraunchises: and þat oþer is
callede þe chartre of fforest. &
for þe graunte of þese ij char
tres prelatis. clerkis and Barouns
and alle þe comunes of Enge
londe zaf to þe king a þousande

marc of Sylincy. Whenne
kyng Henry had ben king xliij.
ȝer þat same ȝer he and his
lordes. erlis and barouns of
þe reaume wente to Oxen
forde. and ordeynede a lawe
in amendement of þe reaume
and ferst swore þe king him
self and after alle þe lordes
of þe reaume þat þei wolde hol
de þat statut for euermore and ho
þat hem brake schulde be dede
But þe secunde ȝer after þat
ordinance: þe king þorugh coun
saile of sire Edwarde his sone
and of Richarde his broþer þat was
erle of Cornewaile and also of
oþer: repentede him of þat oth
þat he had made for to holde
þat lawe and ordinaunce: and
sente to þe court of Rome to
ben assoillede of þat oth þat
he had made. and in þat ȝere
next comynge after was the
grete derthe of corn in Enge
londe for a quarter of whete
was worth some an twenty schil
linges and þe pore peple ete
netles for hunger and oþer we
dis and dede menye a þousan
de for defaute of mete. And
in þe xlviij ȝer of king Henryes
regne bigan werre and deba
te bitwene him and his lordes
for enchesoun þat he had broke

þe couenauntz þat wer made
bitwene ham att Oxenforde
And in þat same ȝere in werre
was þe toun of Northampton
take. and þe folke slayn þat
wer þer inne for enchesoun þat
þei had ordeynede wildefir
for to haue brent þe citee of Lon
don. And in þe moneþe of
May þat come next after vppon
saint Pancras day was the
batayle att Lewys þat is to sayn
þe Wednesday bifore saint Dun
stonus day and þer was take
king Henry him self and sire Ed
warde his sone and Richard
erle of Cornewaile and menye
oþer lordes. And in þat same
ȝer next suynge sire Edwarde
þe kinges sone brak out of þe
warde of sire Symounde of Mount
fort erl of Leycestre att Herforde
and wente to þe barouns of þe
marche and þei vnderfenge
him wiþ muchel honour.
And in þe same tyme Gilbert
of Clarence erle of Gloucestre
þat was in þe warde also of þe
forsaide Symounde þorugh þe
comaundement of king Henry
þat wente fram him wiþ grete
herte for enchesoun þat he
saide þat þe forsaide Gilbert
was a fool in his counsaile
wherefore he ordeynede hym

after warde os and helde wiþ
king henry ¶ And þe tuesday
next after þe middis of August
sir Edwarde þe kinges sone
descomfitede sir Symond de
Mountforde att kenilworthe. but
þe grete lordes þat were þere wt
him were taken þat is to seyn
Baldewyne wake William of
Mounchensye and menye oþer
grete lordes. and þe tewysday
nexte after was the bataile do
ne att Evesham and þere was
quelde sir Symonde de Mount
forte knyȝt sir Hugh le Spenser & Mount
fort þat was raf Bassettis fadir
of Drayton and oþer menye grete
lordes ¶ And whenne this
bataille was do alle þe gen
tiles þat had ben wiþ þe Erle
Symonde were disheritede
and þei ordeined hem to ga
der and dede muche harme
to alle þe londe for þei destroy
ede his enemyes in al þat
þei myȝte. ¶ Off þe sege of
kenilworthe and how þe gen
tilemen were disheritede þo
ruȝ counsaile of lordes of þe
reaume of Engelonde and
how þei come aȝen & hadde
landes. Capitulum c lix.

And in þe ȝere next
comynge in May þe
ferþe day by fore seint
Dunston was bataille and sto
ftiye att Chestfelde of ham
þat were disheritede and þere
manye of hem were quelde
and Robert erl of fferers þere
was take and also Baldewyn
wake and John de la Hay wt
muchel oþere scapede þen
nes. and in seint Johnes eue
þe Baptist þo nexte comynge
bigan þe sege of þe castel of
kenilworthe and þe sege laste
til seint thomas eue þe apostil
in whiche day sir Henry Hastin
ge had þe castel to kepe þat
ȝelde vp þe castel vnto þe king
in þis manere. þat him selfe
and alle þe oþer þat were wiþ
jnne þe castell schulde haue
her lyf and lyme and alle
her þing as þey had þe jnne
bope hors and harneys & some
dayes respite for to delyuer
clanliche þe castel of hem self
and of alle mannes þing þat
þei had wiþ jnne þe castel &
so þei wente from þe castel &
þe king and his men wente
þo into þe castel ¶ And sir
Symond þe Mountfort the
ȝong and þe Countasse his
moder were fled ouer þe see
in to ffraunce and þer helde hem
as people þat were exilede
out of Engelonde for euermore.

And sone after hit was ordey-
nede by þe legatt Ottobon and
by oþer grete lordes þe which of
Engelonde þat alle þo þat had
ben azens the king and were
disherittede schulde haue azen
hire landes and by graunt and
raunsom after þat hit was or-
deynede and þus þei were ac-
corded wiþ þe king ¶ þus was
pees made þorouz al Engelon-
de and þus þe werre was ended
and whanne þis was done
þe legatt nome his lef att þe
king and of þe quene and of
alle þe grete lordes of Enge-
londe and wente þo to Rome
þe lj and fiftye zer of king
Henr' regne ¶ And Edwarde
king Johnes sone of Brittaigne
John Vessy Thomas of Clare
Rog' of Cliffforde Othes of Graunt
son Robert le Brus John of
Verdone and meny oþer lordes
of Engelonde and of byzonde
þe see token hire way towarde
þe holy londe: and þe king Hen-
ry deide in þe mene tyme att
Westmynster whanne he had
ben kyng lvi zer and xix we-
kys on seint Edmundes day þe
archebisshop of Caunterbury and
he was enterede att Westm' on
Seint Edmundes day þe king
in þe zer of incarnacion of oure
lord Jesu Crist m¹ cc lxxij.

¶ Prophecie of Merlyn of king
Henry expounede þat was
king Johnes sone ca° c^mo lx°

And of king Henry þus pro-
phesiede Merlyn and
saide þat a lombe schulde
come out of Wynchester in þe
zere of incarnacioun of oure lord
m¹ cc and xvi wiþ whitelippis
and holynesse writen in his
herte. and he saide soþ for þe
good Henry þe king was bore
in Wynchester in þe zere aboue
saide. and he spake good wor-
des and swete and was an
holy man and of good conscien-
ce ¶ And Merlyn saide þat þis
Henry schulde make þe fairest
place of al þe worlde þat in
his tyme schulde nouzt ben ful-
filled: and he saide soþ for he
made þe newe werke of the
abbay of Seint Petres chirche
att Westmynster þat is fairer
of sighte þan any oþer chirche
þat men knowet þorouz al cristen-
dome. but king Henry deide er
þat werke were fulliche made
and þat was grete harme.
¶ And zit saide Merlyn þat þis
lambe schulde haue pees þe
moste tyme of his regne and
he saide ful soth. for he was
neuer annoyede þorouz werre

[illegible] merlyns [illegible]

ne dispende in Normandie wiþ
til a litel byfore his deth. And
ȝit saide Merlyn more in his p[ro]phe-
cie þat in þe Regne and ende
of þe forsaide lambe a wolfe of
a straunge londe schulde done hym
grete harme þoruȝ his werre &
þat he schulde att þe laste ben
maister þoruȝ helpe of a rede
foxe þat schulde come out of þe
Northwest and schulde hym
ouercome. and þat he schulde dri-
ue hym vn to þe wat[er] and þ[a]t p[ro]phe-
cie ful wel was knowe. for wiþ
inne a litil tyme or þe king deide
Symound of Mountfort erl of
leycestr[e] þat was bore in ffraunce
bigan aȝens hym stronge werr[e]
þoruȝ whiche doynge meny a
good bachiler was schent and
ded and disheritede. And
whenne king Henry had the
vittorye at Euesham and Symon-
de þe erl was slayn þoruȝ help
and myȝte of Gilbert of Clare
erl of Gloucestr[e] þat was in ke-
pinge and warde of þe forsaide
Symonde þoruȝ ordinaunce of
king Henry þat wente aȝen
to þe king wiþ michel power.
wherfore þe forsaide Symonde
was schent and þat was grete
harme to þe commune of Enge-
londe þat so good a man was
schent for treuþe and deide in

charite and for þe commune p[ro]fite
of þe same folk. and þ[er]fore al
myghty god for hym hath sithens
schewede meny a faire miracle
of diu[er]se men and wymmen of
þe sikenesse and disese þ[a]t þei
haue had for þe loue of hym.
And Merlyn also tolde and saide
in his p[ro]phecie þat aft[er] þat time
þe lambe schulde lef no while
and þan his heed schulde ben
in straunge lande wiþ oute þat
tyme. And he saide soþ. for king
Henry leuede no while after
whenne Symounde Mountfort
was dede þat king Henry ne
deide anon aftir hym. And
in þe mene tyme Sire Edwarde
his sone þat was þe best kniȝt
of þe worlde of honour was þo
in þe holy lande and ghette þe
Acres. And in þat citie he
bigate in dame Alianore his
wif Johne of Acres his douȝter
þat aftirwarde was Countesse
of Gloucestre. and he made in
þe holy lande suche a viage þ[a]t
alle þe worlde spake of his
kniȝthode and eu[er]y man drad
hym here and loue þoruȝ out
alle cristendome as þe story of
hym telleth as aftirwarde ȝe
schulle here more openly. And
fram þe time þat king Henry
deide til þat Sire Edwarde was

gouernede king: alle þe grete
lordes of Engelonde were as
faderles children wiþoute eny
lordes þat hem myghte meynten
and gouerne and defende azens
hire dedliche enemys. ¶ Of king
Edwarde þat was king Hen
ryes sone. Cap^o. C^mo. Octogesimo primo.

And after þis king
Henry regnede his sone
Edwarde þe worthyest
knyȝt of alle þe worlde of honour
for goddes grace was in him for
he had þe victorie of his enemys
And as sone as kyng Henry deide
he come to london wiþ a faire
companye of prelatis and of erlis
and barouns: and alle manere
men dede him michel honour:
for many place þe þat þe Ed
warde rode in londone þe stre
tis were hangede on his hauede
wiþ riche clopes of silke of ar
ras and wiþ riche conynge
¶ And for ioye of his comynge
þe noble burgeys of þe citee
caste out att her wyndowes golde
and siluer handes full in toke
nynge of loue and of worshep
ouer and reuerence ¶ And out
of þe condit of Chepe ran white
wyne and rede as streme dop
of water and eny man þat
myzte drinke att hire owene
wille ¶ And þis king Edwarde

was crounede and anoyntede
as riȝt heir of Engelonde wiþ
michel honour and after masse
þe kinge wente unto his paleys
for to halde a rial feste amonge
hem þat him had done honour.
And whanne he was sette unto
his mete þe king Alisaundre
of Scotlande come for to done
him honour and reuerence with a
quyntise and an hundred knyȝt
with him wel horsede and aray
ede. and whanne þei were liȝt
adoun of hire stedes þay lete
hem gon whider þat þei wolde
and ho þat myȝte take hem toke
att hire owene wille wiþ oute
eny chalanginge ¶ And after war
de come þe Edmounde kinge
Edwardes broþer a curteis knyght
and a gentil of renoun: and þe
Erle of Cornewaile. and the
Erl of Gloucestre and after hem
come þe Erl of Penbrok and
þe Erl of Garenne and eche
of hem by hem self ladde in
hire hande an hundred knyghtis
gayliche disgysede in hire ar
mes ¶ And whanne þei were
lighte of hire hors and lete he
gon whider þat hem likede
and who þat myzte hem take
haue hem stille wiþ out eny
lette. And whanne al þis was
done king Edwarde dede

his diligence and his mizte
for to amende þe reaume and
redresse þe wronges in þe beste
maner þat he mighte to þe ho
nour of god and holy chirche
and to mayntene his honour
and to amende þe noyaunce
of þe comune peple. How
ydoyne þat was lewelyns
doughter of Wales prince and
Aymer þat was þe Erlis broþer
of Mountfort were takene in
þe see. Capitulo centesimo lx ii^mo.

The fyfte zere after warde
þat king Edwarde
was corouned lewelyn
prince of Wales sente unto ffraunce
to þe Erl Mountfort þat þorugh
conceile of his frendes þe Erl
schulde wedde his doughter:
and þe Erl þo avisede him uppon
þis þing. and sente azen to
lewelyn and saide þat he wolde
sende after his doughter. and so
he sente Aymer his broþer after
þe damysel. and lewelyn array
ede schippis for his doughter and
for þe Aymer and for his fair
companye þat schulde wende
wiþ hire and þis lewelyn dede
grete wronge for hit was cove
naunt þat he schulde zeve his
doughter to no manere man wiþ
oute conceile and consente
of king Edwarde. And so
hit felle þat a burgeys of Bristo
we come in þe see wiþ whyme
lade: and mette hem and hem
toke with myzte and power and
anon þe burgeys sente hem to
þe kinge. And whenne lewe
lyn herde þis tydinge he was
wonder wroþe and also sorow
ful and gan þo for to werre uppon
kinge Edwarde and dede mu
che harme unto þe Englisshe
men and bete adoun þe kinges
castell and bigan faste to distroye
king Edwardes landes.

And whenne tydinge come un
to king Edwarde of þis þinge
he wente in to Wales and so
muche he dede þorugh goddis grace
and his grete power þat he dreof
lewelyn unto muche meschief
þat he fley alle maner þinge þe
and come and zelde him to king
Edwarde and zaf him fifty
þousande marc of silver for to
have pees and toke þe damysel
and his al his heritage and
made an obligacion to kinge
Edwarde to come to his parlement
.ij. tymes of þe zere. And in
þe secunde zere after þat kinge
Edwarde was corounede he hel
de a generalle parlement att West
mynster and þere he made the
statutes for defaute of lawe by
comune assent of alle his

Baronage and att Estir next
comynge þe kinge wrote by
his lettre to lewelyn prince of
Walis þat he schulde come to
parlement for his lande and for
his holdinge in Walys as the
strengþe of þe lettre obligatorie
witnessede. ¶ þo lewelyn had
scorn and despite of þe kinges
comandement. and for þer werr
bigan azen for to werre vpon
king Edwarde and destroye
his landes. ¶ And þo kinge
Edwarde herde þis tidinge he
waxe wonder wroþ vnto lewe
lyn and in hast assemblede his
peple and wente him to warde
Walys and werrede so vpon
lewelyn þe prince til þat he bro
zte him in muche sorwe and
disese. ¶ And lewelyn sawe
þat his defence mizte nouzt
him availe and come azen &
zelde him to þe kinges grace
and cryede him mercie and longe
tyme knelede bifore þe kinges
feete. ¶ þe king had of him
pitee and comaundede him for
to arise and for his mekenes
forzaf him his wraþ. and to
him saide. þat yf he toke ony
þing emprise azen him anoþer ty
me þat he wolde destroye
him for euermore. ¶ Dauid þat
was lewelynnis broþer þat same
tyme duellede wiþ þe kinge Ed
warde and was a fell man &
a sotel and envyous and fers
castinge and muche tresoun
wrouzte. and euermore helde him
stille for to wite and aspie the
kinges wille. and euermore ma
de good semblaunt and semed
so trewe þat no man mizte
perceyue his falsnesse. ¶ How
lewelyn þorouz excitinge of Da
uid his broþer werrede azen vp
on king Edwarde. ca°. c.mo lxiij.

It was nouzt longe
after þat time þat kinge
Edwarde ne zaf to Da
uid þat was lewelynnis broþer
þe lordeschipe of Hodeshm̄ and
made him a knyzt and so mu
che honour dede he neuere after
to no man of Walys. for suche
sum of him. ¶ King Edwarde
helde his parlement att london
whenne he had done in Walys
al þat he wolde. and chaungede
his moneye þat þo was foule
cotte and roundede wherfore
þe comune peple playnede he
wonder sore. so þat þe king
lete enquere of hem þat suche
trespace deden. and in certeyn were
attaynt of suche manere false
nesse wherfore somme were
hongede and somme were dra
we and afterwarde hongede

And aftirwarde þe king ordey-
nede þat þe sterlinge halfpenye
and ferthinge schulde gon þo-
rug oute his londe. and comaunded
þat no man fro þat day aftirwar-
de ȝaf ne feffede hous of rely-
gioun wiþ londe ne tenement
wiþ oute special leue of þe king
and he þat dede hit schulde ben
punysched att þe kinges wille
and þe ȝifte schulde ben for nouȝt.
And hit was nouȝt longe aftir
þat lewelyn prince of walys
þorug tisement of Dauid his bro-
ther and by boþe her consente
þei þouȝte disherite þe kinge
Edwarde in as muche as they
myȝte. so þat þorug hem boþe
þe kinges pees was broken.
And whenne king Edwarde
herde þis. anon he sente his ba-
rouns into Northumberlande
and þe Marcheris also þat they
schulde gon and take her viage
vppon þe tratours lewelyn and
Dauid. ¶ And wonder harde
was for to werre þo. for hit is
wynter in walys whenne in oþer
cuntrees hit is somer. and
lewelyn lete ordeine and wel
arraye and vitaille his good
castel of Snawdoun and was
þerinne an huge nombre of
peple and plentee of vitailles
so þat king Edwarde wiste
nouȝt wher for to cumme.
And whenne þe kinges men
hit perceyuede and also þe prince
of walys. þey lete come in þe
See barges and botes and grete
plankes as menye as þei miȝte
ordeyne and haue for to gon to
þe forsaide castel of Snawdoune
wiþ men on fote and eke on
hors. but þe walsche men had
so muche peple and were so
stronge. þat þei driuen þe Englis-
sche men aȝen. so þat þer was
so muche presse of peple att þe
turnynge aȝen þat þe charge &
þe berthene of hem made the
barges and botis synke and þer
was drenchede ful menye a
good knyght. þat is to seyn Sire
Roger of Clifforde. Sire William of
Lyndeseye þat was Sire Iohnes
sone fitz Robert. and Sire Richarde
Tanny and an huge nombre of
oþer folke and alle was þorug
her owene folye. for if þei had
y had good aspies þei had nouȝt
ben harmede. ¶ Whenne king
Edwarde herde telle þat his
peple was so drenchede he
made sorowe ynow. ¶ But þo
come Sire Iohn of Vessye fram
þe king of Aragoun and brouȝte
wiþ him muche folke of Bach-
lers and of Gascoignes and wiþ
Soudiours and Awelling wit

þe kyng and vndirfonge of his
wages and wiþ him were wiþ
holde: and noble men þt were
for to fighte: and brenneden ma
nye townes and quelde myche
peple of Walsshe men alle þat
þei mizte take ¶ And also þe
Walsshe with þeire strengþe and mighte
made assaute to þe castell of
Hawardon and gate the castell
And whenne Dauid þe princes broþer
herde þis tydinges: he ordeyned
him to flighte ¶ And lewelyn þe
prince saide þat his broþer Dauid
was flowen and ouer was a ba
sshede for he had no power þis
his were for to mayntene./
¶ And as lewelyn gan for to flee
and wende wel for to haue sta
pede away But on þe morowe
Sir Roger mortimer mette with
him onliche wiþ x knyztis and
sette him rounde aboute and
to him wente and smote of
his heede and presentede him
vnto þe king Edwarde and in
this manere þe prince of Walys
was taken: and his heuede smi
ten of: and alle his heires disheri
tede for euermore þoruz rigt
ful dome of þe lordes of the
reaume. ¶ How Dauid that
was lewelyns broþer prince
of Walys was put to the deþ
Cap° Centesimo lxiiij°

Dauid þat was þe princes
broþer of Walys þoruz pride
wende haue ben prince
of Walys after his broþeris deth
And vpon þat he sente after
Walsshe men to his parlement
att Dynebagge and sotiliche
made Walys arise azens the
king and bigan to meue werre
azen þe kinge and dede alle
þe sorowe and dispite þat he
mighte by his power ¶ When
king Edwarde herde of þis þing
he ordeynede men to pursue
vppon him: and Dauid ferseliche
him defendede til þat he come
to þe toun of Seint Morice &
þere was Dauid take as he fley
and ladde to þe kinge and þe
king comaundede þat he shulde
ben honged and drawe and
smyte of his heuede & quarter
him and sende his heuede to
london. And þe foure quarters
sende to þe foure townes chef
of Walys. for þey shulde take
ensample and þe of ben ware.
And afterwarde king Edwarde
lete crie his pees þoruz out
alle Walys and seisede alle
þe londe into his hande and
alle þe grete lordes of Walys
þat were lefte alyue come þo
to do feaute and homage vn
to þe king as to her kinde lorde.

And þo lete kyng Edwarde
amende þe lawes of Walys
þat were defectif. ¶ And aftir
he sente vn to alle þe lordes
of Walys by his lettre patent.
þei schulde come alle to his
parlement and whanne they
were comyn þe kyng saide to
hem ful curteisly lordynges
ȝe beþ welcome. and me bihoueþ
nowe ȝoure counsaile and ȝoure
helpe for to wende in to Gas
coigne for to amende þe tres
passe þat to me þere was done
whanne þat y was þere. and
for to tretete of pees bitwe
ne þe king of Aragoun. And
þe prince of Morrey. ¶ And alle
þe kingis liege men erlis and
barouns consentede and gran
tede þerto. and þo wente the
king in to Gascoigne and lete
amende þe trespace þat him
was done in Gascoigne and
of þe debate þat was bitwene
þe king of Arogon and the
prince of Morrea he cessede. &
made hem accordede. ¶ And
while þe good king Edwarde
and Alianore his quene were
in Gascoigne. þe good erl of
Cornewaile was made war
deyne of Engelonde til þat
king Edwarde come aȝen.
And þo enquerede he of his
traitouris þat comettede false
nesse aȝens him. and eche of
hem alle vnderfenge hire
dome aftir þat þei had deserued
But in þe mene tyme while
þat king Edwarde was by
ȝonde þe see to done hem for
to make amendes þat aȝens
him had trespassede. a false
þef & traitour. þat me callede
Rys ap Meredok bigan for
to make werre aȝens þe king
Edwarde and þat was for
enchesoun of Sire Payn Tip
toft wrongfully greuede &
dissesed þe forsaide Rys ap
Meredok. ¶ And whanne king
Edwarde herde alle þis he
sente by his lettres to Rys ap
Meredok. þat he schulde bigynne
for to make no werres but þat
he schulde be in pees for his
loue and whanne þat he com
aȝen in to Engelonde he wol
de vnder take þe querelle and
wolde done amende al that
was misdone. ¶ þe forsaide
Rys ap Meredok dispisede the
kingis comandement & praied
nouȝt for to done alle þe profre
þat he myȝte to þe kinge men
of Engelonde. but anon aftir
he was taken and ladde to
ȝorke and þere he was drawe
& honged for his felonye. &c.

Off þe redressinge þat kinge
Edwarde made of his iustices
and of his clerkys þat thay
had done for her falsenes &
how he drawe þe Iewes out
of Engelonde for her vsure
and her mysbileue capitulo
centesimo octogesimo quinto.

Whanne king Edwar
de had duellede iij.
zer in Gascoigne wil
come to him for to wende azen
into Engelonde. and þo he come
azen he fonde so menye pleyn
tes made to him of his iustices
and of his clerkys þat had done
so menye wronges and false
nesse: þat wonder it was for
to here. And for which false
nes: Sir Thomas of Weylonde
þe kinges iustice for whole En
gelonde att þe tour of london
for falsenesse þat men putt vpo
him wher of he was teinte &
provede false. And anon after
whanne þe king had done his
wil of þe iustices. þo lete he
enquere and espie how þe Iewes
destroyede and bygilede his
peple þorw her synne of false
nesse and of vsure. and lete
ordeyne a prive plement amon
ge his lordes. and þei ordeyne
de among ham. þat alle the
Iewes schulde voide Engelonde
of her misbileue and also for
her false vsure þat þei deden
vn to cristen men. And for to
spede and make an ende of þis
þing al þe comunete of Enge
londe zeue to þe king þe vifte
peny of all her goodes mevable
and so were þe Iewes driuen
out of Engelonde and þe wen
te þe Iewes into ffraunce and
þe duellede þorw leue of king
philipp and þo was king of
ffraunce.

How king Edwarde
was chosede in al þe londe of
Scotlande þorw consente and
graunte of alle þe lordes of Scot
lande cap. C.mo octogesimo vjto.

Hit was nought longe
after þat alisaundre
king of Scotlande was
dede. and Dauid Erle of Hun
tyngton þat was þe kinges broþer
of Scotlande azede and clay
mede þe kingdome of Scotlan
de for encheson þat he was
rightful heir. But menye
grete lordes of Scotlande sai
den nay. wherfore grete de
bate aros bitwene ham and
her frendes. for as miche þat
þei wolde nought consente
to his coronacion. and þe mene
tyme þe forsaide Dauid deide.
And so hit bifel þat. þat same
Dauid had þre douztres þat

worthiliche were mariede þe
ferste doughter was mariede
to Baillol þe secunde to Brus
þe þridde to Hastinges ¶ And
þe forsaide Baillol and Brus
chalangede þe londe of Scotlon
de and grete debate and strif
aros bitwene hem þre for en
chesoun þat eche of hem wolde
haue be king ¶ And whenne
þe lordes of Scotlande sawe
þe debate bitwene hem þre þei
come to king Edwarde of Enge
londe and seisede him in alle
þe lande of Scotlande as hire
chief lorde ¶ And whenne
þe king was seisede of þe lordes
of Scotlande þe forsaide Bail
lol Brus and Hastinges come
to þe kingis court and axede
of þe king whiche of hem schul
de be king of Scotlande ¶ And
þe king Edwarde þat was ful
gentil and trewe lete enquere
by þe cronicles of Scotlande
and of þe grete lordes of Scot
lande whiche of hem was þe
eldest blode and hit was foun
de þat Baillol was eldest &
þat þe king of Scotlande schul
de halde of þe kyng of Enge
londe and done him feaute
and homage ¶ And after þis
was done Baillol wente into
Scotlande and þer was crouned
king of Scotlande and þe same
tyme was vppon þe see strife
werre bitwene þe Englisshe men
and þe Normans but vppon a
tyme þe Normans arryuede alle
att Douere and þer þei martyrede
an holy man þat me callede
seint Thomas of Douere and
afterwarde were þe Normans
quelde þat þer scapede of hem
nat on ¶ And sone after kinge
Edwarde schulde lese þe duchee
of Gascoigne þorugh king Philipp
of Fraunce þorugh false castinge
of þe dossepers of þe lande where
fore sir Edmunde þat was king
Edwardus broþer ȝaf vp his
homage vnto þe king of Fraunce
and in þat tyme þe clergie of
Engelonde grauntede to kinge
Edwarde halfendel of holye
cherche goodes in helpinge for
to recouere his lande aȝen in
Gascoigne ¶ And þe kinge sent
þeder a noble companye of his
bachilers and him self wolde
haue wente to Portesmouthe
but he was lette þorugh on Mad
dok of Walys þat had seisede
þe castell of Swandon into his
hande and for þat enchesoun
þe king turnede aȝen into Wa
lys att Estermasse ¶ And for
enchesoun þat þe noble lordes
of Engelonde þat were sente

into Gascoigne had no comfort of hire lord þe king Edwarde þat were take of sire Charles of Fraunce þat is to seyn. sire John of Britaigne sire Robert Typtot. sire Rauf Tanny. sire Hughe Bardolf. & sire Adam of Creting and yit att Ascensioun was Maddok take in Wales an another þat me callede Morgan. and þey were sente to þe toure of London and þey were behedede.

How sire John of Baillol king of Scotlande wiþsaide his homage and of sire Thomas Turbevile &c. mo octogesimo vijmo

And whanne þe John Baillol kyng of Scotlande understode þat king Edwarde was werrede in Gascoigne to wham þe reaume of Scotlande was delyuerede. falsliche þe azens his oth wiþsaide his homage þorȝ parlynge of his folke. and sente to þe court of Rome þorȝ a false suggestioun to ben assoillede of þat oth þat he swore unto þe king of Engelonde and so he was assollede by her. Þis chosen þei of Scotlande dosseperes for to bynime Edwarde his rightes and in þat tyme come ij cardinals fro þe court of Rome fram þe pope Celestine for to trete of acorde bitwene þe king of Fraunce and þe king of Engelonde. And as þe ij cardinalis speken of acorde Thomas Turbeuile þat was taken att Reyms made feaute and homage to þe Wardeyne of Parys and to him putt his ij sones in hostage for þat he þouzte gon into Engelonde for to aspie the cuntre and telle hem whenne he come into Engelonde þat he had broken þe kinges prison of Fraunce by nyghte. and saide þat he wolde done þat alle Englisshe men and Walsshe men shulde abowe to the king of Fraunce and his þing for to bringe to þe ende he swore and upon his couenantes were made bitwene he and þat he shulde haue by ȝere an hundred poundes worth of londe to bringe his þing to þe ende. Þis false traitour nome his leue and wente þennes and come into Engelonde unto þe king and saide þat he was broken out of prison and þat he had putt him in suche pile for his loue. wherfore þe kinge conþe him muche þanke and

ful glad was of his comynge.
And þe false þef Tharto fro þat
day aspyede al þe doynge of
þe kinge and also his counsaile
for þe king louede him wel &
was wiþ him ful pryuee.
But a clerke of Engelonde þat
was in þe kinges hous of ffraunce
herde of þis tresoun and of þe
falsenesse and wrote to anoþer
clerke þat was duellinge wiþ
þe king of Engelonde al hou
Thomas Turberuyle had don
his fals couetinge and alle
þe counsaile of Engelonde
was write for to haue sente
vn to þe king of ffraunce and
þoruȝ þo forsaide lettres þat þe
clerk had sent fro fraunce hit
was founde vppon him. Wher
fore he was lad to londoun &
drawen and honged þere for
his tresoun: and his ij sones
þat he had put in ffraunce for
hostages were þo byheuede.

Off þe conquest of Berewike.
ao. cc. octogesimo octauo.

Whenne þo ij. cardina
les were wente aȝen
in to ffraunce for to tret
taue of þe pees att Cambray
þe king caute þoþer of his
erles and barouns þat is to
seyn. sir Edmunde his broþer
erl of lancastre and of leycestre.
sire Henry lacy erl of Nicholes
and William vessy a baroun of
oþer barounes a boute .xiiij. of
þe best and wysest of Engelon
de. and in þe same tyme þe king
Edwarde nome his viage to Scot
lande for to werre vppon John
Balliol king of Scotlande.
And sir Robert Roos of Berwyk
fley fro þe englisshe men & wente
to þe Scottis. and king Edwarde
wente him to warde Berwyke &
bysaged þe toun and þo þat were
wiþ inne manliche hem defen
ded and Scottes and brende two
of king Edwardis schippis and
saide in despite and in scornes of
him. Wende king Edwarde wiþ
his longe schankes. haue gate
Berwyke alone vnthankes
gas pikes him: and whenne he
hav gas dikes him. Whenne
king Edwarde herde þis scorn
anon þoruȝ his myȝtinesse he pas
sede ouer þe diches and assailled
þe toun and come to þe ȝattis &
gate and conquerede þe toun
and þoruȝ his grace þo þer
quelde xx þousandes and .vij.
hundred of Scottis and kinge
Edwarde loste of his men noma
of renoun saue sir Richarde of
Cornewaile and him quelde
a flemmynge out of þe rede
halle with a quarell as the

forsaide Richarde dede of his helme and comaundede hem for to zelde ham and putt hem to þe kinges grace: and the Scottes wolde nouzt wherfore þat halle was brent and caste adoun and alle þo þat were wiþinne were brenned. And king Edwarde lost no mo men att þat viage of simple state but xxviij englisshe men and þe wardeyn of þe castel zaf vp þe keyes wiþoute eny assaute and þe was take Sir William Douglas and Sir Eumounde ffrisell and þe erle þat hem zelde him to þe pees but Sir Jughm of Vmfrevil and Robert of Brus þat were wiþ þe king Edwarde forsoke þe king Edwarde and helde wiþ þe Scottis and afterwarde þei were take and putt into prisoun and afterwarde þe king forzaf hem her trespas and delyuerde hem out of prisoun and þo lete king Edwarde crie in Berwike wiþ wallis and wiþ diches. And afterwarde Robert Rous wente to Tyndale and sette Hoxebrigge afire and Exelham and Lanrestoke and quelde and robbed þe folke of þe cuntre and afterwarde he wente his peynes vn to Donbarre. And þe ferste Wednysday of Marche þe king sente þe Erl of Garenne Sir Hughe Pers and Sir Hughe Spencer wiþ a fair compa nye for to bisege þe castell: but on þat me callede Sire Richarde Syward a traitour a fals man þat ymaginede for to begile þe englissh men: and sente to þe Englisshe men hem for to desyre and saide þat he wolde zelde to him þe castell yf þat þei wolde graunte hem viij dayes of respite þat he myzte sende and telle to Sire John Bailloll king of Scotlande how þat his men ferde as they were in þe castell and sende him worde yf þat he nolde remeue þe sege of þe englisshe men þat þei wolde zelde þe castell to Englisshe men. The messangers come to Sir John Bailloll king of Scotlande þere þat he was wiþ his ost and his message tolde him. And Sire John þo nome his ost and come in þe morowe erly towarde þe castell and Sir Richarde Syward saw him come þat was maister of þe compaignie and keper of the castell and saide vnto þe Englisshe men O god now quoþ he here of folke a faire compa nie and wel apparaillede þat wil gon azens hem and wiþ hem to mete and hem assaille. And Sir Hughe þe Spencer saw

þe falsenesse of him

þe falsenesse of him and the
tresoun and saide to him: o traytour
take and mede ȝoure falsenesse
schal nouȝt availe ȝow. and
Hugh þe Spenser commaunded a
non for to bynde him. and in al
haste wente aȝens here enemyes
and quelde of þe Scottis xxij
þousande. for þe Scottis hadde
þat tyme no man wiþ hem of
renoun saf Sire Patrik Graham
þat manliche fauȝte and longe
tyme. and at þe laste he was
quelde. and þo saide þe Englissh
men in repref of þe Scottis.

Thus scaterande Scottis holde y
for Scottis of wrenchis unwarre
erly in a morwynge in an euel
tymynge wente ȝe fro Dunbarre.

Whenne þo þat were in þe cas
tell sawe þe Discumfiture: þei
ȝolden þe castel vnto þe Englis
she men and bounden here bo
dyes. londes and castellis to þe
kinge Edwarde and so þei were
take þere in þe castell. iij Erlis
and vij Barouns and xxviij knyȝtes
and xj clerkes and vij Pycar
des and alle were presentede vn
to king Edwarde and he sente
hem to þe tour of London to ben
kepte þere.

How king Edwarde
of his grete grace delyuered aȝen
þe Scottis out of prisoun þat were
cheuetaynes of þe lande and þei
drowe hem þo to þe Frensche men
þorouȝ William Waleys. Capitulo
Centesimo octogesimo nono.

Whenne king Edwarde
had made þo an ende
of þe werre and taken
þe cheuetaines of Scotlande
þo come Sire John Baillol and
ȝelde him vnto king Edwarde
and putt him in his grace. and
he was lad to London. and whenne
king Edwarde was come þeder
þei were brouȝte byfore him. and
þe king axede of hem how þei
wolde make amendes of þat
trespas and lost þat þei hadde do
ne him. and þei putt hem in his
mercye. Lordinges quod the
king I wil nouȝt ȝour landes
ne non of ȝoure goodes. but I wil
þat ȝe make to me an oth vpon
goddes body for to ben trewe to
me. and neuer after þis tyme a
ȝens me bere armes. and alle þei
consentede to þe kinges wille
and swore vppon goddis body.
þat is to seyn Sire John of Comyn
and þe erl of Strattherne. the
erl of Carryk. and also iiij bisshop
pis vndertoke for alle þe clergie
and so þe king delyuered hem
and ȝaf hem saf conduit to
wende into here owene lande.
And hit was nouȝt longe after
warde þat þei ne risen aȝen.

kyng Edwarde for enchesoun
þat þey wiste wel þat kyng
Edwardis folke was take in
Gascoigne as bifore is sayde
but Sir John Baillol kinge of
Scotlande wiste wel þat his
lande schulde haue sorwe and
schame for hire falsenesse and
in haste wente him ouer þe see
to his owene landes and þere
helde him and come neuer mor
azen. Wherfore þe scottis cho
sen to hire kinge William Wal
leys a ribaude an harlot come
vp of nouzt and muche harme
dede to þe Englisshe men.
And king Edwarde þouzte how
he myzte haue delyueraunce of
his peple þat wer take in
Gascoigne and in haste wente
ouer þe see into fflaundres
for to werre vpon þe king of
ffraunce and þe erl of fflaundres
vnderfeng him wiþ muchel
honour and grauntede him alle
his landes att his owene wille.
And whanne þe king of fraunce
herde telle þat þe king of
Engelonde was arryuede in
fflaundres and come wiþ an
huge power him for to distroye
he p[re]yede him of trewes for
ij zere so þat Englisshe mar
chauntis and also frensshe mizt
gon saufliche in boþe sides.

þe king Edwarde grauntede hit
so þat he moste haue his men
out of p[ri]soun þat were in Gas
coigne. and þe king of fraunce
graunttede anon. and so they
were delyuerede. And sone [after] þe
same tyme þe Scottis sente
by þe bisshop of Seint Andrews
in to ffraunce to þe king and to
Sir Charlis his broþer þat Sire
Charlis schulde come wiþ his
power and þei of Scotlande
wolde come wiþ hire and so
þei schulde gon in to Engelonde
þat londe for to destroye fram
Scotlande til þat þei come to
Kent and þe Scottis ryste min
che vpon þe frensshe men. but
of þat þing þey had no maner
graunte. And noþeles þe scottis
bygonne to robbe and quelle
in Northumbirlande and dede
muche harme. **How William
Waleys lete slee Sire Hughe of
Cressingham and of þe bataile
of Fonkyrke. A° m° CC° ottogesimo x^mo.**
Whenne þis tidinge was
come to king Edwarde
þat William Waleys
had gaderynede suche a stronge
power and þat alle Scotlande
to him was entendaunt and
redy to quelle englisshe men
and destroye þe lande. he was
sore annoyede. and sente anon

by letters to þe erl of Garenn
and to Sr Henry P[er]cy and to Sr
William latomer. And to Sr Hugh
of Cressingham his tresorer þat
þei schulde take power and
wende in to Northumbirlande
and so forþ in to Scotlande for
to kepe þe cuntre. And when
William Waleys herde of his
comynge he gan for to flee and
þe Englisshe men hym folowed
and drof him til þat he come
to Strivelyn and þere he helde
him in þe castel. And þe Wal
sshe men eu[er]y day him assaillede
and manacede and dede alle
þe dispite þat þei myghten.
So þat þe Englisshe men vpon
a tyme in a morwenynge wen
te out fram þe castell þe moun
taunce of x. mile and passede
ou[er] a brigge. And William Wa
leys come w[i]t[h] a stronge power
and drof hem abak. for þe En
glisshe men had azens him þo
no myghte. but fledde and þo
þat myzte take þe brigge sca
pede. But Sr Hugh þe kingis
tresorer þere was slayn & many
oþer also. wherfore was made
muche sorowe. þo had kinge
Edwarde sped alle his nedes
in Flaundres. and was come
azen in to Engelonde and in
haste nome his way towarde

Scotlande. and come þeder
att Assencioun and also that
he fonde he sette on fir and
brende. But þe pore peple
of Scotlande come to him wo
der prike and p[ra]yede him for
goddis loue þat he wolde on
hem haue mercye and pitee.
Wherfore þe king þo comaun
ded þat no man schulde done
harme to hem þat were zol
den to him. ne to no man of
ordre ne to non hous of religio
ne no man chirche. But lete
te assaye al þat he myzte. wher
þat he myzte fynde eny of his
enemyes. þo come a spie to þe
king and tolde where þe Scottis
were assemblede for to abide
bataille. and on seint Marie
Maudeleyn day þe king come
to Fonkyrk. and zaf bataille
to þe Scottis. and att þat ba
taile was quelde of Scottis
xxxij. þousande. and of En
glisshe men but xxviij. and
no mo. of þe whiche was a
worthy knyght slayn þat was
a knyght an hospiteler þat me
callede Frere Bryan Jay. for
whanne William Waleys fley
fram þe bataille þat same frer
Bryan him pursuede fersliche
and as his hors ran hit stepte
in to a mers of mareys vp to

þe body and William Waleys
turnede þo azen and þe querelde
þe forsaide Brian and þat was
muche harme ¶ And while
king Edwarde wente þorugh
Scotlande for to enquere yf he
myzte fynde any of his enemyes
and in þat lande he duellede
as longe as him lykede and þe-
re was non enemy þat durste hym
abide ¶ And sone afterwarde
kinge Edwarde wente to South-
hampton for he wolde nouzt abide
in Scotlande in wynter sesoun
for esement of his peple ¶ And
whenne he come to london he
lete amende menye misdedes
þat were done azens his pees
and his lawe while þat he
was in fflaundres ¶ Off the
laste mariage of king Edwarde
and how he wente þe þridde
tyme in to Scotlande Capitulo
centesimo octogesimo undecimo.

And afterwarde hit was
ordeynede þorugh þe court
of Rome þat king Ed-
warde schulde wedde dame Mar-
garete king philippis suster of
ffraunce and þe erchebisshop Robert
of Wynchestre spousede hem to-
gedre þorugh whiche mariage
pees was made by twene king
Edwarde of Engelonde & king
Philip of ffraunce ¶ Kinge
Edwarde wente þo þe þridde
tyme into Scotlande and wiþ-
inne þe ferste zere he had conque-
rede þe lande so þat þere ne
laste nouzt on þat ne come unto
his mercy ¶ Saf þo þat were in þe
castell of Estrevelyn þat was
wel vitaillede and astorede for
vij zere ¶ How þe castel of Estre-
velyn was bisegede Ca° C° lx° xij°

Kyng Edwarde come
wiþ an huge power to
þe castel of Estrevelyn
and bysegede þe castel but hit
litel avaylede for he myzte do-
ne þe Scottis non harme for þe
castel was so stronge and wel
kepte ¶ And king Edwarde
sawe þat and þouzte him upon
a queyntise and lete make a-
noun þe two peir golowys by-
fore þe toun of þe castell and
made his oth þat as many as
were in þe castel were he erl
or baroun and he were take wiþ
strengthe but if he wolde the
rather him zelde he schulde ben
hongede upon þe golowes.
¶ And whenne þo þat were in
þe castel herde þis þey come &
zelde hem alle to þe kinges mercy
and grace and þe king forzaf
hem al his male talent and
þo were alle the grete lordes
of Scotlande sworn to kinge

Edwarde þat þei schulde come
to london to eny parlement and
schulde stonde to his ordinance.

How Troillebastoun was firste
ordeynede anno domini Mo. CCCo. lx. xiiio.

The king Edwarde wen
te þennes to london &
wende haue had reste
and pees of his werre: with
whiche werre he was occupied
xx zere þat is to seyn in walys
in Gascoigne and in Scotlande
and þouzte how he myzte recouere
his tresour þat he had spendid
aboute his werres. and lete enquere
þorz þe reaume of alle mysta
kinges and wronges done þorz
misdoers in Engelonde of alle þe
tyme þat he had ben oute of his
reaume þat me callith Troille
baston and ordeinede it to justices
and in þis manere þe king recouered
tresour þo wiþ oute noumbre.
And his encheson was for he
had nouzt for to haue wente
in to þe holy lande for to werre
vppon goddes enemyes for enche
soun þat he was greuede longe
time bifore. and neþeles that
lawe þat he had ordeynede dede
muche good þorz alle Engelon
de to hem þat were misbode:
for þo þat trespassede were wel
chastisede and afterwarde the
mekere and þe bettre. and þe pore
comunes were in more reste &
pees. And þe same tyme
king Edwarde emprisonede his
owene sone Edwarde for encheson
þat water of langetoun
bisshop of chestre þat was the
kinges tresorer had made vppon
him a pleynte and saide þat þe
forsaide Edwarde þorz coun
saile and procurement of on Piers
of Gauastoun a squyer of Gas
coigne had broke þe parkes of
þe forsaide Bisshop and þe for
saide Piers counsellede and
ladde þe same Edwarde the
kinges sone. and for this cause
king Edwarde exilede his
sone oute of Engelonde for euer
more. Off þe deth of william
waleys þe false traitour capitulo
centesimo lxxxiiiio.

And whenne þis good
king Edwarde hadde
his enemyes ouercome
in walys Gascoigne and
in Scotlande and destroyede
his traitours but onliche þat
ribaude william waleys þat
neuer to þe king wolde him
zelde. and att þe laste in þe toun
of Seint Dominik in þe zere
of king Edwardus regne xxxiii
zer þat false traitour was take
and presentede to þe king. and þe
king wolde nouzt seen him.

but sente him to London to vn
derfonge his Iugement and
in Seint Bartholomewes eve he
was honged and drawe and
his hede smyten of and his
bowellis take out of his body
and brent and his body quar
terde and sente to foure þe beste
townes of Scotlande and his
hede sette vpon a spere and
sette vpon London brigge in
ensample þat þe Scottis schul
de haue in mynde for to bere
ham amys azens her liege lord
eftesonnes. ¶ How þe Scottis com
to king Edwarde for to amen
de her trespas þat þei had done
azens him. ca° C^mo lxxv^to

And att anghele masse
þo next comynge king
Edwarde helde his par
lement att Westmynster. and
þider come þe Scottis þat is
to seyn þe bisshop of seint An
drew. Robert þe Brus erle of
Karrik. Symounde þe fressell
John þe erl of Athell and þei
were acorded to þe king and
bounde and by oth sworn. þat
after warde if eny of hem mis
bere hem azens king Edward
þat þei schulde ben disherited
for euer more. and whene þis
pees was þus made þei nom
her leue priueliche and wente

home in to her cuntre ¶ How
Robert þe Brus chalaungede Scot
lande cap° C^mo lxxvi^to

And after þis Robert þe
Brus erl of Carrik sent
by his lettre to þe erlis
and barouns of Scotlande þat
þei schulde come to hym to Stone
in þe morne after þe concepcion
of oure lady for here nedes of
þe lande and þe lordes come
att þe day assignede ¶ And att
þe same day sire Robert þe Brus
seide. faire lordes ful wel ze
weten þat in my persone dwelleth
þe right of þe reame of Scot
lande and as ze weten wel
as rightful heir. but þat oure John
Baillol þat was oure king vo
hath forsake and also lefte his
lande ¶ And þourz hit so be þat
king Edwarde of Engelonde
wiþ wrongfull power hath
made me to him assente azens
my wille. yf þat ze wil graunte
þat y be king of Scotlande y
schal kepe zow azens king Ed
warde and azens alle maner
men ¶ And wiþ þat worde
þe abbot of Stone aros and by
fore hem alle saide. þat hit was
resoun for to helpe him and þe
lande to kepe and defende. &
þo saide in presence of hem alle
þat he wolde zeue him a ronsade

pounde for to mayntene þat lan-
de alle þe oþer grauntede þe lan-
de to him and wiþ hire power
him for to helpe and defende
king Edwarde of Engelonde
and saide þat Robert þe Brus
schulde be king of Scotlande.

How sir John of Comyn gayn-
saide þe crownynge of Sire Ro-
bert þe Brus. capitulo C.mo lx xvij.mo

Lordinges saide þe John
of Comyn þe which vppon
þe treuþe and þe oth
þat y made vnto king Edwar-
de of Engelonde. and as tou-
chinge my self y wil nouȝt bre-
ke myn oth for no man. and
as he wente fram þat compa-
nye att þat tyme wherfore
Robert þe Brus and alle þat to
him consentede were wonder
wroth and so manacede sire
John of Comyn. This ordeyned
þai among counsaile att Dounfres
to þe whiche come þe forsaide
sire John Comyn nought but
duellede .ij. mile fram Dun-
fres so þat he was wonede
for to sojourne and abide

How sire John Comyn was
traytourly quellede. capitulo C.mo lx xviij.

Whanne Robert þe Brus
wiste þat alle þe grete
of Scotlande were
come to Scone saf sire John
Comyn þat sojournede so nyȝ
Scone. he sente after him spec-
ialliche þat sire John Comyns
schulde come and speke wiþ hym
and vpon þat he sente after hym
sire John Comynes .ij. breþerne
and praiede him for to come &
speke wiþ him att þe grey freres
of Dunfres. and þat was þe
þorsday after Candelmasse day.
and sire John grauntede hem for
to wende wiþ hem. And when
he had herde masse he toke a
soppe and dranke and afterwar-
de he bystrode his palfray and
rode his way and so come to
Dunfres. and Robert þe Brus
sawe him come at a wyndowe
as he was in his chambre and
so made joye ynowe and come
aȝens him and collede him a-
boute þe necke and made wiþ
him good semblaunt. And
whanne alle þe erles and barons
of Scotlande were present Robert
þe Brus spake and saide. sires
quod he ȝe witen wel anchesoun
of þis comynge and wherfore
hit is yf þat ȝe wil graunte þat
y mot be king of Scotlande as
riȝt heir of þe lande. and alle
þe lordes þat were þere saide wiþ
o voyce þat he schulde be crow-
nede king of Scotlande and
þat þei wolde him helpe and

maynteine a3enus alle mane
men on lyfe and for him yf it
were nede dye ¶ þe gentil
knyght þo John of Comyne
answerde and saide: certis nen
for me ne for to haue of mo
as muche helpe as þe value of
a botoun: for þat oth þat y haue
made to king Edwarde of En
glonde y schal holde hit while
my lyf laste: and wiþ that
worde he wente fro þe compa
nye and wolde haue wente vp
on his palfray: and Robert þe
Bruys purswede him with a sharpe
swerde and bare him þorw þe
bodye. and þe John Comyn fel
doun vnto þe erthe ¶ But when
Roger þat was sire John Comyn
is broþer sawe þe falsenesse and
stert to þe Robert þe Bruys and
smote him wiþ a knyf but þe
false traytour was armed vnder
so þat þe strok my3t done hym
non harme: and so muche help
come aboute þe Robert þe Bruys
so þat Roger Comyn was þere
quelde and al to hewe into smal
le peces ¶ And Robert þe Bruys
turnede a3en þere þat sire John
Comyn þe noble baroun laye
wounded and turnede towarde
his dep bisides þe hye aut in
þe chirche of þe gray freres &
saide vnto þe John Comyn. ..

traytour þou schalt be dede and
neuer aftir lette myn auaunce
ment. and schok his swerde att
þe hye auter and smote him on
þe heued þat þe brayn felle
doun vppon þe grounde and þe
blood sterte an hey unto þe wallis
and 3itt in to þis day þat blood
is sene þere þat no water may was
she hit awey. and so deide þat
noble knyght in holy chirche.

How Robert þe Bruys was crow
nede and made king of Scotlan
de Capitulo centesimo lx xix^mo

And whenne þe traytour
Robert þe Bruys sawe þat
nomanne wolde lette
þo his coronacion. he comaunded
alle hem þat were of þo wer
schulde come vnto his crownyng
to seint Johnes toun in Scotlan
de ¶ And hit bifelle þat oure
lady day of Annunciacion the
bisshop of Glastone and the
bisshop of seint Andrew crouned
for kyng king Robert þe Bruys
in seint Johnes toun and made
him king and anon aftir he drof
out alle þe englisshe men of
Scotlande and þei fley and
come and playnede vn to king
Edwarde how Robert þe Bruys
had dryue hem out of þe londe
and disheritede hem ¶ How
king Edwarde dobbede att þe

Westmynster · xiiij score knyȝtis
Capitulum Centesimo iiij^xx iiij.
And whanne kyng Ed-
warde herde of þis
myschief he swore þat
he wolde þ^t of ben avengede &
saide þat alle þe traitours of
Scotlande shulde ben honged
and drawe and þat þei shulde
neuer be raunsomed ¶ And
kyng Edwarde þouȝte vpon þis
falsenesse þat þe Scottis hadde
done and sente after alle the
bachilrye of Englonde þ^t þey
shulde come to London att þe
whitsontide and he dubbid att
Westmynster fourtene score knyȝ-
tis ¶ Þis ordeynede him the
noble kyng Edwarde for to wen-
de vnto Scotlande to werre vp-
on Robert þe Brus and sente by-
fore him into Scotlande sire
Aymer þe Valaunce erl of Pen-
broke and sire Henry Percye Ba-
roun with a faire companye þat
pursuede þe Scottis and brende
townes and castell and after
warde come þe kyng him selfe
with erlis and barouns a faire
companye ¶ How Robert the
Brus was discomfitede in batayl
and how Symound Frisell was
[illegible] ¶ Capitulum · C^mo iiij^xx iiij
The friday
next bifore assumpci-
oun of oure lady kyng Edwarde
mette Robert Brus bisides
seint Johnes toun in Scotlan-
de and with his companye of
which companye kyng Edwar-
de quelde seuene þousande
whanne Robert þe Brus saw
þis myschief and gan to flee
and hidde him þat men myȝt
nouȝt finde him · but sire Symon
de Frisel pursuede him so sore
so þat he turnede aȝen and a-
bode bataille for he was a wor-
thy knyȝt and a bolde of bodye
and þe Englisshe men pursue-
de him euere more in eny side
and quelde þe stede þat sire
Symounde Frisel rode vpon &
þei toke him and lad him vnto
þe host ¶ And sire Symounde
bigan for to flatere and speke
faire and saide lordes y shal
ȝeue ȝow iiij · þousande mark
of siluer and myn hors and
myn harneys and al myn ar-
mure and bicome a beggar.
Þis answerde Theobaude of þe
venes þat was þe kinges ar-
cher · so god me so helpe hit
is for nouȝht þat þou spekest
for al þe golde of Englonde
y wolde þe nouȝt lete gon
with oute commaundement of
kyng Edwarde ¶ And tho
was he lad to þe kyng · and þe
kinge wolde nouȝt se him but

comaunded to lede him alway
to haue his dome at london
in oure ladyes eue Natiuite
he was honged and drawe and
his heuede smyten of and
honged azen wiþ chaynes of
yren vpon þe galowes. and
his heuede was sette vpon
london brigge vpon a spere.
and azens cristemasse þe body
was brende. for encheson þat
þe men þat kepte þe body by
nyzte sawe many deueles
rampande wiþ yren crokes
rennynge vpon þe galowes
and horribliche turmentede
þe body. and many þat hem
sawe anon after þei deide
for drede. or woxen mad. or so
re sikenesse þei hadde. ¶ And
in þat bataille was take the
bisshop of Glaston. þe bisshop
of Seint Andrew and þe Ab
bot of Scone alle armed wiþ
þer as men of armes as
false traitours and false
prelates azens here oth. and
þei were brouzte to þe king
and þe king sente hem to þe
pope of Rome þat he schulde
done wiþ what his wille
were ¶ How John erl of Athe
les was take and put to þe
deth. capitulo C^{mo} iiij^{xx} ij^{o}.

And at þat bataile fley
sire John erl of Atheles
wente into a chirche &
þere hid him for drede. but he
mizte haue þere no refute. For
encheson þat þe chirche was
entredited þorz a generall senten
ce and in þe same chirche he
was take ¶ And þis sire John
wende wel haue scaped fram
þe deth for encheson þat he
claymede kynred of king Ed
warde and þe king nolde no
lenger be taryede of his traitours
and sente him to london in haste
and þere he was hongede and
his heuede smeten of and his
body brende alle to asshes.
But att þe prayer of þe quene
Margarete for encheson. þat
he claymede of king Edwarde
kynrede his drawinge forzaue
him was ¶ How John þat was
William Waleys broþer was put
to þe deþ. ca. C^{mo} iiij^{xx} iij^{o}.

Whenne þe grettest mai
stres of Scotlande were
þus done to euel deth
and schende for here falsenesse
John þat William Waleys
broþer was take and done to
þe deth as sire John erl of
Atheles was ¶ How Robert
þe Brus fley fram Scotlande in
to Norweye. ca. C^{mo} iiij^{xx} iiij^{o}.

And att þat same tyme
was Robert þe Brus
muche hatede amonge
þe peple of Scotlande so he
wiste nouzt what for to done
and for to hide him he wente
in to Norweye to þe king þat
had spousede his sust' and þe
helde him ther alwey to haue.
And whanne Robert þe Brus
mizte nouzt be founde in Scot
lande. king Edwarde þe late
gaf his pees þorouz out all
þe lande and his were vsede
and his mynystres regnede þorou
out all þe lande. ¶ How king
Edwarde deide. C^o C. iiij^mo xx. vj^to.

Whanne kyng Edwarde
had abatede his ene
myes he turnede azen
Southwarde and a maladye
toke him att Burgh vp sande
in þe marche of Scotlande and
he wiste wel þat his deþ was
fallyng. and callede to him sire
Henry þe Lacy erl of Nicholle sire
Gy. erl of Warr' sire Aymer
Valance erl of Penbrok and sire
Robert of Clifforde baroun and
prayede hem vpon þe fayþ þat
to him owede þat þei schul
de make Edwarde of Carnary
uan king of Engelonde his sone
as rathe as þei myghte ¶ And
þat þei schulde nouzt suffre

Piers of Gaueston come azen
in to Engelonde for to make
his sone vse ryotte. and they
graunntede him with good wille
and þe king nome his sacramentz
of holy cherche as a good cristen
man schulde and deid in veray
repentaunce ¶ And whanne he
had ben king xxxv yere he deide
and was buryede att West
mynster wiþ muche solempnite
vpon whos soule god haue
mercye. ¶ Off Merlynes prophecies
þat were declarede of king Ed
warde þat was kyng Henries
sone. Capitulo C. iiij^mo xx. vj^to.

And of this king Edwar
de prophecied Merlyn &
callede him a Dragon
þe seconde king of þe vj laste
kinges þat schulde ben for to
regne in Engelonde and saide
þat he schulde be medlede wit
mercye and also wiþ sternesse
þat schulde kepe Engelonde fro
colde and fro hete. and þat he
schulde opene his mouth towar
de Walys. and þat he schulde
sette his o fote in Wyke and þat
he schulde closen wiþ Wallys
þat schulde done muche harme
to his seed and he saide soth
for þe good king Edwarde was
medelede wiþ mercy. and wiþ
fersnesse wiþ mercy azenus

his enemyes of Walys and
after of Scotlande wiþ fers
nesse whenne he putt hem to
þe deth for hire falsenesse and
tretcherie as þei hadde deserued
hit · and wel kepte he Enge
londe fram colde and hete sir
he kepte hit fram alle maner
enemys · þat ioune vppon hy
to done hym eny wronge ·
¶ And wel openede he his mouþ
þe towarde Walys and made
hit quake þorw þe hidour of
his mouþ · whenne he con
querede hit þorw dynte of
swerde · for þe prince lewelyn
and dauid his broþer lyes &
morgan were putt vn to the
deth for hire falsenesse and her
folye ¶ And he sette his o fote
in to Wyk and conquerde Ber
wyke att þe whiche conquest
were slayn · xxv · þousande &
more out take hem þat were
brente in þe reede halle · and
þe Walys þat he lete make
schal be nowed vn to his Reed
as men schulle here after in þe
lyf of Sir Edwarde of Car
narvan his sone ¶ And ȝitt
saide merlyn þat he schulde ma
ke ryuer renne in blood and
wiþ brayn and þat semede
wel in his werres þe þat he had
þe maistrie ¶ And ȝit merlyn
þat þer schulde come a peple
out of þe north west durynge
þe regne of þe forsaide dragon
þat schulde be lad by an elle
grehounde þat schulde þe dra
goun coroune king · þat afterwarde
schulde flee ouer þe see for
drede of þe dragoun wiþ out
comynge aȝen · and þat was
þmede be sire john Baillol þat
king Edwarde made for to ben
king of Scotlande þat falsliche
aros aȝens him · and after he
fledde in to his owene landes
of ffrance and neuere come aȝen
in to Scotlande for drede of king
Edwarde ¶ And ȝitt saide mer
lyn þat þe peple þat schulde
lede þe forsaide grehounde schul
de ben fadirles vntil a certayn
tyme and he saide soth ffor þe
peple of Scotlande grettliche
were disserde outh þat sire john
Baillol here king flei fro Scot
lande ¶ And ȝitt said merlyn
þat þe sonne schulde bycome
in his tyme as reed as eny blood
in tokenynge of grete mortali
te of deth of peple · and þat was
wel knowen whenne þe Scottis
were slayn ¶ And siþ saide
merlyn þat þilke dragoun
schulde norissche a fox þat schulde
meue grete werre aȝens him
þat schulde nouȝt in his tyme

ben ended. and þat semed wel
by Robert þe Brus þat kinge
Edwarde norysshede in his
chambre. þat siþenes stale a
way and menede grete werre
azeins him. Which werre was
nouzt ended in his tyme.
And afterwarde Merlyn tolde
þat þis dragoun schulde ben
holde þe beste body of alle þe
worlde. and he saide sooth. for
þe good king Edwarde was
þe worthyest knyght of alle
þe worlde in his tyme. And
zitt sayde Merlyn þat þe dragon
schulde dye in þe marche of
anoþer lande. and þat his lande
schulde be longe wiþ oute eny
good keper. and þat men schul
de wepe for his deth. fram
þe yle of Shepee vnto þe yle
of Marelle. wherfore allas
schulde ben hire comune songe
amonge peple faderles in þe
londe wastede and þat prophe
cie was knowe on al ful wel
for þe good king Edwarde dey
de att Burghe vp Sandes þat
is vpon þe marche of Scotlan
de. wherfore þe englisshe men
gretly were discomforted and
grouchede in Northumberlande
for encheson þat king Edwar
des sone sette by þe Scottis
no force for þe wante of Perys
of Gauaston wherfore allas
þe songe þorouz was þorouzout
alle Engelonde for defaute
of a good warde fram þe yle
of Shippey vnto þe Ile of
Marcile þe peple made miche
sorowe. for good king Edwar
dis deth. ffor þei wende þat
þe good king Edwarde schul
de haue gon in to þe holy lan
de for þat was hollicke his
purpos vpon whos soule god
of blys haue mercye.

Off king
Edwarde þat was king Ed 1307
wardis sone C.C. iij. vij.

And after þis kinge
Edwarde. regnede
Edwarde his sone.
þat was bore in Carnarvan.
and þis Edwarde wente in
to ffrance and spousede Isabell
þe kingis doughter of ffrance
the xxv. day of Janier att
þe chirche of oure lady att
Bologne in þe zer of oure lord
m. ccc. viij. And þe xxv. day
of Feuer þe nexte zer þat come
after he was crounede solemp
liche att Westmynster of the
Erchebisshop Robert of Wyn
chelsee of Caunterbery and þe
was so grete prees of peple þat
Sr John Bakwelle was dede
and morthrede. And anon
as þe good king Edwarde was

dede · s^e Edwarde his sone king
of Engelonde sente after Piers
of Gaueston in to Gascoigne &
so muche louede hym þat he
callede him his broþer · and anoon
after he 3af him þe lordschep of
Wallyngforde and hit was nou3t
longe after þat he ne 3af him
þe erldome of Cornewaille a
3eins alle þe lordes wille of
þe reaume ¶ And so brou3te
he s^e Walt' of Langeton bis
shop of Chestr' in to prisoun in
to þe tour of London wiþ .ij.
knafes alone him to serue · for
encheson þe king was wroth
wiþ him · for cause þat s^e Walt'
made complaynt vpon hym
to his fader wherfore he was
putt in to prisoun in þe tyme of
Trailebastoun ¶ And þe for
saide Piers of Gaueston made
so grete maistres þat he wen
te in to þe kinges tresorie in
þe abbay of Westmynstr' &
nome þe table of gold wiþ
þe trestell of þe same & many
oþer riche iewell þat som tyme
were þe noble king Arthur'
and toke hem to a marchaunt
þat me callede Aymery of
Friscombaude · for he schulde
bere hem ouer þe see vnto
Gascoigne and þai come neuer
a3en after wherfore hit was
a grete loste in to þis lande ·

¶ And whanne þis Piers was
so richely auaunsede he bicome
so prowde and so stoute · wher
of alle þe grete lordes of the
reaume had him in despite
for his grete berynge · wher for
s^e Henry þe Lacy erl of Nicchole
and s^e Guy erl of Warrewyke
þe whiche good lordes the
good king Edwarde charged[e]
þat Peirs of Gauastone schulde
nou3t come into Engelonde
for to bringe his sone in to ryott
And alle þe lordes of Engelon
de assemblede at a certayn day
att þe Frere prechours att London
and speken of þe dishonour þat
þe king dede vnto his reaume
and to his crowne · and so þey
assentede alle boþe erles and
commones þat þe forsaide Piers
of Gauaston schulde ben exy
led of Engelonde and so hit
was done for he forswore En
gelonde and wente into Irlan
de and þere þe king made him
cheuetayne and gouernour of þe
lande by his commissioun · and
þere þis Piers was cheuetay
ne of alle þe lande and dede
þere alle þat him lykede and
had þere alle þat he wolde ·/

¶ And that tyme were þe tem
pleres exilede þoru3 all cristiente ·

for encheson þat men putte
vpon hem þat þai schulde
done þing azens þe fay and
good bylene. [K]ing Edwarde
louede piers of Gauaston so
muche þat he myzte nouzt for
lete his companye and so mu
che þe king zaf and behizte to
þe peple of engelonde þat þe
exilinge of þe forsaide piers
schulde ben renouelede at Stau
forde þoruz hem þat him had
exilede. [W]herfore piers of
Gauastone come azen in to En
gelonde. and whenne he was
come azen in to þis londe he
despised þe grettest lordes of
þis lande. and called sire Ro
bert of clare erl of Glouceste
horesone. and þe erl of Nichole
Sire Henry þe lacy Brostbaly.
And sire Guy erl of Warrewyk
Blake hounde of Ardenne and
also he callede þe noble erl &
gentil Thomas of lancastre
cherl. and meny oþer scornes &
schame hem saide and by ma
ny oþere grete lordes of Enge
londe. wherfore þai were wroþ
wiþ him ful angry and sore
annoyede. [A]nd in þe same
tyme deide þe erl of Nichole
but he charged or he was de
de Thomas of lancastre erle
þat was his sone in lawe þat

he schulde mayntene his qua
rell azens þe same piers of
Gauastone vpon his benesoun
And so hit was ordeynede
þoruz helpe of þe erl of lancastre
And of þe erl of Warrewyke þat
þe forsaide sire piers was by
heuede att Gauersiche besides
Warwik. þe xix day of Juni
In þe zere of grace a þousande
ccc. and xii. wherfore þe king
was sore annoyede. and praide
god þat he moste see þat day
to ben avengede vpon þe deþ
of þe forsaide piers. [A]nd
so hit byfell aftirwarde as
ze schullen here alas þe ty
me. ffor þe forsaide erl of lan
castre and meny anoþer grete ba
rouns were putt to pitous deþ
and martirede for encheson
of þe forsaide quarell. [T]he
king was þo att londone and
helde a plement and ordey
nede þe lawes of Sire Symond
Mountfort. wherfore þe erl of
lancastre. and alle þe erles
and alle þe clergie of Enge
londe maden an oth þoruz
conceile of Robert of Wyn
chelsee for to mayntene þo
ordinaunce for euermore.

[H]owe Robert þe Brus come
azen into Scotlande and ga
dred a grete power of men.

ffor to werre vpon king Edwar
de · Capitulo · C · iiij^xx · viij^o ·

And whenne Sire Robert
þe Brus þat made hym
king of Scotlande þat
was fledde into Norwey for
drede of deth of þe good king
Edwarde · and herde of þe de
bate þat was in Engelonde
bitwene þe king and his lor
des · he ordeinede an hoste &
come into Engelonde into
Northumbirlande and clanly
destroiede þe cuntre · And whe
king Edwarde herde þis ty
dinge he lete assemble his ost
and mette þe Scottis at Estry
uelyn in þe day of þe Natiuite
of Seint John þe baptiste in
þe zere of his regne þe vij · and
in þe zere of oure lord Jhesu crist
M · ccc · xiiij · Allas þe sorowe
and lost þat was done · for þere
was slayn þe noble Erl Gil
bert of Clare · Sire Robert of Clif
forde Baron and many oþere &
of oþer peple þat no man cowþe
noumbre and þe king Edwarde
was scomfitede and Sire Edmun
de of Maule þe kingis Stewarde
for drede wente and drenchede
him in a fresshe Ryuer þat is
callede Bannokesbourne · wher
fore þe Scottis saide in repreue
and despite of king Edwarde
for as muche þat he louede for
to gon by water and also for he
was descomfitede att Bannokes
bourne · þerfore maydenes maden
a songe þerof in þat cuntre of king
Edwarde of Engelonde and in
þis manere þei songe · Maide
nes of Engelonde sore may ze
morne · ffor tynt ze haue loste
zoure lemmans att Bannokesbo
ne with heualogh · What wen
de þe king of Engelonde · ha
ne ghete Scotlande · wiþ Rom
bylogh · Whenne king Edwar
de was descomfitede he was
wonder sorye and faste fledde
wiþ his folke þat was lafte a
lyf and wente to Berwyke &
þer helde him · And after he
toke hostages þat is to weten
viij · children of þe Richeste of
þe toun and þe king wente to
london and nome conceile of
þinges þat were nedeful vn
to þe reaume of Engelonde ·
And in þe same tyme hit by
fel þat þer was in Engelonde
a ribaude þat me callede John
Daun and he wente and saide
þat he was þe good king Ed
wardes sone · and lete him calle
Edwarde of Carnarvan · and
þerfore he was take att Oxenfor
de · and þer he chalangede the
freres carmes cherche þat kinge

Edwarde hadde yaue

Edwarde had ȝaue hem the
whiche cherche som tyme was
þe kinges halle ¶ And aftirwar
de was þis Iohn lad to Northhamp
ton and drawe and þe hongede
for his falsenesse and er þat he
was dede he confessede & saide
bifore alle þe folke þat þe deuel
behighte him þat he schulde be
king of Engelonde and þat he
had seruede þe deuel iij ȝer.

¶ How þe town of Berwyke was
taken þorug tresoun: and how
ij. cardinales were robbede
in Engelonde. Cap. Cmo. iiijxx. ixo.

And in myd lentenes sun
day in þe ȝere of oure
lord Ihesu crist. Mo. ccc.
xvj. Berwyke was loste þorug fal
se tresoun of on Piers of Spaldinge
þe whiche Piers þe king had put
þere for to kepe þat same toun wiþ
menye burgeys of þe toun ¶ Wher
fore þe children þat were put in
hostage þorug þe burgeys of Berwy
ke and þe burgeys of Berwyke
folowede þe kinges werre here
manye dayes heretofore in straunge
rewme ¶ And after þat tyme þer
come ij. cardinales into Engelonde
as þe pope had hem sente for to
make pees bytwene Scotlande
and Engelonde and as þei wen
te towarde Duresme for to haue
sagrede maister Lowys of Beau

monde bisshop of Duresme: And
as þei wente þei were taken &
robbede vpon þe more of Wynge
hysdon: of whiche robberye one Gil
bert of Middelton was attent
and take and hongede & drawe
att London and his heuede smi
ten of and his bowellis taken
out of his body and brende and
his bodye quarterde and his hede
sette vpon a sper. and sette vpon
Newgate. and þe foure quarters
sente to foure citees of Engelon
de ¶ And þat same tyme bifel
manye myschiefes in Engelonde
for þe pore peple deide in Enge
londe for hunger: and so muche &
so fast folke deiden þat vnneþe
men myzte hem berye. for a quar
ter of whete was worth fourty
schillinges. and ij ȝere and an
half a quarter of whete was wor
the ij mark and afte tymes
þe pore peple stale children &
ete hem and ete also alle the
houndes þat þei myzte take
and ete hors and cattes. and
after þe fille a grete pestilence
amonge bestes of diuerse cuntrees
of Engelonde duryng kinge
Edwardus lyf ¶ How þe Scottis
robbed Northumberlande. Cap. Cmo. iiijxx. xo.

And in þe same
tyme come þe Scottis
aȝen into Engelonde and

destroyede Northumbirlande
and brende þat lande and rob
bede hit and quelde men &
wymmen and children þat
leyn in cradell and brende also
holy chirche and destroyede
cristendome and nonne and bare
abbey englisshe mennes goodes
as þei had ben Sarasines or
paynemes. and of þe wikked
nesse þat þei deden al þe worl
de spake þorȝ alle cristen
dome ¶ How þe Scottis wolde
nouȝt amende hire trespace
and þerfore Scotlande was en
tredite an. d. m^l ccc^mo xx· iiij· xj^mo

And whanne pope Iohn
þe xxij· after seint Pe
ter herde of þe grete so
rowe and mischef þat þe Scott
wrouȝhte he was wonder sory
þat cristendome was so distryede
þorȝ þe Scottis and namelich
for þei destroyede so holy chirche
wherfore þe pope sente a gen
al sentence vnder his bullis
of lead vnto þe erchebisshop of
Caunterbery and to þe erchebis
shop of York þat yf Robert of
Brus of Scotlande wolde nouȝt
be iustifiede and make amendis
vnto þe kyng of Engelonde
Edwarde hire lorde and make
amendis of his loste and his
harmes þat þei had done in
Engelonde and also to restore
þe goodes þat þei had nomen
of holy chirche· þat þe senten
ce shulde ben pronunciede þorȝ
al Engelonde ¶ And whenne
þe Scottis herde þis þei wolde
nouȝt lete hire malice for the
pope commaundement· wherfore
Robert Brus· James Douglas·
and Thomas Randulf erl of Mor
ref and alle þo þat wiþ hem co
mmiede or hem halpe in worde
or in dede were acursede in euery
chirche þorȝ Engelonde euery
day att þe masse iij tymes and
no masse shulde be songe in holy
chirche þorȝ out alle Scotlande
but yf þe Scottis wolde make
restitucioun of þe harmes þat þey
had made vnto holy chirche·
wherfore many a good preste and
holy men þerfore were slayn þorȝ
þe reaume of Scotlande for en
chesoun þat þey wolde synge no
masse azens þe popis comaun
dement and azens his wille
and to done and fulfille þe ty
rauntz wille ¶ How sire Hugh
þe Spencers sone was made þe
kynges chamberlayn and of þe
batail of Arytone an. d. m^l ccc^mo xix^mo

And hit was nouȝt lon
ge afterwarde þat the
kyng ordeynede a parle
ment att York and þere was

Sire hughe þe Spencers sone
made chambirlayn. and in þe
mene tyme while þe werre
laste þe king wente azen into
Scotlande þat hit was wonder
for to write. and bysegede the
toun of Berwyke. but þe Scottis
wente ouer þe water of Sulewath
þat was iij myle fram þe kinges
host and priueliche þei stale awey
be nyghte. and comen into Enge
londe and robbede and destroy
ede al þat þei myzte and spared
no maner þing til þat þei come
vn to york. ¶And whanne þat
þis englisshe men þat were lefte
att home herde of þis þing alle
þo þat myzte trauaille as wel
monkes and prestis and freres
and chanouns and seculers
and come and mette wiþ the
Scottis att Mytone vp Swale
þe xij day of Octobre. ¶Allas
what sorowe for the englisshe
hosbonde men þat couþe no þing
in werre þere were quelde & dren
chede in an hayne of þe see &
here cheueteynes Sire William
of Melton Erchebisshop of york
and þe Abbot of Selby wiþ here
stedes fledde and comyn vnto
york. and þat was here owene
folye þat þei hadde þat myscha
unce. for þei passede þe water of
Swale. and þe Scottis sette a
fire in Stackes of Hey. and the
smoke þerof was so huge þat en
glisshe men mizt nouzt se the
Scottis. ¶And whanne þe en
glisshe men were gon ouer the
water þo comen þe Scottis wiþ
here wynge in maner of a schel
de and come towarde þe englis
she men in araye. and þe englis
she men fledde for vnneþe þey
had any men of armes for the
kinge had hem alle almost lost
att þe sege of Berwyke. and þe
Scottisshe hobilers wente bitwe
ne þe king and þe Englisshe me
¶And whanne þe grete host hem
mette þe englisshe men fledde
bitwene þe hobilers and þe grete
host and þe englisshe men almost
were þere quelde. and he þat myzte
wende ouer þe water was sauede
but menye were dreynt. allas
for þer were slayn menye men
of Religioun and seculers and
also prestis and clerkis. and with
muche sorowe þe Erchebisshop
scapede away and þerfore the
Scottis callede þat bataille þe
white bataile. ¶How king Ed
warde dede al maner þing as
Sire hugh Spencer wolde. Ca. C. iiij^xx. xiij^mo.

And whanne king
Edwarde herde this ty
dynge he remeuede
his sege fram Berwyke & come

azen in to Engelonde. But sire
Hughe þe Spenser þe sone þat
was þe kinges chamburlayn
kepte so þe kinges chambre þat
no man most speke wiþ þe king
but he made wiþ him a fyne
for to done his nede & þat ouer
mesure and þus Hughe bar him
so stoute þat alle man hadde of
him scorne and despite and þe
king him self wolde nouȝt ben
gouernede ne reulede by noman
man but oneliche by his fader &
by him. ¶ And yf any knyght
of Engelonde had wordes ayen-
nes or land þat þei wolde coue-
te anon þe king most zeue hit
ham or ellis þe man þat ouȝte
hit schulde falsely be enditede
of treson or of felonye and þorȝ
suche doynge þei disheritede mi-
nye a good bachelere and so ma-
nye landes geten þat hit was
muche wonder. ¶ And whenne
þe lordes of Engelonde sawe þe
grete couetise and þe falsnesse
of sire Hughe þe Spenser his
fader and of sire Hughe þe sone
þei come to þe gentil erl of Lan-
castre and axede him of his con-
seile of þe disese þat was in þe
reaume þorȝ sire Hughe þe Spen-
ser and his sone and in hast by
on assente þei made apnce asse-
ble att Shirbone in Elmede.

and alle þei made þer an oth for
to breke and destourble þe doyn-
ge by twene þe king and sire Hughe
þe Spenser and his sone vpon
his power. and þei wente in to þe
marche of Walys and destryede
þe londe of þe forsaide sire Hughe.

How sire Hughe the Spenser and his fader were exilede out of Engelonde capitulo C.mo iiij.xx xiiij.mo

Whenne king Edwarde sau
þe grete harme and de-
struction þat þe barouns
of Engelonde deden to sire Hughe
þe Spensers landes and to his per-
sones in eny place þat þei comen
vpon. and þe king þo þorȝ his
conseile exilede sire Iohn Mou-
bray sire Roger of Clifforde and sire
Gosselyn Deuill and menye oþer
lordes þat were to ham consente
wherfore þe barouns dede þo more
harme þan þei deden byfore.
¶ And whanne þe king sawe this
þat þe barouns wolde nouȝt cese
of his quarelle. þe king was sore
adrad leste they wolde destroye
him and his reaume for his main-
tenaunce. but if þat he assented
to ham. and so he sente for ham
by letteres þat þei schulde come
to London to his parlement att a
certayn day and in his letteres
was conteynede ¶ And they
come wiþ in batailles wel

armede att al poyntz and eu(er)y
bataille had cote armures of
grene cloth and þ(er)of þe ryghte
quart(er) was yelewe wiþ whitte
bendes. wherfore þat parlement
was callede parlement of the
white bende. And in that
companye was sire Umfray de
Bohoun erl of Herforde and sire
Rog(er) of Cliffforde sire John Moun
bray sire Gosselyn Dauile sire Rog(er)
Mortimer uncle of sire Rog(er) Mor
timer of Wygemore sire Henry of
Tyeys sire John Giffarde and sire
Bartholomew of Badelesmere þat
was þe kinges stewarde þat þe
king had sente to Shirborne in
Elmede to þe Erl of Lancastre &
to alle þat wiþ him were for to
trete of acorde þat him alliede
to þe barouns and come with
that companye. And sire Roger
Damory and sire Hughe Daudele
le þat had spousede þe kinges ne
ces suster and sire Gilbert of Clare
erl of Gloucestre þat was quelde
in Scotlande as bifore is saide.
And þo ij lordes hadde þer par
ties of þe erledome of Gloucestre
and sire Hughe þe Spenser þe sone
hadde þe þridde part in his wifes
half. The þridde suster and þo
ij lordes wente to þe barouns
wiþ alle here power ayeins sire
Hughe here broþ(er) in lawe and so

þei come wiþ hem ou(er)e Rog(er) of
Cliffforde sire John Moumbray sire
Gosselyn Dauile sire Rog(er) Mortimer
of Werk sire Roger Mortimer of
Wygemore his neveu sire Henry
Tyeys sire John Giffarde sire
Bartholomew of Badelesmere wt
al here companye and manye
oþere þat to hem were consente.
Alle þese grete lordes comen to
Westmynstre to þe kinges parlement
and so þei spoken and dede þat
boþe sire Hughe Spencer þe fader
and sire Hughe þe sone were out
lawede of Engelonde for eu(er)e
more. Allas sire Hughe þe fader
wente to Dover and made muche
sorowe and falle doun upon þe
grounde by þe see banke agos
with his armes and oþer we
pinge saide now faire Engelon
de and good Engelonde to al
myghty god y þe bytake and
þries kiste þe grunde and wen
de neue to haue come ayen &
wepinge ful sore cursede the
time þat eu(er) he bigatte sire
Hughe his sone and saide for hym
he had lost Engelonde and in
p(re)sence þat was him aboute he
yaf him his curse and wente
ou(er) þe see to his landes.
But sire Hughe þe sone wolde
nought gon out of Engelonde
but helde him in þe see and he

and his companye robbede ij dromondes bisides Sandewiche and nome and bere awey al þe good þat was on hem þe value of fourty þousande pounde.

How þe king exiled erl Thomas of lancastre and alle þat helde wiþ him. And how þe Mortimers come and zelde hem vnto þe king And of þe lordes siege. ca. C. iiijxx. xvmo.

Hit was nouzt long after þat þe king ne made Sir Hughe þe Spenser þe fader and Sir Hughe come azen in to Engelonde azens the lordes wille of þe reame. And sone after þe kyng wiþ a stronge poer come and bisegede the Castell of leedes. and in þat castel was þe lady of Badelesmere for enchesoun þat she wolde nouzt graunte þe castel to þe queene Isabell king Edwardes wyf. But þe principal cause was for enchesoun þat Sir Bartholomewe Badelesmere was azens þe king and helde wiþ the lordes of Engelonde. And noþeles þe king by help and socour of men of london and also by helpe of Souþerne men þe king gate the castel maugre hem alle þat were þere inne and nome wiþ him al þat he myzte fynde. And whanne þe barouns of Engelonde herde of þis þing. Sir Roger Mortimer and Sir Roger Mortimer and oþer many lordes nome and toke þe toun of Brigewortħ wiþ strengthe wherfore þe king was wonder wroth and lete outlawe Thomas erl of lancastre and Humfray de Bohoun erl of Herforde and alle þo þat were assentaunt to þe same querell. And þe king assemblede an huge host and come azens þe lordes of Engelonde wherfore þe Mortymers putt hem to þe kinges mercy and his grace and and þei were sente to þe tour of london and þere kepte in prisoun. And whanne þe barouns herde of þis þing þei comen to Pountfret þere þat þe erl Thomas was soiournede and tolde him how þe Mortimers were had zolde hem vnto þe kyng and putt hem in his grace.

Off þe seege of Tikhille. capitulo centesimo. iiij. xvjto.

Whanne Thomas erl of lancastre herde þis þey were wonder wroþ and alle þat were in his companye and gretly þei were discomfortede & ordeynede hire poer to gedre and byseged þe castel of Tikhille but þo þat were wiþ inne so maliciously defended hem þat þe barouns myzte nouzt gete þe castel. And whanne þe king herde þat

his castel was bysegede: he
swore by god and by his names
þat þe wronge schulde ben amen
dede. and assemblede an huge
power of peple and wente thedir
warde for to rescue þe castell. &
his power encresede fram day to
day. ¶ Whenne þe Erle of Lan
castre and þe erl of herforde and
þe barouns and here companye
herde of this þing þei assembled
al here power and wente hem to
Burton vp Trent and kepte þe
brigge þat þe king schulde noȝt
passe ouer. ¶ But hit byfel so
on þe tenþe day of Marche in þe
ȝer of grace a þousande iij. hundred
and xxj. þe king and þe Erles
sir Aymer Valaunce erl of Pen
broke and John Erle of Arundel
and here power wente ouer þe brigge
and destourbede þe erl thomas
and his companye. and þei fled
de to þe castel of Tuttebery.
and fro þennes þei wente to
Pountfret and in þat viage
deide sir Roger Dammory in the
Abbay of Tuttebery. ¶ And in
þat same tyme þe erl Thomas
had a traitour wiþ him þat me
callede Robert of Holande a kniȝt
þat þe erl had brouȝte vp of
noiȝt and had norisshede hym
in his botelrye. and hath ȝeue
him ij. þousande marc of lande

by ȝer. and so miche þe erl lo
uede him þat he miȝte done in
þe erlis court al þing þat him
likede boþe amonge hye & lowe
and so queyntliche þe þef bar
him aȝens his lorde. þat he trust
more vppon him þan vppon any
man alyue. ¶ And þe erl hadde
ordeynede by his lettres for to wen
de in to þe erldome of Lancastre
for to make men arise to helpe
him in þat viage þat is to seyn
v. hundred men of armes. but
þe false traitour come noiȝt þe
no maner men for to warne ne
to make arise for to helpe his
lorde. ¶ And whenne þe traitour
herde telle þat his lord was dis
comfitede att Burtone. as a fal
se þef traitour he stale awey &
robbede in Rauenesdale his lor
des men þat come fram þe scom
fiture and nome of hem hors &
harneys and al þat þei had &
quelde of hem al þat he miȝte
take and þo come and ȝelde hy
m to þe king. ¶ Whenne þe good
erle Thomas wiste þat he was
so bytraiede he was sore abas
shede and saide to him self. O.
almyghti god quoþ he how miȝte
Robert Holande fynde in his herte
me to betraye oþerweies þat y
haue louede him so miche. o.
god wel may now a man se

by him þat noman may destroyne
a noþer ȝere: þan he þat he most truste
vpon· he hath ful euel ȝolde my
goodnesse and þe worschep þat y to
him haue done: and þorȝ my kinde
nesse haue him auauncede and made
him hye fram lowe· and he makith
me go fram hye into lowe· but ȝit
schal he dye in euele deth ¶ Off
þe discomfiture of burbrugge ca° c· xx· iiij· xvij°

The good erle ¶ Thomas of lancastre & Sir Vm
fray de Bohoun erle of Her
forde and the barouns þat with
hem were nomen counceil bitwe
ne hem att þe freres prechours att Pont
fret· þo þorȝte Thomas vpon the
traterye of Robert holande & saide
in ȝerne· Allas holande· me hap
betrayede ȝit is in þe reed of him
euel cheuede ¶ And by commune
assente þei schulde alle wende to
þe castel of Dunstanburgh the
whiche pertaynede to the erldome
of lancastre and þat þei schulde
abide þere til þat þe king had for
ȝeue hem his male talent· but
whanne þe good erl Thomas þis
herde he answerde in this maner
and saide ¶ Lordes quoþ he yf
we gon towarde the Northe man
wil seyn þat we gon towarde þe
Scottis and so we schullen be
holde traitours for cause of distan
ce þat is by twene king Edwarde
and Robert þe Bruys þat made him
kinge of Scotlande and þerfore y sey
as touchinge my self þat y wil
gon no ferþer in to þe Northe þan to
myn owne castel of pountfret
¶ And whanne sire Rog[er] Clifforde her
de þis he aros vp anon in wraþe &
drowe his swerde and swore be
almyghty god and by his holy na
mes but if þat he wolde gon wiþ
hem he schulde be dede and that
he wolde slee him þere ¶ Tho þe noble
and gentil erl Thomas of lancastre
was sore adrad· and saide Faire
sires y wil gon wiþ ȝow whider
so ȝe me lede· þo wente they
togaderes in to the Northe and wiþ
hem þei hadde vij hundred men of
armes and come to Burbrugge
¶ And whanne sir Andrewe of Herke
la þat was in þe Northcuntre þorȝ
ordinaunce of þe king for to kepe
þe cuntre of Scotlande· herde telle
how þat Thomas of lancastre was
descomfitede and his companye
att Burton vp Trent he ordeyned
him a stronge poer and Sir Symonde
also Ward þat was þe shereef of
ȝorke and come and mette þe ba
rouns att Burbrugge and anon þey
broken þe brigge þat was made
of tre ¶ And whanne Sire Tho
mas of lancastre herde þat Sire
Andrew of herkela had brouȝte
wiþ him such a power he was

ouer a dai and sente for Sire An
drewe of Herkela and wiþ him spa
ke and saide to him in this manere.
Sire Andrew quod he ȝe mowe wel
vnderstonde how þat oure lorde þe
king þorȝ lad and mys gouerned by
myche false counceile þorȝ Hughe
þe Spencer þe fader and Sire Hughe
his sone and Sire John erl of Arun
del and þorȝ maister Robert Baldok
a fals pilede clerk þat is in the
kinges court dwellynge wherfore
y praye þat ȝe wolde come wiþ vs
wiþ al þe power þat ȝe haue or der
nede and helpe to destroye the
venyme of Engelonde and þe trai
tours þat beth þerinne and we wile
ȝeue vnto ȝow þe best part of v
erldomes þat we haueth & holdeth
and we wile make vnto ȝow an
oth þat we wil neuer don thing
wiþ oute ȝoure counceile and so
ȝe schullen ben after as wel wiþ vs
as euer was Robert of Holande.
Tho answerde Sire Andrew of Her
kela and saide Sire Thomas þat
wolde y nouȝt done ne consente
þerto for no maner thing þat me
myȝt me ȝeue wiþ oute þe wil
and commandement of oure lorde
þe king for þanne schulde y ben
holde a traitour for euermore. ¶And
whanne þe noble erl Thomas of
Lancastre sawe þat he nolde con
sente to him for no maner þing Sire

Andrew he saide wil ȝe nouȝt
consente to destroye þe venyme
of þe reaume as we ben consente
att o word Sire Andrew y telle þe
þat or þis ȝere be gon þat ȝe schulle
ben take and holde for a traitour
and more þan ȝe holde vs now &
in wers deþ ȝe schulle dye þanne
euer dide any knyghte of Enge
londe and vnderstondiþ wel þat
ȝe dede neuer þing þat sorer schal
ȝow repente and now goþ and
doþ þat ȝow good likeþ and I wile
putte me vnto þe mercye and grace
of god. And so wente þe false trai
tour Sire Andrew of Herkela in
his wey as a false traitour attaint
and as a fals forswore man for
þorȝ þe noble erl Thomas of Lan
castre he vnderfonge þe armes
of chiualrye and þorȝ him he
was made knyght. ¶Tho miȝte
men sene archers drawen hem
in þat o side and in þat oþer and
knyghtes also and foughten to ge
dre also wonder sore. And also
amonge oþere Sire Humfray de Bou
ghon erl of Herforde a worthy kniȝt
of renoun þorȝ out alle cristen dome
stode and faugte wiþ his enemy
es vppon þe brigge and as þe no
ble lord stode and faugte vppon
þe brigge a þef a ribaude scol
kede vnder þe brigge and fersly
wiþ a spere smote þe noble kniȝt

in to þe foundement so þat
his bowell comen out þer.
Allas þe sorowe. for þer was
slayn þe floure of solace &
of comforte and also of curte
sye. And sir Rog[er] of Clifforde
a noble knyzt stode euer and
faugzte wel and nobly hym de
fendede as a worthy baroun
but att þe laste he was sore
wounded in his heuede and
sir William of Sullay and sir
Rog[er] of Bernefelde were slayn
att þat bataile. ¶ Whenne sir
Andrew of Harkela sawe þat
oure Thomas men of Lancastre
laske and slake. anon he and
his companye comen to the
gentil knyzt Thomas of Lan
castre and saiden zelde the
traitour zelde þe. ¶ þe gentil
erl answarde þo and saide nay
lordes traitours be we non &
to zow wile we neuer vs zelde
while þat oure lyfes lasten
but leuer we haue to ben slayn
in oure trewthe þan zelde vs
to zow. And sir Andrew azein
grad vppon sir Thomas compa
nye zellinge as a wode wolfe
and saide zelde zow traitours
taken zelde zow. And wiþ an
hye voys and sayde bay ware
sires þat non of zow be so har
dy vppo lyf and lyme to nyse

done Thomas body of Lancas
tre. ¶ And wiþ that word þe
good erl Thomas wente into
a chapel and saide knelinge doun
vppo his knees and turnede his
visage towarde þe auter and
þe crois and saide almyghty
god to þe y me zelde and holly
che putt me in to thy mercye.
And wiþ þat word þe vyleynes
ribaudes lepten aboute hym in
euery side þat gentil erl as ty
rauntz and wode turmentours
and dispoillede hym of his
armure and clothede hym in a
robe of raye þat was of his
squyers lyuere and forþ ladde
hym vn to Zork by water þo mizte
men see muche sorowe and
care for þe gentill knyztes sladde
in euery side. and þe ribaudes &
vileynes agreli hem destrede
and grad an heye zelde zow trai
tours zelde zow. ¶ And whenne
þai were zelde. þai were robbid
and bounde as þefes. allas þe
shame and despite þat þe gen
til ordre of knyghthode þe had
att þat bataille and þe launde
þo was wiþ oute lawe. for the
holy cherche had þo no more reu
ence þan hit had ben a bordel
hous. And in þat bataille was
þe fader azens þe sone and þe
vncle azens þe neuew for so

muche vnkindenesse was neuer
seyn bifore in Engelonde as
was att þat tyme amonge fol
ke of o nacioun for o kynrede had
no pite of þat oþer þan an hunger
wolf hath of a schepe and hit
was no wonder ∴ for þe grete
lordes of Engelonde were nouȝt
alle of o nacioun. but were med
lede wiþ oþer naciouns þat is for
to seyn somme Britouns somme
Saxouns somme Danoys somme
Pehites somme frensshe men
somme Normannes somme
Spaynardes somme Romayns.
somme Henauders somme Flemmyn
ges and of oþer diuise naciouns
þe whiche naciouns acordede
nouȝt to þe kinde blood of Enge
londe. And yf þe grete lordes
had ben Alyche wedded to En
glisshe peple þan schulde pees
haue ben and reste amonges
hem wiþ oute eny envye. And
att þat bataille was sire Roger
Clifforde take sir John Mombray
sir William Tuchet sir William
fitz William and menye oþer
worthy knyȝtis and sir Hughe
Daudell þe next day after was
taken and put into prisoun and
schulde haue ben don to þe deth
yf he had nought ffounde the
kinges nece þat was [illegible] le
Gilbertus first of Gloucestre &

anon after was sir Bartholo
mewe of Badelesmere taken
att Stowe parke a manoir of þe
bisshoppis of Lincolne þat was
his neuew and menye oþer ba
rouns and baronettis. Where
fore was made muche sorwe·

How Thomas was byheuede att
Pountfret and v. barouns hon
gede and drawen. Ca. C° iiij^{xx} xviij.

And now y schal telle
ȝow of þe noble erle
Thomas of lancastre
whanne he was taken & brouȝt
to ȝorke menye of þe citee were
ful glad and vppon him criede
wiþ hye voys. A Sire traitour
ȝe ar welcome blessede be god
for now schal ȝe haue þe reward
de þat longe tyme ȝe haue deser
uede and caste vppon him menye
snowe balles and menye oþer
repruues dede him. but þe gentil
erl þat suffrede and saide noþer ou
ne oþer. And in þe same tyme
þe king herde of þe Counfiture &
was ful glad and in hast come
to Pountfret. And sir Spenser and
sir Hughe his sone and sir John
erl of Arundell and sir Edmunde
of Wodestoke þe kinges brother
erl of Kent and sir Aimer of Va
launce erl of Penbrok & maister
Robert of Baldok a false pilede
clerk þat was priue & duellede

in the kingis court and alle com
wiþ þe king ¶ And S[ir] Rauf of
Beestone ȝaf up the castell to
þe king and þe king entrede into
þe castell. And S[ir] Andrew of
Harkela a false traitour þorȝ þe
kingis commaundement nome
wiþ him þe gentil erl Thomas
to Pountfret and þer he was p[ri]so
nede in his owne castell þat he
had newe made þat stode aȝens
þe abbay of king Edwarde and
S[ir] Hughe þe Spenser þe fader.
And S[ir] Hughe his sone caste &
þouȝte how and in what maner
þe good erl Thomas of Lancastr
schulde ben dede wiþ out eny
iugement of his peres ¶ Wher
fore hit was ordeinede þorȝ þe
kingis iustices þat þe king schul
de putt uppo him pointez of treso[n]
and so hit bifelle þat he was lad
to þe barre bifore þe kingis iusti
cez bar heed as a þef in a faire
halle with inne his owne cas
tell þat he had made þ[er]inne
many a faire feste bothe to riche
and eke to pore ¶ And þese wer
his iustices S[ir] Hughe þe Spencer
þe fader. Sir Aymer of Valan
ce erle of Penbroke. S[ir] Edmun
de of Wodestoke. erl of Kent. S[ir]
John of Brytaigne erl of Richemon
de. and S[ir] Robert of Malemethorp
iustice. And S[ir] Robert him acoupede

in þis maner ¶ Thomas att þe
ferste oure lorde þe king and his
court excludeþ ȝow of al maner
ansuere ¶ Thomas oure lord the
king putt uppo ȝow þat ȝe haue
in his lande riden wiþ baner
displaiede aȝens his pees as a
traitour ¶ And wiþ þat worde
þe gentil erl Thomas wiþ an
hye voys. saide nay lordes for soþ
and by seint Thomas y was
neu[er] traitour ¶ þe iustice saide
aȝen þo ¶ Thomas oure lord the
king putt uppo þe þat ȝe haue rob
bede his folc and mordred his
peple as a þef ¶ Thomas þe king
also putt uppon þe þat he discomfi
tede ȝow and ȝoure peple wiþ his
folke in his owne reaume wher
fore ȝe wente and fley to þe wode
as an outlawe and also ȝe were
taken as an outlawe ¶ And Tho
mas as a traitour ȝe schulde ben
honged by resoun. But þe king
haþ forȝeue ȝow þat iewesse for
þe loue of Quene Isabella ¶ And
Thomas resoun wolde also þ[a]t ȝe
schulde be honged but þe king
haþ forȝeue þat iewesse for cause
and loue of ȝoure lynage ¶ But
Thomas for as muche as ȝe were
take fleynge and as an outlawe
þe king wile þat ȝoure heuede
ben smyten of as ȝe haue wel de
s[er]uede. Anon don him out of the

prees and anon brynge him to
his iugement ¶ Þe gentil knyzt
whanne had herde alle these
wordes· wiþ an hye voys he
cryede sore wepinge and saide
Allas seint Thomas fair fader
allas schal y ben dede þus graun
te me now blisful god answere·
but al hit awailed him no þing
for þe cursede gascoignes putte
hym hider and þeder and on hy
cryede wiþ an hye voys· O king
Arthur· most dredful wel knowe
an is now þin opun traitour in euil
deþ schalt þou dye as þou hast
wel deserued ¶ Þo sette þei vpon
his heuede in scorn an olde
chapelette al to rente and torne
þat was nouzt worth an halpe
nye and after þei sette him vpon
a lene white palfray ful vnse
meliche and eke al bare with
an olde bridell· and wiþ an hor
rible noyse þey drow him out
of þe castell towarde his deth
and caste on hym manye balles
of snowe ¶ And as þe turmen
tours lad him out of the castell
þo saide he þese pitous wordes·
and his handes helde vp an hye
towardes heuene· Now þe king
of heuene zeue vs mercye for þe
erþely king hap vs forsake· and
a frere prechour wente wiþ him
out of þe castell til þt he come
to þe place þat he endede his
lyf in to whom he schrof him
alle his lyf ¶ And þe gentil
erle helde þe frere wonder faste
by þe clothes· and saide faire
fader abide wiþ vs til þat y
ben dede· for my flessh quakeþ
for drede of deth and soþ for to
seye· þe gentil erl sette him vpon
his knees and turnede him
towarde þe East· but a rybaude
þat me callede hygon of Mosto
ne sette hande vpon þe gentil
Erl· and saide in despite of hym
and saide sire traitour turne
þe towarde þe scottis· þyn foule
deth to vnderfonge· and turne
de þe erl towarde þe Northe·
¶ The noble erl Thomas answerde
þo wiþ a mylde voys and sayde
now faire lordes y schal done
alle zoure wille· and wiþ that
worde þe frere wente fro him ful
sore wepinge· and anon a ribau
de wente to him and smote of
his heuede þe xj kalendis of
Aueryll· in þe zer of grace a þou
sande iij hundrede and xxj allas
þat euer suche a gentil blode schul
de ben done to þe deth wiþ out
cause and resoun ¶ And thanne for
sothe was the king comfortede
whanne he þorouz false conseile
of þe false spensers soffrede sire
Thomas his vncles sone ben putte

to suche a deth and so ben he
neded azeins alle maner reson
and grete pite hit was also that
suche a noble king shulde ben
destroyede and mysgouernede
thorgh conceile of the false spen
sers the whiche he mayntenede
thorgh lordshipe azeins his honour
and al profite. for afterwarde the
falle grete vengaunce in Enge
londe for enchesoun of the forsayde
Thomas deth. ¶ Whanne the
gentil erl of his lyf was passe
de the porr and the monkes of
Pountfret geten the Thomas
body of the king and thei beryed
hit bifore the hye auter in the rizt
side and that same day that the
gentil lorde was dede ther were
hongede and drawe for the same
querell att Pountfret Sir Wil
liam fitz William sir Warin of
Ysilee sir William Cuchett sir
Henry of Bradbone and sir Willi
am Cheyne barouns alle & Iohn
Page squyer ¶ And sone after
att York were drawe & hongede
sir Roger of Clifforde sir Iohn of
Mombray barouns and sir Goce
lyn Damill knyght ¶ And att
Bristowe were drawe and honged
sir Henry of Wylingtone and
sir Henry of Mountfort barouns
And att Glouc' were drawe &
honged sir Iohn Giffarde and
sir William of Elmebrug ba
rouns ¶ And att Londone were
hongede and drawe sir Henry
Tye the baroun and att Wynchel
see sir Thomas Colepiper knizt
and att Wyndesore sir Fraunceys
of Waldenham baroun and att
Cauntburye was drawe and
hongede sire Bartholomew of
Badelesmer and sir Barthol
mew of Asshebornham barouns
and att Kerdyf Wales sir Willia
Flemynge baroun ¶ How king
Edwarde wente in to Scotlan
de with an hundred thousande
men of armes and nozt nozt
spede. Capitulum C.mo iiij.xx xix.no

And whanne king Edwar
de of Engelonde had
brozt the flour of Chi
ualrie vnto his deth thorgh coun
ceile of sir Hughe the Spenser the
fader and sir Hughe his sone he
bicome as woode as a lyoun
and what so euer the Spensers
wolde haue done hit was done
and so wel the kyng louede hem
that thei myzte done with him
al thing that thei wolde. Wherfore
the king zaf vnto sir Hughe the
Spenser the fader the erldome of
Wynchestre and to sir Andrew of
Herkela the Erldom of Cardoil
in purchace and in haymyng of
his sonne. ¶ And king Edwarde

þo þorug conceile of þe Spensers
disheritede alle ham þat had
ben azeins him in any quarell Sr
Thomas of lancastr and meny
othe were also disheritede also
for enchesoun þat þe Spensers
coueitede for to haf hire landes
and so þey had al that þey
wolde desire wiþ wrong and
azeins alle resoun. Tho made
þe king Robert of baldok a false
pilede clerk chaunceler of
Engelonde þorug conceil of þe
forsaide spensers and he was
a fals purvaide and a couetous and
so þei conceilde þe king so mu
che þat þe king lete take to his
owene warde alle þe goodes of
þe lordes þat wrongefully were
put vn to þe deth in to his owene
hande and as wel þei nomen
þe godes þat were in holy chirche
as þe goodes þat were wiþ out
and lete ham ben put in to his
tresorie att londone and lete he
calle his forfetez and by hire con
seile þe king wrouzte and for
sue more disheritede alle ham
þat þo goodes owedeu and þo
þurz hire conceile lete arere a
taillage of alle þe godes of En
gelonde wherfore he was þe
rychest king þat eue was in
Engelonde after Williā Basta
rde of Normandye þt conquerd
Engelonde. And zit þorug
conceile of ham hym semede
þat he had nouzt ynow. But
made zitt any toun of Enge
londe fynde a man of armes
vppon hire owene costages for
to gon and werre vppon the
Scottis þat were his enemyes
bifore. Wherfore þe king wente
in to Scotlande wiþ an hundred
þousande men of armes att
Whitsontyde in þe zere of oure
lorde god a þousande iij hun
dred and xxij. But þe scottis wen
te and hid ham in mountaynes
and in wodes and carede the
englisshe men fro day to day þat
þe king mizte for no maner þig
ham fynde in playn felde.
Wherfore meny englisshe men
þat fawte vitailles hadden for
hungr þe deiden wonder faste
and sodeynly for hunger in go
ynge and in comynge and name
liche þo þat had ben azeins Tho
mas of lancastr and had robbed
his men vppon his landes.
Whanne king Edwarde saw þt
vitailles faillede him he was
þo wonder sore discomfitede
for enchesoun also þat his men
so deide and also for he mizte
nouzt spede of his enemyes so
att þe laste he come azen into
Engelonde. and anon after come

James Douglas and also Tho-
mas Randulf with an huge host
in to Engelonde in to Northum-
berlande and whan þe En-
glisshe men þat were dryuen
out of Engelonde and come &
robbede þe cuntre and quelde þe
peple and also brent þe toun þat
was callede Northallertoune and
many oþere tounes vnto York.
¶ And whanne þe king herde þis
tydinge: he lete somoune alle
maner men þat myzten trauayle
and so þe englisshe men mette the
Scottis att þe Abbay of Beighe-
lande þe xv. day after mighelis
masse in þe same yere abouesay-
de and þe englisshe men were
there discounfitede and att þat
scounfiture was take sire John
of Brittayne erl of Rychemonde
þat helde þe cuntre and the erl-
dome of lancastre and after he
paiede an huge raunsoune and
was lete gone and after þat he
wente in to ffraunce and come
neuere after warde azen

¶ How sire Andrew of Herkla was ta-
ken and putt vn to þe deth þat
was erl of Cardoill. Ao. ccc^mo.

And att þat tyme sire An-
drew of Harcla þat newe
was made erl of Car-
doill for cause þat he had taken
þe good erl Thomas of lancastre
he had ordeynede þorouz þe kinges
commandement of Engelonde for
to bringe him al þe power þat he
myzte for to helpe him azens þe
Scottis att þe Abbay of Beighlan-
de. ¶ And whanne þe false trai-
tour had gadered alle þe peple þat
he myzte and schulde haue come
to þe king vn to þe abbay of Beig-
lande. þe false traitour lad hem
by anoþer cuntre þorouz Copelonde
and þorouz þe erldome of lancas-
tre and wente þorouz þe cuntre
and robbede and quelde folke
alle þat he myzte ¶ And for
þer more þe false traitour had
taken a grete somme of golde
and siluer of sire James Douglas
for to ben azens þe king of Enge-
londe and to ben helpinge and
holdinge wiþ þe Scottis. þorouz
whos treson þe king of Enge-
londe was scounfitede att Beig-
lande er þat he come þeder wher-
fore þe king was towarde him wo-
þer wroth and lete priuely enque-
re by þe cuntre aboute how þat
hit was. And so men enquered
and aspiede so att þe laste þat
tresoun was founde and knowe.
and he attaint and taken as a fals
traitour. as þe noble erl Thomas
of lancastre him tolde er þat he
were done vn to þe deth att his
takyng att Burbrigge and to·

him saide: þat or þat ȝer were
done he shulde ben take and hol
de atreitour· and so hit was as
þe holy man saide: wherfore þe
kyng sent priueliche to sire Antoy
ne of lucye a knyȝt of þe cuntree
of kardoil þat he shulde take sire
Andrew of harcla and put him
vn to þe deth: and to bringe þis
þing vn to þe ende þe king sente
his commissioun: so þat þe same
Andrew was take att kardoill
and ledde vn to þe barre in maner
of an erl worþely arrayede and
wiþ a swerde gert aboute him &
hosede and sporede. Þo spake sire
Antoyne in þis manere: sire An
drewe quod he þe king put vpon
the þat for as muche as ȝe haue
ben oppede in ȝoure dedes he dede
vn to ȝow muchel honour and ma
de ȝow erl of kardoil. and þou as
atraitour vn to thy lord þe king and
laddest his peple of þis cuntree
þat shulde haue holpe him att
þe bataile of Beighlande. and
þou laddest hem away by the
cuntre of copelande and þorȝ
þe erldome of lancastre. wherfore
oure lorde þe king was discomfi
tede þe of þe scottis þorȝ thy
tresoun. and falsenes and ȝif þou
haddist come bitymes he had ȝ
had þe maistrie. and alle þat tre
soun þou dedest for the grete
somme of golde and siluer þat
þou vndirfenge of James douglas
a scott þe kinges enemye. and
oure lorde þe kinges wille is þat
ȝe þe ordre of knyȝthode by the
whiche þou vnderfenge al thyn
honour and worshep vpon þi bodye
ben al brouȝte vn to nouȝt and þi
state vndone: þat oþer knyȝtis of
lower degree mowe after the be
war þe whiche lorde hap þe auaun
cede hugely in diuerse cuntrees of
Engelonde. and þat alle mowe
take ensample by þe. her lorde
afterwarde treweliche for to serue.
Þo commanded he a knaue anon
to hewe of his spores wiþ his
heles. and after he lete breke the
swerde ouer his hede þe which
the þe kyng him ȝaf to kepe and
defende his lande þe wiþ whan
he made him erl of kardoill.
And after he lete him vnclothe
of his furrede tabarde and of his
hood and of his furrede cotis &
of his gerdell. and whenne þis
was done sire Antoyne saide vn
to him. Andrew now quod he art
þou no knyȝt but a knaue. and for
þi tresoun þe king wil þat þou ben
honged and drawe. and þin hede
smeten of. and þy bowell taken
out of þi body and þi bowell brent
byfore þe. and þy body quartrede
and þin heuede smeten of and.

sente vn to londone and þe hit
schall stonde vppon london brig
ge and þi sone quartered schullen
be sende to some townes of Enge
londe þat alle oþer mowe ben war
and chastised by þe and as Antoy
ne seide so hit was done al man
ner þing in þe laste day of
Octobre in þe ȝer of grace a þousan
de iij hundred and xxij ȝer and
þe sonne þo turnede into blood
as þe peple hit sawe and þat du
rede fro þe morne til hit was xj
att þe clokke of þe day ¶ Off þe
myracles þat god wrouzte for no
saint thomas loue of lancastre
wherfor þe king lete close the
cherche dores of pountfret of
þe prioure for no man schulde come
þerinne to þe body for to offren
Capitulo CCmo primo

And sone after þat the
good erl Thomas of lan
castre was martirede a
preste þat longe tyme had ben
blynde dremede in his slepyng
þat he schulde gon vn to the
hulle þere þat þe good erl Tho
mas of lancastre was done vn
to deþ and he schulde haue his
sighte azen and so he dremede
iij nyztes sewinge and þe prest
þo lete lede him to þe same hull
no And whanne he come to that
place þat he was martirede on
deuoutely he made þere his preyer
and prayede god and saint Tho
mas þat he moste haue his sizt
azen. and as he was in his pre
yers he leide his rizhte hande
vppon þe same place þat þe gode
man was martirede and a drope
of drye blode and smale sande
cleuede on his hande and þerwiþ
he striked his eyen. and anon
þorw þe myzte of god and of
saint Thomas of lancastre he
had his syghte azen and þanked
god almyghti þo and saint Thomas
And whenne þis myracle was
kyd amonge men þe peple come
þider many side and kneleden and
made here prayers att his tombe
þat is in þe priorie of pountfret
and prayede þat holy martir of
socour and of helpe and god
herde here prayers ¶ Also þer was
a zonge childe drenchede in a welle
in þe town of pountfret and was
ded iij dayes and iij nyghte
and men comen and leyde the
dede childe on saint Thomas
tombe þe holy martir and þe chil
de aros þe same day to lyf as
manye a man hit sawe and also
muche peple were out of here
mynde and god haþ sente hem
here mynde azen þorw vertue of
þat holy martir ¶ And also god
haþ zeuen þe to crokes hir goynge

And to crokede hys handes and
hys fete and to blynde also hys
sighte and to manye othe folke
hys heele þat hadde diuerse ma
ladies for þe loue of his good
martir ¶ Also þer was a riche ma
in Comidom in Gascoigne and
suche a maladye he had þat alle
his rizte syde rotede and felle
away fram him and men mizt
see his synewes and also his herte
and so he stanke þat vnneþe men
mizte come ner him wher fore
his frendis were fore him woun
der sory ¶ But att þe laste as god
wolde þei prayede to seynt Thomas
of lancastre þat he wolde praye
to almyghty god for þat persoun
and bihizte to gon to pountfret
for to done hys pilgrimage. and þe
good man sone after slepte ful
softe and dremede þat þe martir
saint Thomas come vn to him &
anoyntede ouer all his sike body
and þerwiþ þe good man awoke
and was all hole and his flesshe
was restorede azen þat bifore was
rotede and falle away for whi
che miracle þe gode man & his
frendis louede god and seint Tho
mas euer after ¶ And þis good ma
come in to Engelonde and nome
wiþ him foure felawes & come
to pountfret vn to þat holy mar
tir and dede his pilgrimage but
þe good man þat was sike com
þeder al nakede out his breche
and whanne þei hadde done þei
turnede home azen in to hys
contre and tolde of þe miracle
wher so þat þei come ¶ And also
ij. men haue ben helede þer of þe
morymale þorugh helpe of that
holy martir þough þat euel be holde
vncurable ¶ Whanne þe fren
sers herde þat god dede suche
miracles for his holy martir and
þei wolde bileue hit in no maner
wise. but saide openliche þat
hit was grete heresye suche ver
tue of him to by leue ¶ And
whanne þe knighte þe frensir þe
sone saw al þis doynge anon
he sente his messanger fram pon
fret þat he duellede þo to king
Edwarde þat þo was att Crane
ne att Sliptone for cause þat
þe king schulde vndo þe pilgri
mage ¶ And as þe seruande
þat was messanger wente
towarde þe king for to done his
message he come by þe hi lle þat
þe good man was done vn to his
deþ. and in þe same place he
made his ordure. and whanne
he had ydone he wente towarde
þe king and a stronge fluxe hym
come vppon as he come to yorke
and schedde alle his bowellis
att his fundament ¶ And whanne

oure hughe þe Spenser herde
þis tidynge somdel he was
adrad. And þoughte for to vn
done þe pilgrimage yf he myghte
by eny maner way. And to the
king wrotte and saide þat þey
schulde ben in grete sclaundre
þorughout alle cristendome for the
deþ of Thomas of lancastre yf þat
he suffrede þe peple done hire pil
grimage att pountfret and so he
compellede þe king þat he coman
ded to close þe cherche dores of
pountfret in þe whiche cherche
þe holy martir saint Thomas was
entirede and þus þai deden azen
alle ffraunchise of holy cherche so
þat forþe zere after mizte no pilgri
me come vnto þat holy body.
And for encheson þat þe monkes
suffrede men come and honore þat
holy bodye of saint Thomas þe
martir þorugh councele of sir hughe
þe spenser þe sone and þorugh con
seile also of maister Robert of
Baldok þe false pilede clerk þat
was þe kinges chaunceler þe
king consentede þat þai schul
de ben sette to hire wages and
lete make wardeins ouer hire
owene good longe tyme. And
þorugh comaundement of þe for
saide sir hughe þe spenser xiiij
Gascoignes weren made kepte þe
hulle þere þat þe good man saint

Thomas was done vnto his deþ
and by heueded so þat no pilgrime
mizte come by þat way. Ful wel
wende he to haue by nome cristis
mizte and his power. And þe grete
loos of miracles þat he schewede
for his martir Thomas þorughout
alle cristendome. And þat same
tyme þe king made Robert of
Baldok a piled clerk and a fals
þorugh prayer of sir hughe þe spen
ser þe sone chaunceler of Enge
londe. And in þe same tyme was
þe castell of Wallingforde hol
den azen þe king. þorugh þe pri
soners þat were wiþ inne þe cas
tell for saint Thomas quarell
of lancastre. wherfore þe peple
of þe cuntre come and toke the
castell vppon þe forsaide prisoners
wherfore sir John of Goldington
knizt. and sir Edmunde of the
Beche prison and a squyer þat me
callede Roger of Waltone were
takene and sent to þe king to
pountfret and þere þai were done
into prisoune and þe forsaide Roger
was sente vnto york and þere he
was drawe and hongede.
And anon after oure Roger mortymer
of wygemore brake out of
þe tour of londone and in this
maner oure Roger þe forsaide her
de þat he schulde ben drawe and
honged att londone in þe morne

after seint Laurence day. and
on þe day by fore he helde a faire
feste in þe toure of Londone. and
þo was Sir Stephene Segrave con-
stable of London and many grete
men wiþ him. And whenne
þei schulde soupe þe forsaide
Stephene sente for alle þe officers
of þe toun and þei come and soped
wiþ him. and when þei schulde
take here leue of him. a squyer þat
me callede Stephene þat was ful
priue wiþ þe forsaide Rog[er] þoruȝ
here conceil ȝaf hem alle suche
drinke þat þe leste of hem alle
slepte .ij. dayes and .ij. nyȝt and
in þe mene tyme he scapede a-
way by water þat is to seyn by þe
Thamyse and wente ouer þe see
and helde him in Fraunce wherfore
þe king was sore annoyede and
þo putt þe same Stephene out of
his constablerye. How þe quene
Isabelle wente into Fraunce for to
treten of pees by twene hir lord
þe king of Englonde and the
king of Fraunce hir broþer. ca° cc^mo ij°

The king wente þo vnto
Londone and þe þoruȝ co-
unseile of Sir Hughe the
Spenser þe fader and of his sone
and of maister Robert of Baldok
a fals pilede clerk his chaunce-
ler lete saise þo alle þe quenes
londes into his owene hande &

also alle þe landes þat were Sir
Edwardus his sones and were
þo putt to here wages aȝens alle
maner resoun and þat was þoruȝ
þe falsenesse of þe Spensers. And
whenne þe king of Fraunce þat
was quene Isabelles broþer herde
of þis falsenesse he was sore an-
noyede aȝens þe king of Englon-
de and his false counceilers. Wher-
fore he sente a lettre vnto kinge
Edwarde vnder his seal þat he
schulde come into Fraunce att a cer-
tain day for to done his homage
and þerto he somnede him. elles
he schulde lese alle Gascoigne.
And so hit was ordeynede in En-
gelonde þoruȝ þe king and his
counseile þat quene Isabelle
schulde wende into Fraunce for to
trete of pees bitwene hire lord
and hire broþer. and þat Olyuer
of Yngham schulde wende into
Gascoigne and haue wiþ him
an þousande men and mo of ar-
mes to ben Senescal and wardeyn
of Gascoigne. and so hit was or-
deynede þat quene Isabelle wen-
te þo ouer see and come into
Fraunce and wiþ here wente
Sir Aymer of Valence erl of Pen-
brok þat was þe mordred soden-
ly in a priue sege. but þat was
þoruȝ Goddes vengaunce. for he was
one of þe iustices þat consentede

to seint Thomas Erl of Lan
caster and wolde neuer after
warde repente him of that wyc
kede dede. And att þat tyme
Sir Oliuer of yngham wente ouer
þe see in to Gascoigne and dede
muche harme to þe king of ffraunce
and so gatte aȝen þat king Edwar
de had lost and muche more þer to.

**How king Edwarde sente sir
Edwarde his sone þe eldest in
to ffraunce. cap° CC^mo iij°.**

The quene Isabelle nad
butt a quarter of ȝere in
ffraunce duellede þat sir
Edwarde his eldest sone ne ax
ede leue for to wende in to fraun
ce for to speke wiþ his moder
Isabell þe quene. and þe kinge
his fader graunted him wiþ good
wille. and saide to him go my
faire sone in goddes blessinge
and myne and þanke for to come
as hastely aȝen as þou myghte
and he come ouer þe see and come
into ffraunce. And þe king of ffraunce
his uncle underfonge him wiþ
muchel honour and saide vn to his
faire sone ȝe ben welcome and
for cause þat ȝoure fader come
nouȝt for to done his homage
for þe duchie of Gyene as his
auncestres were wonede for to
done y ȝeue ȝow þat lordschipe
to holde hit of me in heritage as
al ȝoure auncestres deden byfore
ȝow. wherfore he was callede
duke of Gyene.

**How kinge
Edwarde exilede his quene Isa
belle and Edwarde his eldeste
sone. cap° CC^mo iiij°.**

Whenne king Edwarde
of Engelonde harde
talle how þe king of
ffraunce had ȝeue þe duchye of
Gyene vn to sir Edwarde his
sone wiþ out consente and wil
of him. and þat his sone had
underfonge þe duchie he bicome
wonder wroþ and sente to his
sone by his lettre and to his wif
also. þat þei schulde come aȝen
in to Engelonde wiþ al þe haste
þat þei myȝte. The quene
Is°. and sir Edwarde hire sone
were wonder sore adrad of the
kinges manace and of his wraþ.
and principally þe falsenesse of
þe Spencers boþe of þe fader and
of þe sone and ~~att~~ his comman
dement þei wolde nouȝt come
wherfore king Edwarde was ful
sore annoyede and lete make
a crie att London þat yf quene
Isabelle and Edwarde hire sone
come nouȝt in to Engelonde þat
þei schulde ben holde as enemyes
boþe to þe reaume and to þe co
roune. and for þat þei wolde
nouȝt come in to Engelonde but

boþe were exilede þe moder and
þe sone. ¶ Whanne þe Quene
Isabelle herde this tydinge she
was sore adrad to ben shent þo
rugh þe false contryvynge of þe Spen
sers. and wente wiþ the knyghtis
þat were exilede oute of Englon
de for Seint Thomas cause of Lan
castre þat is to seyn. Sir Roger Morty
mer of Wygemore. Sir William
Trussel. Sir Iohn of Cromwell &
many oþer gode knyghtis ¶ Wher
fore þei nome here conseile and
ordeynede amonges hem for to
make a mariage bytwene the
duke of Gyene þe kinges sone of
Englonde. and þe Erles douzter
of Henaud þat was a noble knyzt
of name and a doughty in his ty
me. and yf þat þing mizte ben
brouzte aboute and stande. þei
trowede wiþ the helpe of god. &
wiþ his helpe to recovere his
heritage in Englonde where
of þei were put þorugh þe false
contryvinge of þe Spensers ¶ How
king Edwarde þorugh counceil of
þe Spensers sente to þe dossepiers
of ffraunce þat þei schulde helpe
þat þe quene Isabelle and hire
sone Sir Edwarde weren exiled
oute of ffraunce. Cap°. cc°. iiij°.

Whanne king Edwarde
and þe Spensers herde
how quene Isabel and Sir
Edwarde hire sone had alied
hem to þe erl of Henaude and to
hem þat were exilede out of En
glonde for enchesoun of Thomas
of Lancastre þey were so sory þat
þey nyste what to done wherfor
sir Hughe þe Spenser þe sone say
de unto sir Hughe his fader in
þis manere wise and saide fa
der acursede be þe tyme and þe
counsele þat ever ze consentede
þat Quene Isabel schulde gon into
ffraunce for to treten of acorde by
twene þe king of Englonde &
hire broþer þe king of ffraunce for þat
was zoure counsaile for att þat
tyme for soþe zoure witte failled
for y drede me sore leste þorugh
hire and hire sone we schulleth
be shent but yf we take the
better counsaile ¶ Now sire se
res understondiþ how in Evellous
felonye and falshede þe Spensers
ymaginede and caste for privelyche
þey lete falle .v. barell ferers
wiþ silver. þe summe amountede
v. ml. pounde and þei sente the
barell over see priveliche by an
aliene þat me callede Arnolde
of Spaigne þat was a burgeys
of Londone þat he schulde gon
to þe dussepiers of ffraunce þat þei
schulde preyen and speke to the
king of ffraunce þat Quene Isabel
and hire sone Edwarde were

dryue and exilede out of Fraun-
ce. and amonge alle oþer þinges
þat þey were brouȝte to þe deth
as priuely as þei miȝte. but alle
myghty god wolde nouȝt so.
ffor whanne þis Arnolde was
in þe hye see he was take wiþ
Selaunders þat metten him in þe
see and token him and ladde hym
to here lorde Erl of Henaude &
muche ioye was made for that
takynge. and att þe laste this
Arnolde priuely stale awey fro
þennes and come to Londone.
And of this takynge and of oþer
þinges þe Erl of Henaude sende
to þe Queene Is. Dame make
ȝow mery and beþ of good chere
for ȝe beþ more richer þanne ȝe
wende haue ben. and take ȝe
þese v. barelles ful of siluer þat
were sente to þe dispensers of
ffraunce for to quelle ȝow and ȝour
sone Edwarde. and þenkith haste-
ly for to wende in to Engelonde
and take ȝe wiþ ȝow Sir John of
Henaude my broþer and CC men
of armes for any of hem of ffraunce
in whom ȝe haue had grete trust
had grete deynte ȝow for to storue
and almyghty god graunte ȝow
grace ȝoure enemyes to ouercome.
þe queene Is. sente þo porz He-
naude and fflaundres for here
sowdiours and ordeynede here
eny day for to wende in to Enge-
londe aȝen and so sche had in
hir companye Sir Edmunde of
Wodestok þat was Erl of Kent
þat was Sir Edwardus broþer of
Engelonde.

How king Edwarde lete kepe þe costes by þe see and lete crie alle þe pris men of armes and fote men also þorouȝ out Engelonde. Cap°. CCmo. vj°.

Whanne king Edwarde
herde telle þat þe que-
ne Isabelle and Edwar-
de hire sone wolde come into
Engelonde wiþ menye aliens
and wiþ hem þat were outlawe-
de out of Engelonde for hire re-
belnesse. he was sore adradde
to ben putt adoun and lese his
kingdome. wherfore he order-
nede for to kepe his castell in
Wales as wel as in Engelonde
wiþ vitailles and hire appaile
and lete kepe his riuers and
also þe see costes. wher of þe Cinq
portez token to kepe hem and al-
so þe see. And also he comaun-
ded forþermore by his letteres order-
nede þat eny hundrede and
wapentache of Engelonde too
persons as wel of men of armes
as of men of foote and þat þei
schulde ben putt in twentysome
and in hundredsome. & comaun-
ded þat alle þo men were redy

Whenne any outlawes and there
were made for to pursue and take
þe aliences þat comen into En-
galonde for to brynnge hym þe
lande and for to putt hym out of
his kingdome ¶ And more ouer he
lete cr[i]e þoruȝ his patent in eu-
ery faire and euery market of Enge-
londe þat þe quene Isabelle &
oure Edwarde his eldest sone &
þe erl of Kent þat þey were take
and oonly kepte withoute eny
maner harme vn to ham doyn-
ge and alle oþer manere peple þat
come wiþ hem anon smyte of
here hedes withoute eny raun-
sone ¶ And what man þat
miȝte bringe Sir Rogers hede
Mortymer of Wygemore schul-
de haf an hundred poundes of
monee for his trauaille and for-
þermore he ordeynede by his pa-
tent and commanded to make
a fire vpon euery hye hille bysides
þe ryueres and in lowe cuntres
for to make hye bekenes of tym-
bre þat yf hit so were þat the
aliences come vn to þe lande by
nyght þat men schulde tende
þe bykenes þat þe cuntre miȝte
be warnede and come and mete
here enemyes and in þe same ty-
me deyde Sir Rog[er] Mortimer his
uncle in þe tour of Londone.

¶ How þe quene Isabelle and hire
Edwarde duke of Gyene hir
sone come to lande att Herwiche
and how þei deden. Ca. ccmo. iiijmo.

The quene Isabelle and Sir
Edwarde hire sone Duke
of Gyene, Sir Edmunde
of Wodestoke erl of Kent and Sir
Johan þe erles broþer of Henaud and
here companye drad nouȝt þe ma-
nace of þe king ne of his traytours.
for þei truste alle in goddes grace
and come vn to Herwiche in South-
folke þe x. day in þe monthe of
Octobre and in þe ȝere of grace apon
lande iii. hundred and xxvi.
¶ And att þe same tyme king Edwar-
de was att Londone in þe Tour
att his mete and a messangere co-
m into the halle and sayde þat þe
quene Is. was come to lande att
Herwiche and had brouȝte in hire
companye Sir Johan of Henaude
and wiþ hym men of armes wiþ-
oute nombre ¶ And wiþ þat wor-
de Sir Hughe þe Spenser þe fader
spake and þus to þe king saide
my most worschepful lorde king
of Engelonde now wolle ȝe ma-
ke good chere for certeinly þey
ben alle oures ¶ þe king saide
þis worde comfortable ȝitt he
was ful sorowefulle and pensif
in herte and þe king had nouȝt
ȝitt fulliche eten þat þer ne come
in to þe halle anoþer messangere &

saide þat þe Quene Io. was arryuede att herwiche besides Schipwiche in Southfolk Sire Hughe þe Spenser þe fader spake to þe messanger and saide telle soth in good fay quod he to the messangere my feyre frende ys she come wiþ a grete strengþe certis sire sayd he for to say hee ne haueth in hire companye butt viii hundred men of armes & wiþ þat word sire hughe þe spenser þe fader quoke wiþ an hye voys and saide allas allas we bep alle bytrayede. for certis wt so litil power sche nad neuer com to londe butt folk of this lande were vn to hire consente. and þerfore after mete þai nome hire counseile and wente towarde Wales for to arere þe walsshe men azens Quene Isabelle & Edwarde hire sone al for to fizte and so þai were in purpos any chone

Thow maister Walter of Stapletone bisshope of Excetre þat was þe kinges tresorer was byheded at londone as ct into

And in þe same tyme king Edwarde was þere adradde leste men of londone wolde ʒelde hem vn to þe quene Isabelle & to hire Edwarde his sone. wherfore he sente maister Water of Stapletone his tresorer for to ben wardein and keper of the citee of londone wiþ þe mayr. And so he come to þe Gildehalle and axede þe keyes of þe ȝates of þe Citee þorugh vertue and strengthe of his commission & wolde haue had þe kepinge of þe citee And þe commners answerde and saide. þat þai wolde kepe þe Citee to þe honour of king Edwarde and of Isabelle þe Quene & of þe duk þe kinges sone wiþ oute any mo. T þe bisshope was þo sore annoyede and swore his oth þat þai alle schulde abye. Anon as þe king were come oute of wales and þe commners alle anon of þe citee nome the bisshope and ladde him amydde þe chepe and þere þai smeten of his hede and sette his hede in his righte hande. and after þai be heueded. ij. of his squyers þat helde wiþ þe bisshop. and on of hem me callede William of walle þat was þe bisshopis neuew. and þat oþer me callede Iohn of Padyngtone. and also þai nome a burgeys of Londone þat me callede Iohn Marschall þat was sire hughe þe Spensers aspye þe fader and smeten of his heuede also.

And in þe same tyme þat same

bisshop had in londone a faire
tour in makynge in his clos vpon
þe ryuer of þe Thamyse þat was
wiþ oute temple barre and hym
faillede stoon for to make þerof
an ende. wherfore he comaun
ded his men for to gon to the
cherche of þe frere carmes and
þere þei nomen stoon to make þere
wiþ þe tour. and moche sande
and morter and olde robous þer
was lefte. ¶ And for þe despite
þat þe bisshope had done to
holy cherche and he and his
two squyers were buryede in
þat sande as þouȝ þei hadde
ben houndes. and þere þei leyen
xj. wokes. til þat þe quene Isa
belle sente hire lettres to the
comuners and prayede hem þat
þey wolde suffren and graunte
þat þe bisshope moste bene take
oute of þat place and ben beryed
att Excestre att his owene cherche
and so he was. and his .ij. squy
ers were buryede att saint Cleme
tis cherche wiþ oute temple barre
And hit was no wonder þouȝ
þat bisshop deide in euele deth
for he was a coueitouse man and
had wiþ him no mercye. and euele
counceillede þe king. and sone after
was Reynolde of Spaigne taken
he þat was assentaunt to haue
had þe viij þousande pounde of
siluer. in viij barell feres. vn
to þe dispensers of ffraunce for
to helpe and haste þe quene
Isabell to hire deth and Edwar
de hire sone also. And þis Reynol
de was done vnto þe deþ wiþ
oute þe citee of londone.

How king Edwarde and sire hughe
þe spenser were takene and þe
Erl of Arundell. Cap. ccmo. ixo.

When king Edwarde
had sente maister Water
of Stapeltone his tre
sorer into londone for to kepe þe
citee vnto him. aȝen þe quene
Is. his wyf and aȝen Edwar
de hire sone. anon him self no
me wiþ him sire hughe þe spen
ser þe fader and sire hughe his
sone. and sire Iohn Erl of Arun
dell and maister Robert Baldok
his chaunceler. and scapede
clerk and nomen hire way to
warde Brystowe. and þere þe king
abode a litel tyme and made sire
hughe þe spencer þe fader as
conestable and keper of the
castel. and þe king and peple
abouen saide wente into shippe
and saillede towarde Walys
noune no lake of þe vitail
ne of noon in the kinges hou
solde and wente one into Wa
lys for to arere þe walsshe men
aȝens dame Isabelle þe quene

and duke Edwarde of Gyen hire
sone and his companye ¶ But
þe quene and þe duk hire sone
and þe erl of kent and sire John
of Henaude and þei wente and
pursuede aft[er] hem and hire power
come and encressede euery day. so
att þe laste þe kinge was taken vp
pon an hill in Walys. and sire hughe
þe Spenser þe sone in þat oþer side
of þe same hill. and þe fals pile
de clerk maister Robert of Baldok
þe fals by side hem. and were brozt
azen in to Engelonde as almyzti
god wolde. and þe king him self
was in sauf kepinge in þe castel
of Kenylworthe and him kepte
sire Henry þat was seint Thomas
broþer of lancastre. and sire hughe þe
Spensere þe fader come and putt
him vnto þe quenes grace and to
sire Edwarde hire sone duke of Gy
ene ¶ But sire hughe þe Spencere
after þe tyme þat he was take
nolde ete no maner mete ne þe
drinke no maner drinke for his
wiste to haue no mercy but onlich
that he wiste he schulde ben dede
and þe quene and hire counseile
þo had ordeynede þat he schulde
haue ben don to dep att londone
but he was so feble for his mu
chel fastinge þat he was dede
almost for fastynge and þerfore
hit was ordeynede þat he schulde
haue his iugement att Herefor
de and att a place of þe towne
his hood was take fro his hede
and also fram Robert of Baldok
þat was a pilede clerk also þat
was false and þe kinges chaun
celer. and men sette vppon hire
hedes chapelottz of scharpe net
teles and .ii. trumpers blewe in
hire eres wiþ .ii. grete buglis hor
nes vppon þe .ii. prisoners þat men
myzte here þe blowynge out wiþ
hornes mo þan a þousande. and
one Symounde of Redinge þe
kinges marchal bifore hem bare
hire armes vppo a sper reuersede.
in tokene þat þei schulde ben vn
done for euermore ¶ And vppo
þe morne was sire hughe þe Spen
sere þe sone dampnede to dep and
was drawe and hongede and
by heuededd and his bowellis
taken out of his body and his
bowellis brente. and after he was
quarterede. and his quarters sente to
foure townes of Engelonde. and
his hede sente to londone brigge
And þis Symounde for encheson
þat he despisede þe quene so he
was drawe and hongede in a
stage made amyd þe forsayde sire
hughes galwes. and þe same
day aftir his penaunce was sire John
of Arundell by heuede for he
was one of sire hughe þe Spenceres

conntreleres: And anon aftir was Sir Hughe þe Spenser drawe and honged and byheded att Bristowe And aftir honged azen by þe armes wiþ .ij. stronge ropes and þe .iiij. day aftir he was hewe a-to peces and houndes eten him and for þat encheson þat þe king had zeuen þe erl of Wynchestir his hede hit was sad þerfore and putte vpon a spere. And þe false Baldok was sent to Londone and þer he deide in prisoun amonge þeves. for men dide him no more reverence þan me wolde done vn-to an hounde And so enden þe traitours of Engelonde blessed be almyghti god. And hit was no wonder for þorugh hire conceile þe good erl Thomas of Lancastre was done vnto deþ. And alle þat helden wiþ Thomas of Lancastre þorugh þo traitours were vndone and alle hire heires disheritede.

How king Edwarde was putte a-doun and his dignite bynome him. Capitulo CC^mo iiij^xx x.

Anon aftir þis was done þe Quene Isabelle and Edwarde hire sone and alle þe grete lordes of Engelonde att on assente: sente to king Edwarde to þe castel of Kelyngworþ þer þat þe king was in kepinge vnder þe warde of Sir Iohn Hothum þat was þo bisshop of Ely and of Sir Iohn of Pracy a barown for encheson þat he schulde ordeyne his parlement att a certein place in Engelonde for to redresse and amende þe state of þe reaume. And king Edwarde hem answerede and saide lordes quoþ he ze wetep ful wel how hit is. lo here here my seal y zeue zow my power to ordeyne a parlement where þat ze wile: And þei nome hire leue of him and come azen to þe barouns of Engelonde: and whenne þei had þe kinges patent of this þinge and þei schewed hit to þe lordes: And þo was ordeynede þat þe parlement schulde ben att Westmynstre att vtas of Seint Hillary and alle þe grete lordes of Engelonde lete ordeyne for hem þer azens þat tyme þat þe parlement schulde be And att whiche day þat þe parlement was þe king wolde nouzt come þer for no maner þing as he had sette him self and assignede. And noþeles þe barouns sente to him o tyme and other and he swore by goddes soule þat he nolde come þere. wherfore it was ordeinede by alle þe grete lordes of Engelonde þat he schulde no lenger ben king but ben deposed and saide þat þei wolde corone king Edwarde his sone þe elder þat was duke of Gyene and

sente þis tydinge to þe king þere
he was in warde vnder Sire Iohn
erl of Garenne and Sire Iohn of
Bothum þat was bisshop of Ely
and Sire Henry percye a baroun
and Sire William Trussell a
knyȝt þat was wiþ þe erl Sire
Thomas of Lancastre for to ȝelde
vp here homages vnto him for
alle hem of Engelonde ¶ And
Sire William Trussel saide þese
wordes. Sire Edwarde for enche-
son þat ȝe haue trayede ȝour
peple of Engelonde and haue
vndone meny grete lordes of
Engelonde wiþoute any cause
but now ȝe bep wiþstande þan-
kede be god. and also for enche-
son þat ȝe wolde nouȝt come
to þe parlement as ȝe ordeynede
att Westmynster as in ȝoure owne
letter patent ȝoo conteynede for
to trete wiþ ȝoure liegemen as
a king schulde. and þerfore þorȝ [?]
alle þe commune assent of alle
þe lordes of Engelonde y telle
vnto ȝow þese wordes ¶ ȝe
schulleth vnderstande sire þat
þe barouns of Engelonde att
on assent wile þat ȝe ben no
more king of Engelonde but
outeliche [?] hauen put ȝow out of
ȝoure realte for euermore ¶ And
þe bisshop of Ely saide þo to þe
king Sire Edwarde here y ȝelde
vp feaute and homage for alle
þe erche bisshoppis & bisshopis
of Engelonde and for alle þe
clergye ¶ Tho saide Sire Iohn erl
of Garenne Sire Edwarde y ȝel-
de vp here vnto ȝow feaute &
homage for me and for alle þe
erlis of Engelonde ¶ And Sire
Henry þe percye ȝaf vp also þe
his homage for him and for alle
þe barouns of Engelonde.
¶ And þo saide Sire William Trussell
y ȝelde vp now sire vnto ȝow
myn homage for me and for alle
þe knyghtis of Engelonde and
for hem alle þat holden by seriaun-
tie. or by eny oþer maner þing of
ȝow so þat fro þis day afterwar-
de ȝe schulle nouȝt be claymede
king nor for king ben holde.
but fram þis tyme afterwarde
ȝe schull ben holde a singuler
man. of alle þe peple. and so
þei wente þannes vnto Londone
þere þat þe lordes of Engelonde he
abode. and Sire Edwarde abode
in prisoun vnder good kepinge
and þat was þe day of conuersioun
of seint paule in þe xx ȝere of
his regne ¶ Prophecie of
Merlyn declarede of king Edwar-
de þe sone of king Edwarde cap.

Of þis kinge ¶ Ca. cxlimo [?]
Edwarde prophecide Mer-
lyn and saide þat þere schulde

come a goot out of Car þt schul
de haue hornes of syluer and
a berde as white as snawe ꝛ
a drop schulde come out of his
nose þrilles þat schulde bytoke
ne muche harme hunger and deþ
of þe peple and grete losse of the
londe and þat in þe bygynnynge
of his regne schulde ben haunted
muche lecherye and sayde soþ
allas þe tyme ¶ ffor kyng Edwar
de þat was kyng Edwardus sone
þat was borne att Carnarvan in
Walys· for soþ he hadde hornes
as siluer· and a berde as snawe
whenne he was made prince of
Walys· and to muche he 3af hym
vnto reste and to solace ¶ And
soþ saide Merlyn in his prophecie
þat þer schulde come out of his
nose a drop· for in his tyme was
grete hunger amonge þe pore
peple· and stronge deþ amonge
þe riche þat deide in straunge
londe wiþ muchel sorowe and
in werre in Scotlande and after
he loste Scotlande and Gascoig
ne and whiles þat him self was
kyng þer was muche lecherye haun
tede ¶ And also Merlyn tolde and
saide þat þis goot schulde seche
þe flo of lyf and of deth· and he
saide soþ for he sponsede Isabelle
þe kyngis doughter of ffraunce
¶ And in his tyme Merlyn saide þt

þer schulde ben made brugges
of folk vppon diches of þe see
and þat was ful wel seene att
Bannokesborne in Scotlande
whenne he was discomfitede
þere of þe Scottis ¶ And Merlyn
tolde also þat stones schulde
falle fram castelles· and menye
tounes schulde be made playn
and he saide soþ for whenne
kyng Edwarde was discomfitede
in Scotlande and come tho South
warde þe Scottis bisegede castell
and dede ham muchel harme ꝛ
brente tounes vnto þe harde erthe
¶ And afterwarde Merlyn tolde þt
an Egle schulde come out of Cor
newaile þat schulde haue feþers
of golde þat of pride schulde
haue no pier and schulde despise
lordeschepis of blood· and after he
schulde dye þorugh a bere att Gauer
siche and þat prophecie was ful wel
knowe and founde soþ· for by þe
Egle ys vnderstonde Pieres
of Gauaston þat was erl of Cor
newayle þat was a wonder proude
man· þat despisede þe baronage
of Engelonde but afterwarde
he was byheded att Gauersiche
þorugh þe erl of Lancastre and þe erl
of Warwyk ¶ And Merlyn tol
de þat in his tyme hit schulde
seme þat þe bere schulde brenne
and þat a bataile schulde be done

vppon an arme of þe see in a felde
arayede like a sheelde wheþer schul
de dye menye white hedes and
he seide soth for by þe shauynge
of þe berde · þo bytokenede þe grete drede
þorugh cuttinge of swerde att þat
bataille ordeynede in a felde as
a sheelde vppon an arme of þe see þo
bytokenede þe bataille of Mitone
for þe come þe Scottis in maner of
a schelde in maner of a wynge ⁊
quelde vppon whate men of rely
gioun prestis and seculers wher
fore þe Scottis callede þat bataille
in despite of Englissche men the
white bataille ¶ And after a ver
syn seide þat þe forsaide Bere schul
de done þe Goot miche harme ⁊
þat schulde ben vppon þe Southwest
And also vppon his blode ⁊ saide
also þat þe Goot schulde lese mu
che del of his lande til þe time
þat schame schulde him ouercome
And þan he schulde cloþen him wiþ
a lyounis skyn and schulde wynne
azene þat he had lost and muchel
more þorugh a peple þat schulde co
me out of þe Northwest þat schul
de make him ben drad and him a
venge of his enemyes þorugh coun
ceile of ij · wolues þat ferst schul
de ben in perile to ben vndone ⁊
þat þe ij · wolues schulde wende
ouer þe see into a straunge lande
and þe þei schulde duelle tille a

certein tyme and after þei schul
de come into Engelonde azen · ⁊
þo ij wolues schulde done muchel
harme vnto meny on and þat þey
schulde conceile þe Goot for to
mene werre azens þe forsaide Bere
and þat þe goot and þe wolues
schulde come in to an arme of the
see att Bartoun vp Trent ⁊ schulde
wende ouer and þat for drede þe
Bere schulde flee wiþ a swan in
his companye vnto Burgh toward
þe North þorugh an vnkynde cout
puttere · and þat þe swan þan schul
de be slayn wiþ sorowe · and the
Bere schulde be slayn ful neigh
his owene nest þat schal stonde
vppon Pountfret vppon which the
sonne schal shede his beemes ⁊
menye folk him schal seke for þe
muchel vertue · and he saide full
sothe · ffor þe good erl Thomas
of Lancaster was born in þe North
west and cosyn to þe kynges sone
of his vncle · and by lawe he made
þe king lese miche lande þe which
he had purchaced wilfullyche til att
þe laste þe king þer of toke schame
and him self fellede with quelle
and after he gatte azen þat he had
lost ⁊ miche more þorugh folk þat
he lete assemblee out of þe North
west þat made him to ben a drad
and vengede hym of his barouns
þorugh conceile of sir hughe þe spencer

þe fader and of

þe fader and of Sire Hughe his sone
þat byfore were outlawede of
Engelonde for her wickednesse
But afterwarde come azen into
Engelonde Sire þe Spenser þe fader
out of ffraunce and so muche coun
ceylede þe king þat he schulde
werre vppon Thomas erl of Lan
castre so þat þe kinge and the
Spensers and þe erl of Arundel
and here power mette wiþ Tho
mas of Lancastre att Burtone vp
Trent and him þe discomfitede
and Sire Humfray erl of Herforde
was in his companye and after
fledden þe forsaide Thomas and
Humfray wiþ here companye att
Burbrigge with Sire Andrewe of
Herecla þat ys callede þe vnkynde
out putter · and also Sire Symonde
Warde erl of zorke þei come and
mette wiþ Thomas of Lancastre
with an huge companye & hem
þe discomfitede and in þat scom
fiture þe erl of Herforde was
slayn vppon þe brugge cowardly
wiþ a sper in þe fundament &
þe Erl Thomas was taken and
lad vnto Pountfret and thore he
was byheded besides his owne
castel But afterwarde menye
man him souzte for myracles
þat god dede for him ¶ And in
þat tyme merlyn saide for so
rowe and harme spake of his
lande wherfore menye landes
schulde ben vppon him þe bolder
and he sayde sooþ for by enche
soun of his barouns þat were
done to deþ for Seint Thomas
quarell of Lancastre peple of me
nye landes bicomen þe bolder
for to meue werre vppon þe king
for here bloode was turnede to
menye naciouns ¶ And afterwar
de merlyn tolde and saide þat
þe forsayde owles schulde done
moche harme vnto þe flode of lyf
and of deth and þey schulde brin
ge here vnto muchel desese so
þat sche schulde wende ouer the
see in to ffraunce for to make pees
to þe flour delice · and þe sche
schulde abide til on a tyme þat
here seed schulde come and se
che hire · and þe þei schulde abide
bore til a tyme þat þei schulde
clothen hem with grace · and tho
ij · owles sche schulde take & put
hem vnto strong deþ · and þat
prophecie was wel knowe and was
ful sooth · for Sire Hughe þe Spenser
þe fader and Sire Hughe þe sone
dede muche sorowe and persecucion
vnto þe quene Isabelle þorugh here
purueiement to here lorde þe king
and so þei ordeynede amonges
hem þat sche was put vnto here
wages þat is to seyn · xx s in þe day
wherfor þe king of ffraunce here broþer

was wonder sore annoyede and
sente in to Engelonde by hys lett[re]
vnto king Edwarde þat he schul
de come to his parlement to
Parys in Ffraunce. But king Edwar
de was sore adrad for to come
þere for he wende to haue aftre
til þat he hadde made good for
þat trespasse þat þe Spensers had do
ne and also grete harme þat þey
had done vnto þe Quene Isabelle
his wif. wherfore þorugh hire ordi
naunce and hire consente of the
Spensers þe quene Isabell wen
te ouer see in to Ffraunce for to make
acorde bitwene king Edwarde &
þe king of Ffraunce hire broþer ¶ And
þe duellede stille in Ffraunce til Ed
warde hire eldest sone come hir
to seche. and so þai duellede þe
boþe til þat aliaunce was made
bitwene hem and þe gentil erl
of Henaude. þat yf þey wiþ her
help mighte destroye and ouercome
þe venym and þe falsenesse of
þe Spensers þat sire Edwarde
schulde schulde spouse dame
Philipp þe worschepful lady and
þe elles doughter of Henaude.
wherfore þe Quene Isabelle &
sire Edwarde hire sone and sir
Edmunde of Wodestoke þe kin
gis broþer of Engelonde. and sire
John of Henaude and sire Rog[er]
Mortymer of Wygemore and sir

Thomas Rocelyn and sire John
of Cromwelle. and sir William
Trussel and menye oþer of þe
aliaunce of þe gentil erl Thomas
of Lancastre þat were exilede
out of Engelonde and for his
querell and were disherytede
of hire londes ordeynede hem
a grete poer and arryuede att
Herwyche in Southfolke & sone
after warde þai pursueden þe Spen
sers til þat þai were taken and
put vnto spetous deþ as bifore
is sayde and hire companye &
also for þe grete falsenes þat they
deden vnto king Edwarde and
his peple ¶ And Merlyn saide
also more þat þe goot schulde
ben put in to grete disese and
in grete anguisshe and in grete
sorowe he schulde lede his lyf.
And he saide soþ for after the
time þat king Edwarde was
take he was put into warde
til þat þe Spensers were put
vnto þe deþ ¶ And also for en
chesoun þat he wolde nouȝt co
men to his owene parlement att
Londone as he had ordeynede &
assignede him self and to his
baronage. and also wolde nouȝt
gouerne and reule his peple ne
his reaume as a kinge schulde
done. Summe of þe Baronis
of Engelonde comen and ȝelde

vp hire homages vnto him for
hem and for alle þe oþer of the
reaume in þe day of conuersioun
of seint paule and in þe ȝer of
his regne xx. and þei put him
out of his realte for euermore
And euer he leuede his lyf aft-
warde in muche sorowe and an-
guisshe ¶ Off king Edwarde
þe þridde after þe conquest. ca. cc.imo

And after þis king ¶ xij.imo
Edwarde of Carnaruan
regnede sir Edwarde
of wyndesore his sone. þe whi-
che was crounede king and anoyn-
tede att westmynsthe þorȝ con-
sente and wille of alle þe grete
lordes of þe reaume þe sonne day
in Candelmasse eue of oure lady
in þe ȝer of grace a þousande þre
hundred and xxvij. þat was þat
tyme of age but xv ȝer. and for
enchesoun þat his fader was
in warde in þe castell of kenil-
worthe and als was put down
of his realte þe reaume of Enge-
londe was as with out kinge
fro þe feste of seint kateryne in
þe ȝere abouesaide vnto the
feste of Candelmasse. and tho
were alle maner plees of the
kinges benche afterward ¶ And
þo was commanded to alle
þe shereffes of Engelonde þorȝ
writte to warne þe pties defen-
daunt þorȝ comunynge aȝen.
And also ferþermore þat alle the
prisoners þat were in þe kinges Gayo-
les þat were attachede þorȝ hugh
Spenser schulde be late gon quyte
The king Edwarde after his coro-
nacioun att þe prayer and byse-
chinge of his lieges of þe reaume
grauntede hem a chartre of stedfast
pees to alle hem þat wolde hit
aske ¶ And sir Iohn of henaude
and his companye nome his
leue of þe king and of þe lordes
of þe reaume and turnede home
vnto hire owene cuntree aȝen.
and eueryche of hem had full riche
ȝiftes eny man as he was of va-
lue and of state ¶ And þo was
Engelonde in pees and in reste
and grete loue bytwene þe king
and his lordes and comenliche
englisshe men sonde amonges
¶ hem þat þe deuel was dede.
But þe tresoun of þe king his fa-
der and þe tresoun of þe Spencers
bothe of þe fader and of þe sone.
and þe tresoun of þe Erlis of Arun-
del and of maister Robert Baldok
þat was þe kinges chaunceler.
was departede after þe Quene Isa-
belles ordinaunce. And sir Roger
Mortimer of wygmore so þat
þe king had no þing þerof but att
hire wille & hire deliuerance nor
of hire landes as afterwarde ȝe

schal here more openlocker.

How kyng Edwarde wente to Stanhope for to mete þe Scottis. Capitulo CC^mo xiij^mo.

And ȝitt in þe same tyme was kyng Edwarde in þe castell of Kenylworth vnder þe kepinge of Sire Henry þat was erl Thomas broþer of Lancastre þat þo was Erl of Leycestre and þe king grauntede him þe erldom of Lancastre þat þe king had seisede in to his hande and putt out Thomas of Lancastre his broþer. And þo was he erl of Lancastre and of Leycestre and eke Stewarde of Engelonde as his broþer was in his tyme. But sire Edwarde þat was king Edwardis fader made sorowe withouten ende for cause þat he myght not speke wiþ his wyf ne wiþ his sone. wherfore hit was muche meschief. for þouȝ hit were so þat he was lad and reulede by false counseile. ȝitt he was king Edwardis sone & come of þe worthyest blode of þe worlde. And þilke to wham he was wonede for to ȝeve grete ȝiftis & large were most pruce wiþ the king his owene sone and þey were his enemyes boþe by nyȝte and by day. And purvayde for to make debate and contak bitwene him & his sone and Isabelle his wyf.

But þe frere prechours were to him good frendis evermore and caste and ordeynede boþe nyȝt and day how þei myȝte bringe him out of prison. And amonge hire companye þat þe freres prechours had brouȝt þer was a frere þat me callede Dunheued and he had ordeynede and gadred a grete companye of folk for to helpe att þat nede. But þe frere was take and putt in to þe castel of Pountfreit and þer he deide in prison. And sire Henry erl of Lancastre þat had þe kinges fader in kepinge þorȝ commaundement of þe king delyuerede Edwarde þe kinges fader by endenture vnto sire Thomas of Berkelee and to sire John Mautravers. And þei lad him fro þe castel of Kenylworthe vnto þe castel of Berkelee and kepte him þere safly. And att Estre next after his coronacion the king ordeinede an kinges host for to fiȝte aȝens þe Scottis. And sire John þe erles broþer of Henaude fro byȝonde þe see come for to helpe king Edwarde and brouȝte wiþ him .v. hundred men of armes and aryvede att Dover. And þei had leue for to gon forþ til þat þei comen vnto ȝorke þer þe king abode hem. And the Scottis come þeder vnto þe kinge

for to make pees and acorde·
but þe acordement bituene hem
laste but a litel tyme· and att
þat tyme þe englisshe men wer
cloþede al in cotes and hodes
peyntede wiþ lettres and wiþ
flowres ful semely wiþ longe
berdes· and þerfore the Scottis ma
de a bille þat was fastenede
vppon þe cherche dores of saint
Peter toward Stangate and þus
saide þe scripture in despite of
þe englisshe men· Longe ber
de hertles· peynted hood wit
les· Gay cote graceles· makes
Englande thrifteles· And þe
thridde day nexte comynge by
gan þe contak in þe citee of York
by twene þe englisshe men
and þe Henaudes and in þat de
bate were quelde of þe [illegible]
of Nicholl and mordred iiij^xx &
after þey were buriede vnder a
stone in Saint Clementes cherche
hawe in Fossegate· and for enche
son þat þe Henaudes comen for
to helpe þe king his pees was
criede vppon payne of lyf & lyme
and in þat oþer half hit was foun
de by enqueste of þe citee þat þe
englisshe men bigonne þe debate·
How þe englisshe men stoppe
de þe Scottis in þe park of Stan
hope and how þei turnede azen
into Scotlande· Cap^o· CC^mo· xiiij^mo·

And att þat tyme þe Scot
tis had assemblede alle
hire power an comen vnto
Englonde and quelde and rob
bede al þat þey myȝt take wiþ
oute noumbre and brende and
destroyede al þe Northcuntre þo
rugh out til þat þei come to the
parke of Stanhope in Weredale
and þer þe Scottis helde hem in
a busshement· But whenne
þe king had herde þorugh certain
aspies where þe Scottis were·
anon right wiþ his ost he biseged
þe forsaide parke· so þat þe Scottis
wiste neuer wheþer for to gon out
but onliche vn to hire armes &
þei abiden in þe parke xv daies
and vitailles hem faillede in
euery side so þat þey were gretly
enpayrede of hire bodyes· And
euer þat Brut come first into Bri
taigne vn to þis tyme was neuer
seyn crystenes so faire an host
what of Englisshe men and of
Aliens and of men of fote the
whiche ordeynede hem for to
fighte wiþ þe Scottis þorugh En
gynge of sire Henry erl of Lancastre
and of sire John Henaude þat
wolde haue gon on the water of
Wythe for to haue fouzte with
þe Scottis· but sire Roger of Mor
tymer consentede nouzt þerto·
for he had priueliche taken mede

of þe Scottis hem for to helpe þat
þei miȝte wende aȝen in to her
owene cuntree. ¶ And þe same
Mortimer counceiled os muche
Thomas of Brotherton þat þe Erl
Marchal þat was king Edwardus
uncle þat þe forsaide Thomas schul
de nouȝt assemble att þat tyme
vn to þe Scottis and he assentede
but he wiste nouȝt þe doynge
bitwene þe Scottis and þe forsay
de Mortimer and for encheson
þat he was Marchal of Engelon
de and to him parteined euere þe
vauntwarde he sente hastely to
þe erl of Lancastre and to Sir Johan
of Henaude þat þei schulde nouȝt
fiȝte vpon þe Scottis in prejudice
and in harmynge of him and his
fee and yf þey dede þei schulde
stande vn to her owene perile and
þe forsaide Erl Marchal was al
arraiede wiþ his bataile att þe
bordore of þe erl of Lancastre for to
haue fouȝte wiþ him and wiþ
his folke yf he had mevede for
to fiȝte wiþ þe Scottis and in þis
manere he was desceyuede and
wiste no þing of þis tresoun and
þus was þe king principaly destroy
nede. ¶ And whenne hit was
niȝt þe Mortimer þat hadde þe
watche for to kepe þe host þat
nyȝt distoblede þe watche þat
no þing moste be done and in
þe mene while þe Scottis stele
away be nyȝte in to her owene
cuntre as faste as þei miȝte.
and os was þe king falsely be
traysde þat wende þat alle
þe hertes of his lande had ben
brouȝte vn to an ende as hit
was sayde byfore. ¶ Lo how her
ȝe lordes how treitourisly king
Edwarde was desceyuede and
how merueillously and boldely
þe Scottis dede of werre for þe
same nyȝt James Douglas wiþ
CC men of armes riden þorȝ
out þe host of king Edwarde
þe same nyȝt þat þe Scottis were
scapede towarde her owene
cuntre as is aboue saide til þat
þei comen to þe kinges pauyloun
and quelde þe menye men in
here beddes and cryden summe
[illegible] and anoþer
tyme a Douglas a Douglas wher
fore þe king þat was in his
pauyloun and muche oþer folke
were wonder sore affrayede but
blessede be almyghty god the
king was nouȝt taken. and in
grete perile was þo þe reaume
of Engelonde. ¶ And þat nyȝt
þe mone schone ful cler & briȝt
and for alle þe kinges men þe
Scottis ascapede harmeles &
in þe morowe whenne þe king
wiste þat þei were ascapede unto

hire owene cuntre he was wo
der sorye and ful hertely wepte
wiþ his yonge ezen and ȝitt
wiste he nouȝt who had done hir
þat tresoun. but þat false tre
soun was wel knowe a good
while after as þe story telliþ.
The king Edwarde come þo a
ȝen vn to ȝorke ful sorwful &
his ost departede and euery man
wente in to his owne cuntre wiþ
ful heuy and mornynge sem
blaunt. and þe Scottes wente home
his weye and wente in to his
owene cuntre and þe king for
hire trauaille hugely hem re
warded. and for encheson of þat
viage þe king had dispended
muche of his tresour & wastede
And in þat tyme were seyn two
mones in þe firmament þat
on was clere and þat oþer was
derk as men myȝt se þoruȝ
out alle þe worlde and a grete
debate was þat same tyme a
ȝen pope Johan þe xxij. after þat
seint Petre was pope and þe em
perour of Almaigne þat made hym
emperour azens þe popis wille for
to holde his see att Avyoun.
Wherfore þe emperour made his
see att Rome and ordeynede a
noþer pope þat highte Nicholas
þat was a frere menour and þat
was azens þe rightes of holy
cherche wherfore he was curse
de and þe power of þat oþer
pope sone was laide & for en
chesoun þat suche merveilles
were seyn men sayde þat þe
worlde was ner att þe ende.

Off þe deth of king Edwarde of Carnarvan som tyme king of Englonde. cap. ccmo xvto.

And now go we azen vn
to sire Edwarde of Car
narvan þat was king
sume tyme of Englonde and
was putt adoun of his dignite
allas. for his tribulacioun and
sorowe bifelle him þoruȝ false
conseile þat he leuede & truste
vppon hem to muche. þat after
warde were distroyede þoruȝ
hire falsenes as god wolde.

And þis Edwarde of Carnarv
an was in þe Castel of Berkele
vnder þe kepinge of sire Morice
of Berkele and of sire Johan of
Mantrauers. and to hem he ma
de his compleynt of his sorwe
and of his disese. and ofte ty
mes he axede of his wardeynes
what he had trespassede azens
dame Is. his wyf and sire Ed
warde his sone þat was newe
made king þat þai wolde nouȝt
visite him. Tho answerede on
of his wardenes my worthy
lord displese zow nouȝt þat y

Schal zow telle þe enchesoun
þo. for it is done hem to vnder
stonde þat yf my lady zoure wyf
come eny þing nere zow þat
ze wolde here strangle ꝛ quelle
And also þat ze wolde done to
my lord zoure sone. Tho answerde
he wiþ simple chere. and saide
allas allas am y nouzt in prisoun
and alle att zoure owene wille
now god hit wot y þouzte hit
neuer. and now y wolde þat y
were dede so wolde god þat y
were for þanne were alle my sorwe
passede. Hit was nouzt longe
after þat þe king þorouz councile
of þe Mortimer grauntede the
warde and þe kepinge of sire Ed
warde his fader to sire Thomas
Gorneye and to þe forsaide sire
Iohn Matrauers þorouz þe kingis
lettre and þei come and lad þe
king vnto þe castel of Berkle the
whiche castel þe kinge hated
as any deþ. and þei kepte him
þere safliche til hit come vnto
Saint Matheus day in Septem
bre in þe zere of grace M. ccc.
xxvij þat þe forsaide sire Thomas
Mortimer sente þe maner of þe
deþ how and in what maner he
schulde be don to deth. And as
as þe forsaide Thomas and Iohn
had sayn þe letter and þe com
maundement þei maden þe king

Edwarde of Carnarvan good
cher and good solas as þei
myzte att þat souper and noþing
þe king wiste of here tresoune
And whanne tyme was for to
bedde þe king wente vnto his
bedde and lay and slepte faste
and as þe king lay and slepte
þe tretours fals forsworne a
zens here homage and here feaute
come preueliche in to þe kingis
chambre and here companye wiþ
hem. and layden an huge table
vpon his wombe and wiþ men
pressede and helden faste adoun
þe corners of þe table vpon his
bodye wher wiþ þe good man a
woke and was wonder sore adrad
to ben dede þere and slayn ꝛ turned
his body vp so doun. Tho come
þe false traitours and as wood
tyrauntz an horn and putt hit in
to his fundament as depe as þei
myzte and come a spete of coper
brennynge and putt hit þorouz þe
horne in to his body and ofte ty
mes rollede þei wiþ his bowell
and so þei quelde here lorde þat
noþing was perceiuede and after
he was enterede att Gloucestre.

How king Edwarde spousede Phe
lipp þe erles doughter of Henaude

And after Þat zere M. ccc.
Þe next somer After to
Sire Iohn of Henaude knyzte wiþ

How king Edward spoused Phillip the earles

hem Philipp his broþer doughter þat was erl of Henaude his nece in to Engelonde and king Edwarde spousede þere atte ʒork with michel honour. and sir Iohn of Hotham bysshop of Ely and sire William of Melton erchebysshop of ʒorke songe þe masse þe sondaye in the eve of conuersioun of Seint Paule in þe ʒer of grace M. ccc. xxvij. But for enchesoun þat þe king was but ʒonge and tendre of age whanne he was crounede. and many wronges were done while his fader lauede for enchesoun þat he trowede þe counsailors þat were false aboute him þat counceilede hym to done oþer wise þan resoun wolde wherfore grete harme was þo vnto þe reaume and to the king and al men dispisede the kinges dede. and hit was nouʒt os alimyʒty god wote. wherfore hit was ordeynede atte þe kinges corounynge þat þe king for tendre of his age schulde be gouernede by twelf grete lordes of Engelonde wiþ oute þe whiche noþing schulde be done þat is for to seyn þe erchebisshop of Caunterberye þe erchebisshop of ʒorke þe bisshop of Wynchester and þe bisshop of Herforde and þe erle of Lancaster and þe erl marchal and þe erl of Kent þat were þe kinges vncles and þe erl of Warrenne sir Thomas Wake sire Henry of Percye sir Olyuer of Yngham and Iohn of Ros barouns.

Alle þese were swore trewliche for to counceile þe king. and they schulde answer euery ʒer in þe parlement of þat schulde be done in þe tyme of þat gouernayle. But þat ordinaunce was sone vndone and þat was muche lost and harme to alle Engelonde for þe king and alle þe lordes þat schulde gouerne hym were gouernede and rewlede after þe kinges moder dame Isabelle and by sire Roger þe Mortymer and as þey wolde alle thing was done boþe amonge hye and amonge lowe. And þei nome vnto hem castell townes landes and rentes in grete harme and loste vn to þe croune and of the kinges state also out of mesure.

How þe pees was made bitwene þe englisshe men and þe Scottis and also of þe iustifying of Mortbastioun capº. ccmo. xvijmo.

The king Edwarde att Witsontyde þe secunde ʒer of his regne þorgh counseile of his moder and of sire Roger þe Mortimer ordeignede a parlement att Northamptoun att þe whiche parlement the

Scon

kyng þorugh hire counceile and no
oþer of þe lande wiþ inne age cun-
tede to ben acorded wiþ the Scottes
in þis maner þat alle þe feautes
and homages þat þe Scottis schul-
de done vnto þe corowne of Enge-
londe forȝaf hem vnto þe Scottis
for euermore by his chartre enseled.
And ferþermore an endenture was
made of þe Scottis vnto kinge
Edwarde þat was king Henries
sone whiche endenture þei called
hit Ragman in þe whiche were
conteynede alle þe homages and
feautes fiste of þe kyng of Scotlan-
de and of alle þe prelates erles and
barouns of þe reaume of Scot-
lande wiþ hire seales sette þer-
on and þe chartres and remembraun-
ces þat kyng Edwarde and his
barouns hadde of hire rightte
in þe reaume of Scotlande hit
was forȝeue hem aȝen holliche
and also wiþ þe blacke crois of
Scotlande þe whiche þe goode
king Edwarde conquerede in
Scotlande and brouȝte hit ouȝt
of þe abbay of Scone þat is
a ful precious relike ¶ And also
ferþermore he relessede and forȝaf
alle þe landes þat þe barouns
of Engelonde hadde in Scotlan-
de by olde conquest and this
pees for to halde and kepe the
Scottis were bounde to þe king

of xxx þousande pounde of
silver to ben paiede wiþ inne
iij ȝer þat is to seyn euery ȝere
x þousande pounde by euene
porcouns ¶ And ferþermore
al this þei spake bitwene þe par-
ties aboue saide þat Dauid Dr-
touncetter þat was Robert þe Bruis
his sone þe false tyraunt & traitour
and false forswore aȝens his
oth þat arose aȝens his liege
lord þe noble king Edwarde
and falsliche made him king of
Scotlande as is saide bifore and
his sone schulde be king of Scot-
lande þat was of age of v. ȝer
And so þorugh þis cursede counceile
þis Dauid spousede att Berewike
Dame Ione att þe Tour þat was
king Edwardis sister as þe geste
telliþ vppon marie Magdaleyn
day þe ȝer of grace a m. ccc. xxviij
to grete harme and appeiringe
to alle þe kinges blood wher of
þat gentil lady come. allas the
time. for wonder moche was þat
faire damisel disparagede. for þat
sche was mariede aȝens alle þe
comune assent of þe lordes of
Engelonde ¶ And fro þe time
þat Brut had conquerede Albion
and nemnede þe lande after his
owen name Britaigne þat now
is calle Engelonde after þe name
of Engist. and so was þe reaume

of Scotlande holden of þe reaume
of Englonde and of þe corone
by feaute and by homage. ffor
Brut conquerede þat londe and
ȝaf hit to Albanac his secunde
sone. and he callede þe londe
Albanye after his name. ffor the
heyres þat comen after him helde
of Brut and of his heyres the
kinges of Brutaigne by feaute and
homage. and so þat time vnto
þis kinge Edwarde þe reaume
of Scotlande was holden of þe
reaume of Englonde by feaute
and othes aboue saide as the
cronicles of Englonde and of
Scotlande beren witnesse more
plenerly. and areysede be the
tyme þat þis parlement was or
deynede att Norhampton for
þe yong false counceile þe king
was þe falsly disheritede. and
ȝit he was wiþ inne age. ¶ And
ȝitt whan king Edwarde was
putt doun of his realte of Enge
londe ȝitt men putt him nouȝt
out of þe feautes and seruices
of þe reame of Scotlande and of
þe ffraunchises disheritede for eue
more. ¶ And netheles þe grete
lordes of Englonde were aȝeins
to confirme þe pees and the
trewes aboue saide. saf only
þe Quene Isabelle þat was þe
kinges moder Edwarde. and þe
bisshop of Ely and þe lord Morti
mer. ¶ Butt resoun and lawe wol
de nouȝt þat a final pees schul
de be made bytwene hem wiþ
oute þe comune assent of Enge
londe.

¶ Off þe debate þat was bytwene þe Quene Isabelle and Sir Henry erle of Lancaster and of Leycestre. and of the ridinge of Bedforde. Ca. ccmo.

Whenne þe forsai ¶ Primo
de Dauid had spousede
dame Jone of þe Tour
in þe toun of Berewyk as bifore
is saide þe Scottis in despite
of þe englisshe men callede
dame Johne þe countesse make
pees for þe cowardise pees for
to ordeyne. butt þe kinges persone
bare þe witte and þe blame wiþ
wronge of þe makinge of the
acorde. and al was done þorugh
þe Quene and þe Mortimer.
¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after
þat þe Quene Isabella ne toke
in to hire owene hande al the
lordschip of Pountfrete and al
most alle þe landes þat were
of value þat perteynede vnto þe
corone of Englonde. so that
þe king had nouȝt for to dispen
de butt of his issues and of his
eschekere for þe quene Isabella
and þe Mortimer had a grete
mayne of hire retynaunce þat

folowede amonge þe kinges court
and wente and toke þe kinges
prises for here peny worthis att
good chepe wherfore þe contre
þat þei comen in were ful sore
adrad and almost destroyede
þo by comune þe communite of En-
galonde for to hate Isabelle þe
Quene þat so muche louede hym
whenne sche come azen for to p'-
sue þe false traitours þe Spensers
his frendes þat same tyme þe false
traitour Robert of Holande þat by-
traiede his lorde Sire Thomas of
Lancastre was þo delyuerede out
of prisoun and was wonder prive
wiþ þe Quene Isabelle and also
wiþ þe Mortimer bot þat avay-
lede hym bot litel for he was
take att Myghelmesse þat next
come after as he rode toward
þe Quene ios to London and Sire
Thomas Wither smote of his
hede besides þe toun of Seint Al-
bones and þis Sire Thomas
duellede þo wiþ Sire Henry erl of
Lancastre and he putt hym in hi-
dinge for drede of þe Quene
for sche louede hym wonder
muche and praiede vn to þe king
for hym þat þe same Thomas
most ben exilede of Engelonde
And the noble Erl Sire Henry of
Lancastre had ofte tymes herde
þe comune clamours of þe englisshe
men of þe muchel disseses þat
were done in Engelonde and also
for diuerse wronges þat were done
amonge þe comune peple of whi-
che þe kyng bare þe blame wiþ
wronge for he was but ful zonge
and tendre of age and þouzte as
as a good man for to done away
and slake þe sclaundre of þe
kinges persone yf that he myzte
in eny manere wyse so as the
king was þo of noþing gulty wher-
fore he was in peril of lyf and of
lyme And so he assemblede al
his retenaunce and wente and
spake vn to hem of þe kynges
honour and also for to amende his
estate and Sire Thomas of Bro-
tone Erl Marchal and Sire Edmun-
de of Wodestoke þat were þe kingis
vncles and also men of Londone
maden here oth' hym for to mayn-
tene in þat same querell And
here cause was this þat þe kinge
schulde holde his hous holde and
his meyne as perteynede vn to þe
king for to done and haue also
his reaume and þat þe Quene
Isabelle schulde delyuere out of
here honde in to þe kinges honde
alle manere lordschippis rentes tow-
nes and castell þat perteynede
vn to þe corone of Engelonde
and þat sche schulde lyue wiþ
þe þridde part of þe rentes of

Engelonde as oþer Quenes had
done bifore hire and wiþ non oþer
þing ¶ And also þat þe Mortemer
schulde duelle vpon his
owene landes he had so when
disherite miche peple. so þat þe
commune peple were nouȝt disheri
ted þorw hire wrongeful takinge
And also to enquere how and by
wham þe king was bytrayede
and falsliche disceyuede att Stan
hope and þorw whos counceile
þat þe Scottis wente away by
nyȝt fro þe king ¶ And also how
and þorw whos conseile þe ordi
naunce þat was made att þe coro
nacioun of king Edwarde were
put adoun þat is to seyn þat the
king for amendement & helpinge
of þe reaume and in honor of him
schulde be gouernede and reulede
by twelue þe grettest and wysest
lordes of þe reaume and with
oute hem schulde no þinges be
grauntede ne done as by fore ys say
de. þe whiche ordinaunces malici
ously were put doun fro þe king
wherfore manye harmes schames
and repreues han falle vnto þe king
and to his reaume and þat is to
vnderstonde for as miche as Ed
warde oure tyme king of Engelond
was ordeynede by assent of the
commune in pleyn parlement for to
ben vnder þe warde & gouernaunce
of Henry erl of Lancastre his cosyn
for sauuacioun of his body he was
taken out of þe castel of Kenelworth
þer þat he was in warde and þorw
colour of þe quene Isabelle and
of þe Mortimer wiþ out consente
of eny parlement. þai nome & ladde
him þer þat neuer after non of his
kynrede myȝte wiþ him speke ne
see. and after traytoursly nome
and him mordrede. for whos deþ
a foul sclaundre arose þorw out
alle cristendome wherinne hit was
done ¶ And also al þe tresour þat
sire Edwarde of Carnaruan had
lefte in manye places in Engelon
de and in Walis were wastede
and bore away wiþ out þe wil
of king Edwarde his sone in de
struccioun of him and of his folk.
Also þorw whos conseile þat þe
king ȝaf vp þe kingdome of Scot
lande for þe whiche reaume the
kinges auncestre had ful sore tra
uaillede. and so dede manye a
noble man for here riȝhte. and
was delyuerede al þe riȝte vnto
Dauid þat was Robert le Brus
his sone þat no riȝhte had vnto
þat reaume as al þe worlde hit
wiste ¶ And also by whom þe
chartres and þe remembraunces
þat þei had of þe riȝht of Scot
lande were take out of þe tre
sorie and taken to þe Scottis þe

kynges enemyes to disheritesoun
of hym and of his successours and
to gete hem to his heires and
gete reyne vn to alle englisshe
men for euermore ¶ Also wherfor
dame Jone of þe toure þe kinges
suster Edwarde was disparagede
and mariede vn to dauid þat was
Robert þe Brus his sone þat was
traitour and enemy vnto Enge
londe and þorw whos counceile
hes was take into oure enemyes
handes out of englande ¶ And
in þe mene tyme whiles þe good
erl henry of lancastre and his co͞
panye comun counceile shold þese
pointes aboue saide myzte ben
amended vnto þe worshippe of
þe king and to his profite and to
þe profite also of his heires the
quene Isabelle þorw coueitinge
and sotilte and also of þe Morti
mer lete ordeyne a parlement att
Salesberye· and att þe same parle
ment þe Mortimer was made
erl of þe Marche azens alle þe
baronus wille of Englonde
in preiudice of þe king and of his
corone· and sir Iohn of Eltham
þe kinges broþer was gerte wt
a swerde of Cornewaile and þe
was callede erl of Cornewaile
And euermore þe Quene Isabelle
so muche preyede azen hir sone
þe king þat sche had þe warde
of þe forsaide sir Edwarde &
of his londes ¶ And att that
parlement þe erl of lancastre wol
de nouzt come· but ordeynede
al his power azens þe quene
Isabelle and þe Mortimer and
men of londone ordeynede hem
for to helpe wiþ vj hundred
men of armes ¶ Whanne þe
Quene Isabelle wiste of þe do
ynge· sche swore by god and by
his names ful angrily þat in
euele tyme he þouzte vppon þe
pointis ¶ þis saide þe Quene Isa
belle and þe Mortimer after hir
retenewe and after þe kinges re
teine so þat þey had ordeynede
amonges hem an hinge ost· &
þei counceilede þe kyng so þat
vppon a nyzt þei reden xxiiij my
le towarde Bedforde þere þat
þe erl of lancastre was wiþ his
companye and þouzte haue him
destroyede· and þat nyzt sche zede
besides þe king hire sone as a
knyzt armede for drede of deth
And hit was done þe king Edwar
de to understande þat þe erle Hen
ry of lancastre and his companye
wolde haue destroyede þe king &
his counseile for euermore
¶ Wherfore þe kyng was sorwful
towardis hem and anoyede
¶ Whanne þe erl Marchal and the
erl of kent þe kinges broþer herde

of þis prisoun. þei ʒeden commes-
sage bitwene hem þat þe king
graunted him his pees to the
erl Henry of Lancastre for a cer-
tein raunsoune of xi ml pounde.
but þat was neuere payede after-
warde. ¶ And þese were þe lordes
þat halde wiþ Sir Henry of Lancas-
tre: Sire Henry Beaumounde, Sir
Foulk fitz Waryn, Sire Thomas Ros-
selyn, Sir William Trussel, Sir Tho-
mas Wyther, and aboute an hun-
dred of knyʒtis mo. þat were to
hem consentinge and alle þo were
exiled þorouʒ conceile of þe Quene
Isabell and of þe Mortimer, coue-
tede for to haue here landes yf þei
myʒte þorouʒ eny maner coueitinge.
for he was so coueitous and had
so muche his wil. and þat was
grete pite. ¶ How king Edwar-
de wente ouer þe see for to done
his homage vnto þe king of
Fraunce for the duchee of Gyene.
Capitulo CCmo xviiio.

It was nouʒt longe after
þat þe king of Fraunce þo-
rouʒ conceile of his dosse-
piers sente to king Edwarde of
Engelonde þat he schulde come
to Parys and done his homage
as resoun hit wolde for þe duchee
of Gyene. ¶ And so þorouʒ consente
of þe lordes of Engelonde king
Edwarde wente ouer þe see att
Ascencioun he come vnto Pa-
rys þe iii ʒere of his regne for to
done his homage vnto þe king
of Fraunce and þe king vnder-
fonge his homage and made
muchel ioye and worschepe. but
er king Edwarde had mad his
homage. hastely he was sente a-
ʒen in to Engelonde þorouʒ þe Que-
ne Isabelle his moder and anon
hastely he come aʒen into Enge-
londe vppon Wettsonday wiþoute
eny takynge leue of þe king of
Fraunce wherfore he was wonder
wroþ. ¶ How Sire Roger þe Morti-
mer bare him so proudliche and so
hye. Capitulo CCmo xixo.

And now schul we here
of Sire Roger þe Mortimer
of Wygemor þat desirede
and coueitede to benam an hye
state so þat þe king grauntede hym
to ben callede Erl of þe Marche
þorouʒ out alle his lordscheppe.
¶ And he bycame þo so prounde &
so hauten þat he wolde lese and
forsake þe name þat his aunce-
tres had euer byfore. ¶ And for
þat enchesoun he lete calle him
Erl of þe Marche and none of
þe communes of Engelonde dorst
calle him by non oþer name for
he was callede so þorouʒ þe kinges
ere þat men schulde calle hym
erl of þe Marche. ¶ And the

Mortimer þo bar him so hauteyn
and so proude þat wonder hit was
to write and also dispysede him wt
wonder riche clothes oute of alman[er]
resoun bothe of schappinge and of
werynge. where of þe englisshe
men had gret wonder how and
in what manere he mizte contynue
or fynde suche maner pride. and
þei seyde amonge hem alle comm[un]-
ly þat his pride schulde nouzt endu-
re longe. ¶ And þe same tyme
Sir Geffrey þe Mortymer þe zonge
þat was þe mortimeres sone lette hym
calle king of Folye. And so hit by-
falle afterwarde in dede. ¶ For
he was so ful of pride and of wrec-
chidnesse. þat he helde a rounde
table in walys to alle men þat
þider wolde come. and countrefe-
te þe maner and doynge of king
Arthurus table. but openly he
faillede. for þe noble knyzt Arthur
was most worthy lorde of renon
þat was in al þe worlde in his
tyme and zitt come neuer suchon
after him. for alle þe noble knyztis
þorouz cristendome of dede of armes
alosede duellede with king Arthur
and helde him for here lord. and
þat was wel sene for he conque-
rede in bataile Romayn þat me cal-
lede ffrolle and gate of him þe
reaume of ffraunce and quelde him
wiþ his handes. ¶ And also he faugt

wiþ a geaunt þat me callede
Dynabus and quelde him þat
had rauisshede þe faire Elyne þt
was king Hoelles nece king of
litil Britaigne. And afterwarde
he quelde in bataille þe Emperour
of Rome þat me callede Lucie þt
had assemblede azens king Arthur
for to fighte with him so muche
peple of Romayns and of Parthis
and of Sarazenes þat no man cou-
þe hem noumbre and he discomfi-
tede hem alle as þe storye of him
more plenerlier telliþ. ¶ And
in þe same tyme comune [illegible]
in Engelonde þorouz conuettinges &
ordinaunce of þe fiers persones þat
Sir Edwarde of Carnaruan that
was king Edwardus fader of
[illegible] þe greate [illegible] þt
he was alyf in þe castel of Corf
wherfore alle þe communes almost
of Engelonde were in sorowe &
drede wheþer þat hit were so or
were nouzt þey wiste neuer how
þe Mortimer traitourly had him
done mordrede. ¶ How Edmunde
of Wodestoke þat was erl of kent
and þe kinges broþer Edwarde of
Carnaruan was byheuede att
wynchestre capitulo. CC.mo xx.iiii.

And vppon a tyme hit felle
so þat Sir Edmunde of
Wodestoke erl of kent
spake vnto þe pope John þe xxii.

att Avynoun and saide þat almyghti
god had menye tymes done for
Thomas loue of lancastre menye
grete myracles to menye men and
wymmen þat were þoru3 diuerse
maladies vndone as vnto the worl
de· and þoru3 his prayer þey were
brou3te vn to her heele. ¶ And so
oure Edmunde prayede þe pope
hertly· þat he wolde graunte him
grace þat þe forsaide Thomas
mi3te ben translatede· but the
pope saide nay he schulde nou3t
ben translatede þe same Thomas
erl of lancastre vn to þe tyme þat
he were certyfiede of þe cler
gie of Engelonde and seyn by her
obedience what þing god hath
done for þe loue of Thomas of lan
castre after þe suggestioun þat þe
forsaide Edmunde of Wodestoke
erl of kent hadde vn to him ma
de. ¶ And whanne þis Edmunde
sawe þat he mighte nou3t spede
of his purpos as touchinge þe
translacioun· he prayede him þo
of his counceile as touching sir
Edwarde of Carnaruan his broþer
and saide nou3t longe gon þat
he was king of Engelonde· what
þinge mi3te beste be done as tou
chinge his deliueraunce· for that
a commune fame ros þoru3 out al
Engelonde þat he was in lyf
and hool and sauf. ¶ Whanne
þe pope herde him telle þat sir Ed
warde was alyf he commaundede
þe Erl vppon his benesoun þat he
schulde helpe wiþ al þe power þat
he mi3te þat he were delyuerede out
of prisoun and sauf his bodye mal
maner þat he mi3te and for to
bringe þis þing vn to an ende· he
assoillede him and his companye
a pena & a culpa· and alle þo that
halpen to his delyueraunce. ¶ This
noble Edmunde of Wodestoke erl
of kent his leue of þe pope & come
a3en into Engelonde. ¶ And whe
Edmunde was come· somme of
þe frere prechours comen and saide
þat sire Edwarde his broþer 3itt was
alyf in þe castel of Corf vnder þe
kepinge of sire Thomas þe Gurnay
þe spedd him þe forsaide Edmunde
as faste as he mi3te til þat he come
vn to þe castel of Corf· and aqueyn
tede and spake so faire wiþ oure
John Deuerille þat was consta
ble of þe forsaide castell and 3af
him riche 3iftes for to haue aquey
taunce of him and to knowe of his
counceile. ¶ And þis hit by felle
þat þe forsaide oure Edmunde pray
ede specialy for to telle him priuely
of his lorde his broþer oure Edwarde
yf þat he leuede or were ded· & yf
he were alyf he prayede of him
for to haue ones a sighte. ¶ And
þis oure John Deuerell was an hye

herted man and ful of corage ⁊
answerede shortly vn to þe Edmu
nde. and saide þat þe Edwarde
his brother was in heele and
vnder his kepinge ⁊ durste shewe
him vn to no man but hit was de
fendede him in þe kinges half
Edwarde þat was Edwardes
sone of Karnarvan. and also þo
rugh commaundement of þe Quene
Isabelle þe kinges moder and
of sir Roger þe mortimer þat he
shulde shewe his body vn to
no maner man of the worlde.
sauf onliche vn to ham vpon lost
of lyf and lyme and to disherite
soun of his heires for euer more.
But þe false traitour falsly lyede
for he was noȝt in his warde.
But he was take thennes and lad
vn to the castell of Berkeley þo
rugh sir Thomas Gurnay þorugh
commaundement of þe Mortimer
til þat he was dede as be fore
ys sayde more plainer ¶ But
þe Edmunde of Wodestoke wiste
no þinge þat Edwarde his broþer
was dede. wherevpon he toke
a lettre vn to þe forsaide sir John
and praiede him hertely þat he
wolde take hit vn to king Edwar
de his broþer as to his worthye
lorde ¶ And he vnderfenge the
lettre of him and bihighte to þe
Edmunde for to done his message
with oute eny maner faille ⁊
wiþ þat þe Edmunde nome of
hym his leue þat is to sayn of
þe forsaide John and wente þo
in to his owene cuntre ⁊ lordship
in Kent þat he had þe ¶ And
anon as þis same John wiste
þat þe Edmunde of Wodestoke
was gon in to Kent his owene
lordshippe. anon he wente in
al þe hast þat he myȝte fro þe
castell of Corf. and come vn
to sir Roger þe Mortimer ⁊ toke
him þe lettre þat þe Edmunde
of Wodestoke erl of Kent had ta
ke him closede and enselede wiþ
his owene seal ¶ And whane
sir Roger had vnderfonge þe lettre
he vnclosede þe lettre and sawe
what was conteynede þerinne
and gan hit for to rede ¶ Wher
of þe bygynnynge was thus
worshepful and reuerent wiþ
brotheres ligeaunce and sub
iectioun. Sire knyght worsheep
ful and dere brother yf hit ȝow
plese I pray hertily þat ȝe ben
of good comforte. for I shal
so ordeine for ȝow þat sone ȝe
shulle come out of prisoun. and
ben delyuerede of þat disese þat
ȝe ben inne. and vnderstondeth
of ȝoure grete lordship þat I
haue vn to me assentaunt al
most alle þe grete of Engelonde

wiþ al hire appaile þat is to
sayn. wiþ armure wiþ tresour
wiþ oute noumbre for to mayntene
and helpe ȝoure querelle. ffor
soþe þat ȝe schulle ben kinge aȝen
as ȝe were byfore. and þat þei
alle haue sworne to me vpon
a boke. and as wel prelatis. as
erlys and barouns. Whanne
sire Rog' of Mortimer sawe ȝ
vnderstode þe myȝte and þe streng
the of þe lettre. anon for ioye
his herte gan bolnne for ioye
and euel herte bare to sir Ed
munde of wodestoke þat was erl
of kent. And so wiþ alle þe
haste þat he myȝte he wente vn
to dame Isabelle þe quene þat
was þe kinges moder. ȝ schewe
de hir sir Edmundus lettre erl
of kent and his wille and his
prees. and how he had connei
tade and ordeynede to put a
doun king Edwarde of wynde
sore hir sone of his realte and
of his kingdome. Now certis
sir Rog' quod she þe quene hap
Edmunde done so. by my fader
soule quoþ sche. y wille ben þe
of avengede yf þat god graunte
me my lyf and þat in a schorte
tyme. And anon wiþ þat she
quene Isabell wente vnto
king Edwarde hire sone. þe þat
he was att parlement att wynchestre

for to haue amended þe wron
ges and trespassez þat were done
amonge þe peple in his reaume
And þo nome sche and schewede
him þe lettre þat sir Edmunde
of wodestoke erl of kent had ma
de and enselede itt wiþ his seal
and bade him vpon hire benesoun
þat he schulde avengede ben vpo
him as vpon his dedely enemy
To was þe quene so wroþ towar
de sire Edmunde erl of kent and
cessede neuer to praye vnto hir
sone þat he schulde sende in
hast after him. And vpon þat
þe king sente by his lettrez after
sire Edmunde of wodestoke. þt
he schulde come and speke wiþ
him att wynchestre. alle maner
þinges lefte. And whanne sir
Edmunde sawe þat þe king sente
after him wiþ his lettre ensealede
he hastede him in al þat he myȝte
til þat he come vnto wynchestre
Butt þo þe quene wiste þat Ed
munde was come vnto wyn
chestre anon she prayede and
so faste wente vnto Edwarde
hire sone þat þe good erl was ar
reste anon and ladde vnto þe
barr by sire Robert of hamounde
þat was coroner of þe kinges
housholde. and he assonede vnto
him sir Rog' þe mortimer and
þo spake þe forsaide Iohn vnto

him and saide. Sire Edmunde
erl of kent ȝe schal vnderstonde þt
hit is done vs to wyte and princi
pally vn to our liege lorde sire
Edwarde king of Engelonde þt
almyȝti god saue and kepe. þat
ȝe ben his dedly enemy and his
traitour and also a commune enemy
vn to þe reaume and þat ȝe haue
ben aboute many a day for to make
priueliche deliueraunce of sire
Edwarde som tyme kyng of En
gelonde ȝoure broþer þe whiche
was put adoun of his realte
by commune assent of alle þe lordes
of Engelonde in peiringe of our
lord þe kinges estatte and also of
his reaume. ¶ Tho answerde þe
good man and saide. for soþe sire
vnderstondiþ wel þat y was neuer
assentinge for to enpeire þe state
of oure lorde þe king ne of þe coro
ne and þat y putte me to ben de
mede vpon my peres. ¶ And wiþ
þat worde sire Rogers Mortimer schew
ede hem þe erlis lettre and his
seal. and saide þo sire Edmunde
knowe ȝe nouȝt þe prente of þis
lettre þat he had take vn to sir Iohn
Deuerell. and he sawe þe prente
of his seal but he saw nouȝt
what was conteynede in þe lettre.
and þe erl him self wende þat it
had ben on of his lettres þat had
ben of no charge. ¶ Tho saide þe erl

to sire Roger Mortimer þat he wol
de nouȝt forsake þe lettre and þt
was þe prent of his seal. and
anon wiþ þat worde þe wily and
false mortimer bygan to vndone
þe lettre and gan hit for to rede
in audience of alle þe court.
¶ And þo saide sire Robert of Hamull
sire Edmunde quod he sir þat
ȝe haue made knowlechinge opinly
here in þe court þat þis is ȝoure
lettre enselede wiþ ȝoure seal
and þe tenour of þe lettre saiþ þat
ȝe wolde haue ben aboute for to
haue deliuerede þe body of that
worschepfull kniȝt sire Edwarde
sum tyme king of Engelonde
ȝour broþer. and for to haue holpen
him þat he schulde haue ben king
aȝen and gouerne his peple as he
wonede byfore tymes. in peiringe
of oure liege lorde þe kinges state
þat is now wham god kepe fram
all disese. ¶ And þis court wile
þat ȝe ben vndone of lyf & lyme
and þat ȝour heires ben disheri
tede for euer more saue þe grace of
oure lord þe king. þo was þe erl
sire Edmunde of Wodestoke putt
aȝen unto prisoun vnder ful saue
warde til vpon þe morn. And þo
come þe mortimer vn to þe king
þere þat he satte att his mete. and
tolde him how þe erl was damp
nede by weye of lawe and also

of lyf and lyme and his heires
disherited for euermore þorugh opin
knowlechyng in pleyn court/
¶ Wherfore hym þouȝte hit were
good þat þe forsaide erl were
hastely quelled wiþ oute wetinge
of þe king for elles þe king wolde
forȝiue hym his deth and þat schul
de turne hem vn to muche sorowe
so as he was enpechid ¶ And a
non þe quene Isabelle þorugh coun
saile of þe Mortimer and wiþ oute
eny oþer conceile sente in haste to
þe baillifs of Wynchestr' þat þey
schulde smyte of sire Edmundis
heade of Wodestoke erl of Kent
wiþ oute eny maner' abidinge or
respite vppon peyne of lyf and
lyme ¶ þo nome þe baillifs s'e
Edmunde out of prisoun and ladde
hym besides þe castel att Wynchestr'
And þer þai made agong fermer
smytan of his heuede for no noþer
man durste hit done. And so dei
de he þe allas þe tyme· þat is to
seyn þe ·x· day of Octobre the
iij ȝer of king Edwardes regne
And whanne þe king wiste þer' of
he was wonder sorye and lete
entere hym att þe frere menours
att Wynchestr' ¶ Of þe deth of
s'r Rog' Mortimer' erl of þe Marche

And so hit ¶ Ano. d. M. ccc. xxxo.
byfelle att þat tyme
þat s'r Rog' Mortimer'

erl of þe Marche was so prowde
and so hautein þat he helde no lord
of þe reaume his pere· And þo bico
me he so couetous þat he folowed
dame Isabelle þe quenes court þat
kinges moder Edwarde. and bisette
his peny worthies wiþ þe officers
of þe quenes housholde in þe same
maner' as þe kinges officers dede.
And so he made his takinges as
touchinge vitailles and also of ca
riages. And alle he dede for enche
soun of Spenser and for to gader tre
sor' And so he dede wiþ oute no
ber in al þat he myȝte ¶ þo made
he hym wonder p'uee wiþ þe q'ne
so and so muche lordschip and re
tenu had. so þat alle þe grete lordes
of Englonde of hym were adrad.
wherfore þe king and his counci
le towardes hym were aggreued
and ordeyned amonges hem
for to vndone hym þorugh prise re
soun and lawe· for encheson þt
king Edwarde þat was þe kinges
fader traitoursly þorugh hym was
mordred in þe castel of Berkelee
As by fore is saide more pleinly
in þe ·cc· and vij chapit' of this
book ¶ And comme þat were of
þe kinges conceile loueden the
Mortimer' and tolde hym in p'uetee
how þat þe king and his counce
le were abowte ham day to day
hym for to schende and vndone

wherfore þe Mortimer was sore
annoyede and angry as þe de-
vel azeins hem þat were of the
kynges counsaile and saide þat
he wolde on ham ben avenged
howe so euer he toke on. ¶ Hit was
nouzt longe after warde þat king
Edwarde and dame Philip his
wyf and dame Isabelle þe kinges
moder and Sr Rog Mortimer
wente vn to Notingham þer for
to soiorne. ¶ And so hit fel þat
þe Quene Io. þorugh counsaile
of þe Mortimer toke to hir the
keyes of þe zatis of þe castel of
Notingham. so þat no man mizte
come nor in ne out by nizte but
þorugh þe commaundement of the
Mortimer ne þe kinge ne none
of his counseils. ¶ And þat time
hit felle so þat þe Mortimer as
a devel for wrath bollede. and
also for wrath þat he had azens
towarde þe kinges men Edwar-
de and principaly azens hem þat
had him acusede to þe king of
þe deth of sir Edwardus fader.
And principaly a counsaile was take
bitwene þe Quene Io. and Mor-
timer and þe bisshop of Lyncolne
and Sr Symonde of Bereforde
and Sr Hughe Trompeton and
oþer mo of hir counsaile for to
vndone hem alle þat had acu-
sede þe Mortimer vn to þe kinge
of his faderes deth. of tresoun
and of felonie. wherfore alle
þo þat were of þe kinges coun-
saile whenne þei wiste of þe
Mortimeres castinge principaly come
to þe kyng Edwarde & tolden
þat þe Mortimer wolde hem
destroye for cause þat þei hadde
acusede him of king Edwardus
deth his fader. and praiede hym
þat he wolde mayntene ham
in hire trewe quarell. and þe
king grauntede ham his bone
and saide he wolde mayntene
ham in her rizt. ¶ And þese
were þe lordes to pursue this
quarell. Sr William Mountagu
Sr Humfray de Bornygh. Sr Willia
his broþer. Sr Rauf of Staffforde Sr
Robert of Huffforde Sr William
of Clynton. Sr Iohn Nevile of
Horneby and many oþer of his
consente. and alle þese sworn
vppon þe book to mayntene þe
quarell in as muche as þei mizte.
And hit byfel so after þat Sr
William Mountagu ne non of þe
kinges frendes most nouzt ben
herbowrede in þe castel for þe
Mortimer. but wente and toke hir
herbowrighe in dyuerse places in þe
toun of Notingham & so were þei
sore adrad leste þe Mortimer
shulde hem destroye. ¶ And in haste
þei com to þe king Edwarde his.

William Mountagu þe þat he
was in his castel and priuely tol
de him þat he ne non of his com
panye schulde nouȝt take
þe Mortimer wiþ oute counceile
and helpe of William of Elan
de constable of þe same castel.
Now certes quoþ þe king y loue
ȝow ful wel. and þerfore y coun
seille ȝow þat ȝe gon to þe forsaid
conestable and commaundeþ
him in my name þat he be ȝour
frende and ȝoure helpe for to
take þe Mortymer alle þinge
lafte vpon peril of lyf and of
lime. ¶ Sire quoþ Mountagu þo.
Sire my lorde graunt mercys. þo
wente forth þe forsaide Mounta
gu and come to þe constable of
þe castel and tolde him þe kingis
wille And he answerede and say
de þe kingus wille schulde be
done in as muche as he miȝte
and wolde nouȝt spare for no
mannes deth and so he swore and
made his oth. ¶ Þo saide sire
William of Mountagu to þe con
stable in hering of alle ham
þat were helpinge vnto þe quar
rell. Now certes deere frende
vs bihoueth for to werche and
done by ȝoure queyntise to take
þe Mortimer. siþ þat ȝe ben kep
of þe castel and haue þe keyes
in ȝoure warde. ¶ Sire quoþ þe
constable wile ȝe vnderstande
þat þe gatis of þe castel ben lo
ked wiþ þe lokes þat dame Is
sente aftir. and by niȝte sche had
þe keyes þerof and leiþ ham vnder
þe chemisel of hire bed vn to the
morne and so ȝe may nouȝt come
in to þe castel by þe ȝatis in no
manes wyse. but y knowe an alee
þat streccheþ out of þe warde vnder
erþe in to þe castel þat goth in
to þe weste whiche alee dame
Is þe quene ne non of hire men
ne þe Mortemer ne non of his
companye knowiþ hit nouȝt. &
so y schal lede ȝow þoruȝ þat alee
and so ȝe schulle come in to þe
castell wiþ oute aspies of anye
man þat ben ȝoure enemyes.
¶ And þe same niȝt sire William Moun
tagu and alle þe lordes of his que
rell and þe same constable also
wente ham to hors and maden
semblaunt as hit were for to wen
de out of þe Mortymeres sighte.
But anon as þe Mortimer herde
þis tydinges he wende þat þai wol
de haue gon ouer þe see for drede
of him. and anon he and his coun
ceile nome counceil amonges ham
for to lette hire passage & sente
letteres anon vnto þe portis. þat
none of þe grete lordes schulde
wende hom vnto hire owene cuntre
but yf he were areste & taken

And amonge oþer þinges Willia[m]
Elande conestable of þe forsaide
castel priueliche lad sire William
Mountagu and his companye by
þe forsaide wey vnder erthe so til
þat þei comen into þe castel and
wente vp into þe tour þere þat the
Mortimer was in. But sire Hughe of
Trumpeton hem ascride hidously
and sayde: A traitours hit is alle
for nouȝt þat ȝe ben come into
þis castel: ȝe schulle deye ȝitt in
euel deth euerychone. And anon
on of hem þat was in Mountagu
es companye vp wiþ a mace and
smote þe same Hughe vpon þe
heede þat þe brayn brast out and
fell on þe grounde and so was
he ded in euel deth. Tho nome[n]
þei þe Mortimer as he armede
hym att þe toures dore. Whanne
he herde þe noyse of hem for drede.
And whanne þe Quene Isabell
herde þat þe Mortimer was take
sche made muche sorowe in herte
and þese wordes vnto hem saide:
Now faire sires y ȝow pray þat
ȝe done none harme vnto his bodye
a worþy knyght our[e] wel biloued
frende and oure der[e] cosyn. Tho
wente þei þennes and comen
& brouȝten þe Mortimer and pre
sentede him vnto þe king Ed
warde and he comaundid to
bringe him in to saf warde.

But anon as þey þat were con
sent vnto þe Mortimers doynge
herde telle þat he was taken þey
wente and hid ham and priueliche
by nyȝte wente out of þe toun
and eche in his syde wiþ heuy herte
and mornynge and leuede þer[e]
his landes as wel as þei miȝte.
And so þat same ȝere þat þe Mor
timer was take he had att his
retenu .ix. score knyȝtis wiþ out
squyers and seriauntes of armes
and fote men. And þo was this
Mortimer lad to Londone and sire
Symounde of Bereforde was lad
wiþ him and was take to þe con
stable to kepe. But after warde
was þe Mortimeres lif examined
att Westmynister bifore þe king
and bifore alle the gret lordes
of Englonde for perel þat miȝte
falle to þe reaume and to enque
re also whiche were assentinge
to sire Edwardis deþ þe kinges
fader. And also þorow whom þe
Scottis scapede fro Stanhope in
to Scotlande wiþoute þe wille
of king Edwarde. And also
how þe chartre of ragman was
deliuerede vnto þe Scottis wher
in þe homages and þe feautes of
Scotlande were conteynede þat
þe Scottis schulde done euermore
vnto þe kinges of Englonde for
þe reaume of Scotlande wherfor[e]

in his absence he was damp
nede to ben drawe and honged
for his tresoun and þis myschef
come vn to him in seint Andrew
ne and in þe ȝer of incarnacioun
of oure lord Ihesu Crist. M. ccc. and
xxx. Thowe king Edwarde ȝhe
te aȝen vn to him graciousliche
and þe feautez and þe homages
of Scotlande wher of he was
put out þorugh þe false conceile
of Isabell his moder and of Sir
Roger Mortimer þat was ma
de erl of þe marche. ao. mo. ccc. xxiij.

Now ȝe haue herde lordes
hou Sir Iohn of Baillol
in tyme of pees was
chosen to ben king of Scotlande
for enchesoun þat he come of þe
eldest doughter of þe erl Dauid
of Huntyngdoun þat was kinge
Alisaundres broþer of Scotlande
þat deide wiþ oute heir of his
body bigete and hou þis Iohn
made feaute and homage to king
Edwarde þat was king Henries
sone þe þridde for his landes of
Scotlande and hou he after ward
wiþ saide his homage þorugh
conceile of þe Scottes. In the
ȝer of incarnacioun M. ccc. lx
xij and sente to þe pope þorugh
false suggestioun þat he made
his oth vn to þe forsaide kinge
Edwarde ouer his astate & his
wille of which oth þe pope hym
assoillede þorugh his bulles to hym
sente. And anon as kinge Ed
warde wiste þer of he ordeynede
anon his baronis and come vn
to Berwyk and conquerede the
toun: att which conqueste þere
were slayn xxv þousande and
vij hundred. And þe Baillol þat
was king of Scotlande come &
ȝalde him vn to king Edwarde
and þe king after wardes delyuer
ed him out of þe Tour of Lon
done and alle þe grete lordes of
Scotlande wiþ him þat were ta
ke att Berwyke and ȝaf hem saf
conduit to gon in to Scotlande:
and þe Scottis þorugh her falsenes
orpenes werrede vpon king Ed
warde. And whanne Sir Iohn
Baillol king of Scotlande saw
alle this he wente and put hym
oue see vn to Dumpier & lande
þe vpon his owene landes as
wel as he myȝte. til þat þe Scot
tis wolde amende hem of hir
mysdedes and trespas. and lad
with him Sir Edwarde his sone
wherfore þe Scottis in despite
of hym callede him Sir Iohn
Dunnelabard for cause þat he
wolde nought offende ne tres
pace aȝens king Edwarde of
Engelonde. and so he forsoke
his reaume of Scotlande and

seitte þer of but litel prys. And
þis sir John longe duellede in
Fraunce til þat he deide þere. and
sir Edwarde his sone vnder fe
ge his heritage and dede homa
ge vnto þe king of Fraunce for
his landes of Dunfries.
And so hit fell aftirwarde þat
Edwarde was John Balliols
sone had wiþ him a squyer of
Engelonde þat was borne in
Zork shire þat was callede John
of Barnaby and þis Edwarde
Baillol louede him muche and
was neighe him and ful pryuee.
And so þis John of Barnaby
was in debatte wiþ a Frensshe
man in þe toun of Dunfries &
so he qualde him and wente
in his way in al þe haste þat
he myghte vnto þe castell for
to haue socour and helpe of
his lorde. And anon comen
þe officers of þe toun for to take
John of Barnaby as a feloun
and sir Edwarde his lord halpe
him and rescuede hym and by
nyzte made hym wende out
of þe castell and so he wente
his weye and come into Enge
londe wiþ out eny harme.
And whanne þe kyng of Fraunce
wiste þat sir Edwarde hadde
rescued his feloun he bycome
wonder wroþ azens sir Edwarde
and anon lete him ben areste
and toke in to his hande alle
his landes. And þus duellede sir
Edwarde in prisoun vnto þe time
þat sir Henry of Beaumunde come
in to Fraunce þe whiche Henry
sum tyme was erl of Angos
in Scotlande þorugh his wyf. and
was put out of þe forsaide erl
dome whenne þe acorde was
bitwene Engelande and Scot
lande þorugh þe quene Isabel and
sir Roger þe Mortimer and here
companie for þe mariage þat
sche made bitwene Dauid þat
was Robert þe Brus his sone &
Dame Johne att þe Tour kinge
Edwardis suster of Engelonde
and wel vnderstode þis þat att
þe ende he schulde come to his
rizte. but yf hit were þorugh sire
Edwarde Baillol þat was rizte
heir of þe reaume of Scotlande.
And þe king of Fraunce lovyd lo
uede muche þis sire Henry and
was wiþ him ful pryuee. & þouzte
for to make a delyueraunce of sire
Edwarde Baillolles body yf he
myzte in eny maner. And þus prayed
he þe king þat he wolde graunte
him of his grace sir Edwarde
Baillollis body vnto þe nexte
parlement þat he myzte hyme gete
his owene parties in þe mene ty
me. and þat he moste stande to ben

Iugede by his peres att þe ple
ment. Thus þe king grauntede him
his praier and made þe forsaide
sir Edwarde ben deliuerede
out of prisoun in þe maner abo
ue saide. and anon as he was
out of prisoun. sir Henry toke
him forth with him and ladde
him in to Engelonde & made hym
dwelle priueliche att a maner of
Sandhall vp Ouse in 3orkshire
wiþ þe lady Vescy. And so he
ordeynede him þere an huge re
tinaunce of peple of englisshe
men and also of aliens for to
conquere a3en his heritage.
And so he 3af muche siluer vn
to Soudiours and to aliens
for to helpe him and þei behight
him for to helpe in al þat they
my3te but þei faillede him att
his moste nede. And att þat
tyme Donalde erl of Marr he her
den telle how þat sir Edwarde
was priuely come in to Engelon
de and come to him and made
with him grete ioye of his co
mynge a3en. and saide to him
and behighte þat alle þe grete of
Engelonde schulde ben to him
Entendaunt and schulde him
holde for here king as ri3te heir
of Scotlande. and so muche
þey wolde done þat he schulde
be crounede king of þat lande

and dede to him feaute & homa
ge. Tho come sir Henry of Beau
mounde to king Edwarde of En
gelonde and prayede him in wey
of charite þat he wolde graunte
of his grace vnto sir Edwarde
Bailloil þat he moste saufliche
gon by londe fro Sandhalle
vnto Scotlande for to conquere
his ri3t heritage in Scotlande
þe king Edwarde answerede and
saide vn to him. yf þat y suffre
þe Baillol wende þorw my lan
de towarde Scotlande. þan the
peple wolde seye þat he schulde
ben assentinge vnto þe compa
nye. Wherfore sir y þus wol þat 3e
wolde graunte him leue to take
vnto him Soudiours of Englissh
men. þat þey my3te saufly lede
him þorw 3oure londe vnto
Scotlande. and sir vpon this
couenaunt þat yf hit so byfalle
þat god hit forbede þat þay ben
descomfitede in bataile þorw þe
Scottes þat y and alle þe lordes
þat holden wiþ Baillol ben for
euermore putt out of oure rentes
þat we hauen in Engelonde
And þe king vpon þis couenaunt
grauntede his bone as touching
him and so þat were of þe same
querell þe whiche claymede
to haue londes or rentes in þe
reaume of Scotlande. And

þese were þe names of þe same
lordes þat pursuede þis matere
þat is to seyn Sire Edwarde þe Bail
lol þat chalangede þe reaume of
Scotlande Sire Henry Beumonde erl
of Angos Sire Dauid of Strobogy
erl of Atheles Sire Geffrey of Mou
bray Water Comyn and menye oþer
þat were put out of hire heritage
in Scotlande whenne þe pees
was made bitwene Engelonde
and Scotlande as byfore is saide
¶ And ȝe schullen vnderstonde þat
þese lordes nomen wiþ ham vi
hundred men of armes and two
þousande archiers and of foote men
and þo wente vn to schip att Raue
nesere and sailede by þe see til
þat þei comen vnto Scotlande
and come to lande att Kinkorne
twelf myle fram Seint Johnes
town: and sente out hire schippes
aȝen for þei schulde nouȝt ben hurt
ne enpeirede: nor þat no man
schulde gon in to schip aȝen þer
þat þey had nede but abide att
al perilez and nouȝt flee but
stande and rather cesse deth
þan flee to mayntene hir trewe
querell. ¶ Whenne þe erl of Fyf
a fers man and a sterne herde
talle þat þe Baillol was come
for to take þe lande of Scotlan
de. he come in haste vnto Kinke
corne wiþ .x. þousande Scottis
for to distourble him þat he
schulde nouȝt come to lande.
But Sire Edwarde Baillol and
his companye had taken þe
lande maugre him and his com
panye and him descomfitede att
þe whiche descomfiture Sire Alisan
dre of Seton þe sone was þere
quelde and menye oþer. ¶ The
erl of Fif was þo wonder sory
and ful ille schamede þat so
litel companye had him desto
fitede and schamelich put hym
and al his companye þat was
alyf for to flee þo come Sire Ed
warde þe Baillol and toke þe
cuntre al aboute him til he com
vnto þe abbay of Dunfermelyn
and þere he fonde vitailles for hym
and for his folk and amonges
alle oþere þinges he fonde in a
chambre aboute v hundrede
of grete stafes of fyn oke wiþ
longe pikes of yren and of ste
le he nome ham and delyuerede
ham to þe most strengest of his
companye ¶ And anon after he
wente fro þennes and loggede hym
in a felde .ij. mile fro Saint Johnes
town. and whenne þe burgeys of
þe town herde how þe erl was
descomfitede þorouȝ Sire Baillol þey
were sore adrad and broken þe
brigges þat þei had made ouer
þe watir of Erne. so þat þe

Baillol mizte nouzt gon oue
wherfore he loggede him þe al
þat nyght · But litel hadde he
toke of reste · and saide vn to
his peple · Now dere lordes
ȝe knowith ful wel þat we bene
now loggede bitwene oure ene
myes and yf þey wolde vs harm
þer þer nys bote til deþ · wherfor
yf we abyde her al þis nyght
stille · y leue þat it schal turne
vs to muche harmis · for the
poer of Scotlande may euery day
wexe and encrese and we
may nouzt so · and we ben but
litel peple as · azeins hem ·
Wherfore y praye ȝow for the
loue of almyghtie god make we
vs bolde and hardy and þat we
mowe mightily take þe Scottis
þis nyzt and boldely wenne
vpon hem · and lete vs purssue
hem þis nyght · and yf þei ben
trauaillede þorw vs and they
ouercome hardynes · so þat oþe
Scottis þat comen and mete ham
and ouer hem ouertrayllede and
werr · þe ouer wil ben adrad of
vs for to fighten · and for siche
þan we schullen fighte & vpon
hem purssue · so þat þorw þe grace
of almyghty god al þe worlde
schal speke of doughtynesse of
oure chiualrye · And siree vn
derstondet wel þat alle þe com
paine þat comen wiþ sir Edwarde
Baillol graunted wel vn to that
counsail and were þer of glad · &
anon purssuede vpon þe Scottis
þat þei bicomen wonder wery
and þe Baillol and his compa
nye ouer folowede hem and dede
hem muche sorowe þorw his
assaut · so þat þei mizte nouzt
for feble hem helpe and for litel
peple · But þe Scottis among
hem · what is now vs by falle ·
þat so litel peple as þe Baillol
hav in wenges · done vs so muche
harmis trauaile & sorowe · Now
certes it semith vs þat he wer
chet by grace · for he is wonder
gracious in his werk · and alle
we certe schullen ben dede · er þat
we may come to him vs for to
zelde er þat his fader sette of
vs no pris · And amonges alle oþe
þinges þe Baillol and his pe
ple passede þe water of Erne
so þat sir Rog' of Swynestone
þe sone was fers and hardi
and wente forth · and þei sawe
muche peple of men of armes
ful wel arayede · and forþ they
wente vn to ham and wiþ he
faugten and quelde as menye
as wolde abiden or take · and
neþeles att þat assaut þei wen
de þat hit had ben þe grete ost
of Scotlande and whanne hit

come to þe morn þei gadrede
hem to gedre and arayede hem
as while. ¶ But þe while þat
þe Englisshe men arayede ham·
þe noble Baroun Thomas of
Veri and þe noble Baroun of
Stafforde prikeden here hors up
and doun by þe hulles for to
kepe þe arayd of þe auntiz.
¶ And as þei prikeden up and
doun þei sawe a gret host of
good array ordeynede in þre
wynges wiþ helmes and
sheldes schynynge comynge
upon hem. ¶ And þo come
þo ii· lordes azen unto þe Bail
lolles folk and saide: Now
for þe loue of god beþ of good
comforte for ze schull haue
bataile anon rizte. ¶ And þo
spake Sir ffouke þe sone of
Garyn a baroun of grete re
nown and of dede of armes
Oþer lordinges underston
with þat y wil sayn· y haue
sawe meny dyuers wynges
as wel amonges Sarasines
as Iewes as amonges the
Scottis· and zit sawe y neuer
þe ferþe part of þe wynge figh
ten· and þerfore yf we while a
bide oure enemyes we beth
ynowe for to fighte azens
hem but yf þat we be nouzt
of good herte and of gode wil
for to fighte wiþ hem· for cer
tis· we ben ful fewe azens
his company. ¶ And þerfore
for þe loue of god take we un
to us good herte and lete us ben
bolde· and þenke we neuer in
oure hertes neuer upon oure
children· but onliche to conquere
hem in bataile and þoruz the
helpe of oure lorde god oure
enemyes we schull ouercome.
And wiþ þat come þe host
of Scottis towarde hem ful
cruely and azens þe towarde
þe Baillol in þre batailles wel
arayede in armure· and won
der ferfliche þei comen tow
arde þe Baillolles men. ¶ But
whenne oure Donalde erl of Mar
cile sawe al þis he sayde to Ro
bert Brus þe sone of Robert
þe Brus þese wordes. ¶ Sire
Robert quod he ful oþre mo
for þinkeþ att myn hert þat
þis folk þat þe Baillol hath
brouzt wiþ him schullen dye
wiþ dynt of Scottisshe men
swerdes eiþ þat þei ben cristen
man as wel as we ben &
þerfore me þinkeþ þat hit were
grete charite to sende unto
hem for to zelde hem to oure
mercye and grace and rauncen
hem þoruz greuous raunsoun
for as muche as þei haue take

oure lande and done ille.
Tross certis quoþ Sir Robert
Donolde y haue wel prey
ued þat þou art an enemy
and traitour unto Scotlande
sin þat þou wilt consente to
oure dedly enemyes
þat haven done vs muche
sorowe and schame. And now
it semith wel þat ȝe bey of
her assent. Certis Robert
quod Sir Donalde falsliche ȝe
lye · y am nouȝt of here compaigny
ne of her consente and that
and þat hastily ȝe schulle see
for y wil fighte wiþ hem raþer
þan any of þis companye. And
certis Sir Robert sayde y schal
maugre þin hede assaille hem
er þou. And wiþ þat þei prikede
her stedes ferslich vppon Gast
more and her wingus hem
folowede on a renge and tho
come þay and mette þe Baillol
and his companye att an hen
gynge boughte of Gernore in
a streit passage and so faste
þei hastede hem unto þe En
glisshe men so þat þousandes
felle to the grounde eche vppo
oþer into an heepe boþe hors &
man. Tho þe Baillol and his
men mightily stoden aȝeins
hem and faste quelde the
Scottis unto þe grounde. And

manye were wounded. So lon
ge til þat þei stoden vppon hem
and feyneden hem wiþ her
swerdis and speres þorouȝ out
her bodyes and so sore ȝanay
lade vppon hem til þat þei be
comen ful wery and wiste
nouȝt what to done. And the
Scottis þat were lefte alyve fled
den to saue hem self in the
beste manere þat þei myȝte.
And þo pursuede hem Sir Ed
warde Baillol and his men
and quelde of hem til it
was nyȝt. And so therunes
þey wente unto Seint Johnes
toun and tooke it and helde
hem þere and vitailled hem
self att her owne wille. For
þei founden ynowe wiþ
to make hem merye. Tho ma
de þe Baillol his men þat
were wounded gon to schipp
for to wende into Engelonde
for to hele her woundes. And
in þat same tyme þe was a
Flemmynges in see a strange
þef a robbour þat me callede
Crab. And þis Flemmynges
was dryven out of fflaundres
for his wickydnes. And þerfore
he come into Scotlande and
helde wiþ þe Scottis and de
de as muche harme unto þe
Englisshe men as he myȝte.

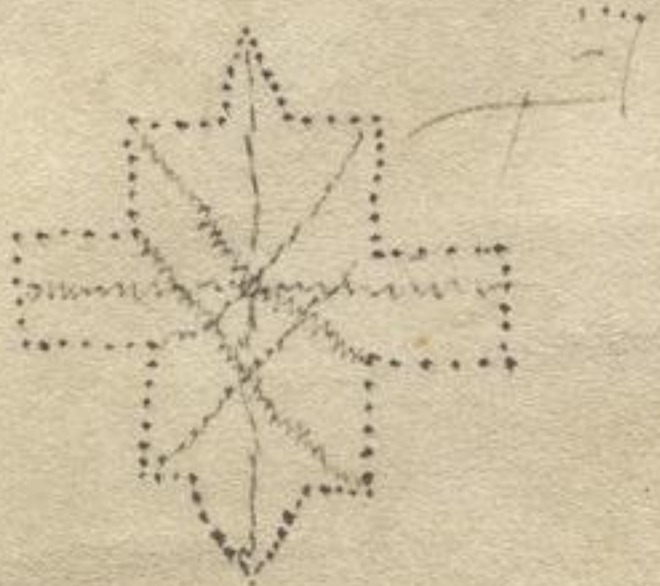
& lud þis Mab mette in þe ere
þe Baillolles men þat wounded
in bataile were and þat were
caunte azen in to Engelonde for
to hele hire woundes. and this
Mab zaf vnto hem a grete caunte
and wolde haue quelde hem
euerychone. but þe englisshe men
defendid hem wel and manliche
and descomfitede Mab an his
companye and þo gan he for
to flee in to Scotlande. And
as he come towarde seint Johnes
toun he fande a grete companie
of Scottis þat were come azen
togedre after þe discomfiture of
Gasthmore þe whiche byseged
Baillol and his men in þe same
toun of seint Johñ. and anon
tolde to þe Scottis how he was
discomfitede of þe englisshe
men þat were ore wounded att
Gasthmore þat wente towarde
Engelonde for to hele hire woun
des. and saide vnto þe Scottis
þat þei schulde haue no grace ne
myzte azens Edwarde Baillol
for encheson þat he has scom
fitede and ouercomede al þe che
valrie of Scotlande wiþ an
handful of men as to acounte
azens þe Scottis þat were slayn
wherfore he conncelede hem
for to remewe þe sege fram
saint Johnes. and kepe hem in
þe best manere þat þei couþe and
myzte. The Scottis vnderstode þo
þat Mabbe saide hem ore and
forsoke þe sege and wente þe
ins by nizte and halpe hem
self in þe beste manere þat thei
myzte or couþe. Whenne þis
tidinge was knowe þorz Scot
lande how þat þe lordes & knyztis
were scomfitede att Gasthmore
of Scotlande þorz sire Edwarde
þe Baillol. ze schullen vnderston
de þat þe lordes and ladyes and
þe gentiles of Scotlande comen
wonder faste vnto seint Johnes
toun and zelden hem vnto the
Baillol and to hym deden homa
ge and feaute for hire landes
and zelden hem vnto his pees
and helden him for hire lorde. &
he vnderfonge of hem hire ho
mages and grauntede hem his
pees. and his þennes he wente
to þe abbay of Scone and þere
he was crownede king of Scot
lande and after he lete crie his
pees þorzout þe lande. And
att þe same tyme fill that
king Edwarde of Engelonde
helde his parlement amonge his
lieges att newe castell vp Tyne
for to amende þe trespas & the
wrongis þat had ben done in
his lande. Sir Edwarde þe Baillol
king of Scotlande come to him

pedir & dede

fled out of Spayne Henry his
broþer þat was a bastarde by as
sente of the moost p[ar]tie of Spay
ne and þorugh help of þe forsaid
cumpanye þat y spake of erst was
made and crowned king of Spay
ne and the nombre of þat sa
me cumpanye was rekened and
cast at þe nombre of xij. ml. fightyng
men ¶ This same yer in þe
moneþe of Juyn þer come a gret
companye and a navee of the
Danes and gadered hem to
gider in þe north see purposyng
hem to come in to Engelonde
to reue and to robbe and also
to slee. With whom countre
den and metten in þe see ma
ryners and oþer hardy fyghting
men of the same cuntre and
disparpled hem and þai astha
med wente home azen into
her owne cuntree but among
alle oþer þe was a boystous and
a stronge vessell of her name
þat was overseyled of þe En
glysshe men and was perisched
and drevnt in þe whiche the
Erlward and oþer worthy grete
men of Denmark were take
prisoners and by þe kyng of En
gelonde and his counseill
y prisoned ¶ The whiche
wordes þe Danes afterwarde
comen and soughten alle a

boute for to haue had with her
goodes þat þei had lost and
þey were not wel apayed ne
plesyd to the answere þat þey
had þei turned homwardes a
zen lewinge be hinde hem in
her rymes prively y writen in
strowes and on walles ¶ Zett
sul Danes þes wanes Thane
happid ther an Englisshe man a
writer and wrote azens the
Danes in this manere wyse Her
sthul Danes fett her banes ////
And in this tyme Peres kinge
of Spayne with oþer kinges þat
is for to sey þe king of Navar
ne and þe king of Maiorque be
ynge menes wenten bitwene
and prayed counceill & helpe
of Sire Edwarde þe prins pon
whos counceill whan he hat
understonde her articles and
desire þat he was requyred of
þe kinges ¶ Loth he was and
aschamed to sey nay and con
trarie hem but neþeles he was
agast lest it scholde be any pre
iudice azens þe [illegible] long he
taried hem or he wolde grante
and consente þer to for he had
better counseill and avysement
with good deliberacion of king
Edwarde his gretter and his
fader ¶ But whan þat he
was with any dayes & counsels

by prechinges of so menye noble
men y required and spoken to
& with many preyers y sent and
made by twene þan prince
Edwarde sent to his fader bo
the by preyinge lres and also
by comfortable conteynynge
alther suggestions and causes
with alle the toþer kynges crist
en and lres for to haue comforte
and helpe of þe wronges not
only to the kinge of Spayne y
do but also for suche thynges
þat myght falle to oþer kinges
also if it were not the sonner
holpen and amendid þorugh
þe dome and helpe of knyght
hood to hem that it asked and
desired ¶ The whiche lres
whan þe kinge and his coun
seill had seyn and vnderstonde
den he had grete compassion
and heuynesse of such a kyn
ges spoylinge and robbynge
wiþ myche vilanie and sent
azen comfortable lres to prince
Edwarde his sone and to the
oþer forseide kinges and warned
hym for to arme him and or
deigne him azens þat misdoer
and to withstande hem by the
helpe of god þat weren suche
enemyes to kinges ¶ Whan
this noble prince had resceyued
þese lres hym self wiþ the
oþer kynges counseile except to
gider or þat he wolde vnder
take this querell he bounde &
knet euer the kinges þat was
deposed with a grete oth þat
is for to sey þat he scholde eue
after mainteigne þe right by
leue and feith of holy chirche
and holy chirche also with al
her mynistres rightes and lib
tees to defende from alle hir
enemyes and all enelees and
all þat were þe azens bittly to
punysshe and destroy ble and
alle þe rightis libtees and pri
vileges of holy chirche euer
to mayntenne and amende
and alle thinges þat were wrong
fully benome with drawe &
bore awey by hym or by ony
oþer by cause of him hastely to
restore azen and to dryue &
put out Sarazines and alle
other mysbileued peple out
of his kingdom with al his
strengthe and power & suffre
ne admitte none suche for no
maner þinge ne cause to dwelle
þerin and that whan he had
take a cristen woman to
wyf he schulde neuer come
in none oþer womans bedde
ne none oþer mannes wyf de
foule ¶ Alle these forseide
thinges treweliche for to kepe



continue and fulfill al his lyf
tyme he was bounde by othe
afore notaries in presence and
wittnesse of the kinges with
oþer princes and þan þilke gra
cious prince Edwarde vnder
toke þe cause and þe querelle
of the kinge þat was deposed
and be highte hym with the
grace of god to restore him a
3en to his kyngdome and late
ordeigne and gadre to gider
forthewiþ in alle haste his
mane with men of armes to
werre and fighte in þis forseide
cause. And in þis same time
vppon þe sonde of the Scottisshe
see þat meny a man hit sye
thre dayes to gedre þer weren
seine two egles of the whi
che þe tone come out of the
southe and þe toþer out of the
northe and cruelly and strong
ly þey foughten to gedre and
wrastled to gider. And the
south egle first ouercome þe
north egle and al to rent and
tare hym wiþ his bille and
his clowes þat he sholde not
reste ne take no brethe.
And after þe south egle flye
home to his owene costes.
And anone after þer folowed
and was seyn in þe morne
afor þe sune rysinge and after
in þe laste day of Octobre sterr
on þat meny sterres gadered
to gider on an hepe fel down
in to þe erthe lewynge behin
de hem fery bemes in manere
of lightnynge whos flammes
and hete brent and consumed
menys clothes and menys here
walkynge on þe erthe as hit was
seen and knowen of menye
a man. And 3itt þilke northeren
wynde that is ane redy and
destinat to all euell fro seint
katerins euen til iij dayes after
lost good withouten noumbre
vnresonable and in these sa
me dayes þer fille and comen
also such lightenynges þun
dres snowe and haill that
hit wasted and destroyed men
beestes houses and trees.

Off þe bataille of Spayne betwene prince Edwarde and Harry the Bastard of Spayne Capitulo. CCiiio ~~xxxiiij~~

In þe 3eer of oure lord
an. CCC lxvij and
of kinge Edwarde
xlij þe þridde day of Aprill
þer was a stronge bataille and
a grete in a large felde ycleped
Prazers fast by þe water of
Nazers in Spayne bytwene
Sir Edwarde prince and Harry
þe bastarde of Spayne but the

Bretoyne fille to prince Edwarde
by þe grace of god And þis same
prince Edwarde had with him
Sir John þe duke of lancastre his
brother and other worthy men
of armes abowte þe noumbre of
xxx. ml. and þe king of Spayne
had on his side men of diuerse na
cions to þe noumbre of a C. ml. &
passinge ¶ Wherfor þe sharp
nesse and þe fersnes of his adu
sarie with his foul boystous &
ful grete strengthe made and
stryuen þe rightfull partye a bak
a grete wey but þorugh þe grace
of almyghti god passinge any
mannys strengthe þe ilke hougest
oost was desparbled myght fully
be þe noble duke of lancastre &
his oost or þat prince Edwarde
come with hym ¶ And whanne
Henry þe bastarde say þat he tur
ned with his men with so grete
haste and strengthe to fle that
an houge compaynie of hem in þe
forseyde flood and of the brigge
þ(er)of fillen doun and perisshed &
þere were take þe erle of Dene
and Sir Bertram Cleykyn þat was
cheef maker and cause of þe werr(e)
and also chyueteyn of þe Vann
warde of þe bataill with many
oþer lordes and knyghtis to the
noumbre of ij. ml. of whom ij
weren of Fraunce and many of
Scotlande and þere were felde
in þe felde on oure enemyes
syde of lordes and knyghtes wt
oþer mene peple to þe noumbre
of vj. ml. and mo. and of Englissh
men but a fewe ¶ And after þis
þat noble prince Edwarde resto
red þe same Petre in to his kyng
dom azen. the whiche Petre aft(er)
warde thurgh tresoun and fal
senes of þe forseyd bastarde of
Spayne as he satte att þe table
he was strangled and dede
but after þis victorie many no
ble and hardy men of Englon
de in Spayne thurgh þe flix
and oþ(er) diuerse sykenesses toke
her dethe and in þis same yeer
in marche was seyn Stella Co
mata by twene þe north costes
and þe west whos bemes streched
towarde Fraunce ¶ And in þe
yeer next sewyng of of kinge
Edwardes regne xliij. in aprill
Sir leonell kinge Edwardes
sone that was duke of Claren
ce went towarde Myleyn wyth
a gret meynie of þe gentils of
Englonde for to wedde Galo
ys doughter and haue her to
wyf by whom he shulde ha
ue half þe lordship of Myleyn
but after that they were so
ryally wedded þe same duke
about þe Natiuite of oure lady

deide in þe same zeer þe ffrensshe
men breken þe pees and þe trewe
ydinge on þe kinges grounde
and lordschip of Engelonde in
þe schire and cuntre of pountif
and token and helden castels
and townes and bere þe englissh
men on honde falsly and sotilly
that þey were cause of brekinge
of þe trewes and in þis same
zeer deide þe duchesse of lan
castre and is beryed worsshep
fully in saint poulis chirche.
The xlviij. zeer of king Edwar
de regne was þe grete pesty
lence of men and of grete bestis
and by grete fallynge of wa
ters that fille that tyme þer
fill grete hindringe and distry
inge of corn in so much þat
þe next zeer after a busshell
whete was solde for x d. &
abowt þe last ende of marre
king Edwarde helde his parle
ment at Westm in þe whiche
parlement was trete and spo
ken of þe othe and þe trewe
þat was broken by twene hym
and þe kynge of ffrunce and
how he myght wreke vpon his
wrong be avenged. In þis
same zeer in þe assumpcion of
oure lady deide quene philipp
of Engelonde a ful noble and
good woman and att Westm
ful worsshepfully is buried
and entered. And abowt myss
mer þe duke of lancastre and
þe Erle of herforde with a gret
cumpanye of knyghtes wenten
in to ffraunce where þei gete
hem but a litell worsshipp &
name for ther was an honge
oost of ffrensshe men vpon
chalkhullbrigge and anoþer oost
of Englisshe men fast by the
same brigge þat longe tyme
had leyn þere and meny wor
thy men and gretis of þe Englis
she men ordeyned and zaf coun
ceyll for to fighte and zeue ba
taille to þe ffrensshe men but
þe forseide lordes wolde no
þing consente ther to ne assent
for no maner þing. Ther anon
after hit happid that þe erl of
warwyke come þedirwarde for
to werre and whan þe ffrensshe
men herde of his comynge or
that he come fully to londe þey
lafte her tentys and pavylons
with alle her vitailles and fled
den and went a wey previly.
And whan the erle was come
to lande with his men he went
in alle haste to warde Norman
dye and destroyed þe Ile of Caus
poyn dynt of werre & þer ny3
side but alas in his retornynge
to Engelonde ward home azeen

at Caleys he was take with
siknes of pestilens & deide
not levinge behinde him aftir
his dayes so noble a knyghte
and preved of armes ¶ In which
tyme regnyd and werryd þilke
preued knyght sir John Hawke-
wode that was an Englisshe
born havinge with him and
at his gouernaunce thilke white
cumpanye þat is afore ynempned
the which o tyme azens holy
chirche and anoþer tyme azens
lordes werred and ordeyned
grete batailles ¶ And þe in
þat tyme ther hadde meny unkn-
lowyngis and aboute this
coronacion of Seint Poul kinge
Edwarde whan he had ended
and done þe enterynge and
þe Exequyes with grete costes
and craftes aboute þe sepul-
ture and beriyng of Quene
Philipp his wyf he helde his
plement att Westm ¶ In þe
which plement was axed
of the clergye a thre zeris dy-
me þat is for to seye a grete dy-
me to be payed the zeer duryng
And þe clergie putt hit of & wolde
not graunte hit unto Estre next
comynge and than þei graunted
wel þat in þe zeer by certeyne
termes þat dyme sholde be
payed and also of þe lay fee was
a thre zeres xv. y graunted to the
kinge ¶ How sir Robert Knolles
with other certayn lordes of the
Reaume wente over the see into
Fraunce and of her gouernance.
Capitulo CC^mo xxxiiij.

And in the xlv zeer of
kinge Edwarde in the
bigynnynge king Edwar-
de with in his counceill and
undiscrete borowed a grete somme
of golde of þe prelatis and lordes
marchauntes and other riche men
of his reaume seying that hit
sholde be spent in defendynge
of holy chirche and of his reau-
me but nevir þe latter hit profited
not wherfore aboute a nysomme.
After þe king made a grete host
of the worthiest men of his reau-
me amonges whom were some
lordes þat is for to seyn þe lord
ffitz Water the lord Graunson
and oþer worthy knyghtis of
which knyghtes þe king ordey-
ned sir Robert Knolles a preued
knyght and wel assayed in de-
de of armes for to be gouernour
and that þorugh his gouernance and
conceyll althing schulde be
gouerned and dressid ¶ And
whan þei come in to Fraunce
as longe as þei dwellede and
helde hem hool to gedre þe
Frensshe men durst not falle

vp on hem. And att þe laste a
boute þe bygynnynge of wyn
ter for envye and coveytyse þat
was amonges hem and also
discorde they sondred & parted
hem into diuerse cumpanyes un
wisely and folily, but sir Robert
Knolles and his men wenten
and kepten hem safe with in
a castell in Britayne & whan
the frensshe men sawe þat
oure men were dyuyded into
diuerse cumpanyes and places
not holdynge ne strengthinge
hem to gederes as þe aughte
for to do þai fille fersly on oure
men and for þe moost partye to
ken hem or slowen hem and
þo that they toke leddyn wiþ
hem prisoners. ¶ And in the
same yeer pope Urban come
fro Rome to Avyoun for encheson
and cause that he scholde acor
de and make pees by twene
þe kinge of Fraunce and the
kinge of Englonde for evermore
but allas or he bygan þis tre
tye he deide with sikenes þe
xxi day of Decembre & was y
biried as for þe tyme in the
cathedrale chirche of Avyoun
fast by þe hye auter. And the
next yeer after whan he had
leyn so his bones were taken
out of þe erthe and beried in þe

in þe abbeye of saint Victory
fast by Marcile of þe whiche
abbey he was sumtyme abbott
him self and in bothe places
þat he was biryed in ther ben
manye grete miracles done &
wroughte thurgh þe grace of
god to many a mannes helpe
and to þe worschep of god after
whom folowed next and was
made pope Gregore cardynall
dekene that byfor was clepte
Pieres Rogier. ¶ In þis same yere
the citee of Lymage rebelled and
faught ayens þe prince as other
citees in Gyene dede for grete
taxes tollages and raunsoms
that þai were putt yn and y sette
to by prince Edwarde þe whiche
charges were importable and to
chargeable wherfor þey turned
fro hym and fillen to þe kinge
of Fraunce. ¶ And whan prince
Edwarde sawe this he was sore
y chaufede and y greued and in
turnynge homwarde ayen to En
gelonde wiþ sore skyrmysshes
and fightynge and grete assautes
fought wiþ hem and to þe for
saide citee and destroyede hit
almost to þe grounde & slowe
al that were founde in þe citee
and þan for to seye the sothe for
diuerse syknesses and maladyes
that he had and also for defaute

of money þat he myght not
withstande ne tarie on his ene-
myes he hyed him azen into
Engelonde and about þe bygin-
nynge of Januari he come into
Engelonde with his wyf and
his meyne levinge behinde hym
in Gascoigne þe duke of lancastre
and sir Edmunde Erle of Cam-
brigge with other worthy and
approved men of armes. ¶ In the
xlvj zeer of king Edwarde att
þe ordinaunce and sendinge of
king Edwarde þe kinge of Na-
varre come to him to Clarynge
doune to trete with him of cer-
teyn þinges touchinge his wer-
re in Normandie where kinge
Edwarde had lafte certeyn Se-
gees in his stede til he come a-
zen but king Edwarde myght
not spede of that þat he axed
of him. and so þe kinge of Na-
varre with grete worschep &
grete ziftes toke his leue and
wente home azeen. and about
þe bygynnynge of marche wha
the parlement at westmynster was
begunne þe kinge axede of þe
clergye a subsidie of .l. ml. li. þe
whiche by a good avisement
and by a general convocacion of
the clergie hit was y graunted
& y ordeyned þat hit schulde
be payed and reysed of þe lare

fees. ¶ And in this parlement at
þe requeste and axyng of the
lordes in hatered of men of holy
cherche þe Chaunceler and þo
þat were bisshoppis þe tresorer
and þe clerke of þe pryue Sale
were remeved and put out of
her office and in here stedes wer
seculer men put yn and while
þis parlement laste. þer comen
to london ambassiatours y
sent fro þe pope to trete with þe
king of pees and seiden þat
þe pope desired to fulfille his
predecessours wille. but for al her
comynge þei spedden not of
her purpos. ¶ Off þe Sege of
Rochell and how þe Erle of Pen-
broke was taken of þe Spaynar-
des. capitulo. CC.iiiio. xxvto.

TThe ix day of Juyn kinge
Edwarde in the xlvij
zeer of his regnynge
helde his parlement at wynches-
tre and hit lasted but viij day-
es. to the parlement were somned
by writt of men of holy cherche
iiij bisshoppis and iiij Abbottis
without any mo. ¶ This parlement
was holden for marchauntes
of london and of Norwich and
of oþer diuerse places in diuerse þin-
ges and poyntes of treson þat
þei were diffamed of. þat is for
to sey þat þei were rebelle &

wolde rise azens þe kynge.
¶ This same zeer þe duke of Lan-
castre and þe Erle of Cambrug-
ge his broþer comen out of Gas-
coigne into Engelonde & token
and wedded to her wyues þe
two doughtres on tyme king of
Spayne of whiche ij. doughtres
þe duke had þe eldest & þe erle
þe zonger. ¶ And that same
tyme þer were sent ij. cardina-
les fro þe pope þat is to sey an
Englisshe cardinall & a cardy-
nall of Parys to trete of pees
bytwene the ij. reumes. the
whiche when þei had ben bot
longe eche in his prouince and
in places and cuntrees faste by
trauaillinge of þe forseide pees at
þe laste þei toke wiþ hem her
hors of peinacie and wente a
zen to þe court of Rome ward
withouten any effecte of her pur-
pos. ¶ In þis zeer also þer was
a stronge bataill on þe see bitwe-
ne englisshe men and Flemyng-
gis and þe Englisshe men had
þe victorie and token xxv schip-
pes ycharged with salt sle-
ynge and drenchinge alle þe
men þat were þere in. but wheþer
hem þat þei weren of þat cuntre
and redily myche harme had
falle by cause þerof ne had pees
þe sumer be made bytwene
hem. ¶ And in þis same zeer þe
Frensshe men byseged þe toun
of þe Rochell wherfore þe
Erle of Penbroke was sent into
Gascoigne wiþ a grete cumpanye
of men of armes for to distroie
the sege þe whiche passeden
þe see and comen saf to the
hauen of Rochell and when
þei were þere att þe hauen mou-
the or þat þei myght arriue. so-
deinly come vppon hem a stronge
nauie of Spayne þe whiche ou-
comen þo. þe englisshe men in
miche wanysshinge hurting
and sleying of meny persones
for as miche as þe englisshe
men were not than redy for to
fyght ne ware of hem and in
this comynge of vpon þe Spay-
nardes. all þe englisshe men
eyþer þey were take or slayn. &
x of hem were wounded to þe
dethe and all her schippis wer
ybrent. ¶ And þe þei token þe
Erle with an stronge tresory of
þe reume of Engelonde and
manye oþer noble men also on
mydsomer eve þe whiche is seint
Albredis day and ladden hem
with hem in to Spayne and of
þis myschief was no grete
wonder for þis erl was a ful
euel leuer as an opyn lechour
and also in a certayn parlement.

he stood and was aȝens þe ryȝt
tis and þe ffraunchises of holy
chirche and also he counceiled
þe king and his conceill þat
he schulde are more of men of
holy chirche þan of oþer persones
of þe lay fee ¶ And for þe king
and oþer of his conceill accepted
and token raþer euel opinions
and causes aȝens men of holy
chirche þan he dede for to defen
de and mayntaigne þe ryght
of holy chirche it was seen in
menye tymes after thurgh
lakkynge of fortune and grace
þei had not ne were a way so
grete victorie ne power aȝens
her enemyes as they dede by
fore ¶ This same ȝeer þe king
wiþ a grete oost entred þe see
to remewe the sege of Touarsell
but þe wynde was euyn con
trarie to hym and suffred hym
not longe tyme to go ferre fro þe
lande wherfore he abode a certayn
tyme vp on þe see costes aby
dinge after a good wynde for
hem and ȝitt come hit not so
att þe last he come ayene wiþ
his men to londeward aȝen
and anon as he was a londe þe
wynde by gaume tyme and was
in another coost than he was bifor

¶ How þe duke of lancastre wiþ
a grete oost wente into fflaundres
and passid by parys þorugh
Borgoyne. Capitulo CCmo xxxvjo

Sone after in þe xlvij.
ȝeer of king Edwarde
þe duke of lancastre wiþ
a grete oost went into fflaun
dres and passed by parys þo
rugh Burgoyne and þorugh
all ffraunce til he come to Bur
deux wiþ out any manere with
standinge of þe ffrenssche men
and he dede hem but litell
harme saue he toke and raun
somed meny places and townes
and manye men. and after
lete hem gone fre ¶ The sa
me ȝeer þe king sent certayn
Ambassiatours to þe pope pray
inge him þat he scholde leue
of and not medle in his court
of þe kepinges and reseruacions
of benefices in Engelonde and
that þo were chose to bisshopris
sees and dignitees fre & wiþ
full right myght ioy & haue
and be confermed of her me
tropolanes & chefe bisshoppis
as þei were wont to be of olde
tyme ¶ Off þese poyntes &
of oþer touchinge þe king and
his reume when þei hadden
here answere of þe pope the
pope answered hem þat they
schulde certefye hym aȝen
by her lres of þe kinges wille

and of his ȝerinne or þat þei
determined ouȝt of þe forsaid
articles ¶ In þe same ȝeer deide
Iohn þe Erchebisshop of ȝorke
Iohn Bisshop of Ely William
Bisshop of Worcetre / in whos
stedes folowden and were
made bisshops by auctorite
of þe pope maist Alex Nevy
le to the Erchebisshopriche of
ȝork / Thom of Arundell to
þe bisshopriche of Ely and or
Henry Wakefelde to þe bisshop
riche of Worcetre ¶ In which
che tyme it was ordeyned in
þe parlement that all cathedrall
chirches sholde ioy & haue
her elections free and þat þe
kinge fro þat tyme after warde
sholde write aȝens hem þat
were y chosen but rather helpe
hem by his lres to her confir
macion and þis statut was
kept and dede myche profit &
good and in þis parlement was
graunted to þe king a dysme
of þe clergye & a xv of þe lay
ffee ¶ The ȝeer next after
of king Edwarde y lix þe v
day of Iuyn deide maist Wil
liam Witlesey Erchebisshop
of Caunterbery wherfor the
monkes of þe same chirche
asked and desired a cardi
nall of Engelonde to ben er
chebisshop and þerfore the kinge
was agreued and hadde ment
and purposed to haue exiled þe
monkes of þe same house and
so þei spended myche good or
þay myghte haue þe kinges
grace aȝen and his loue but
ȝit wolde not þe kinge consen
te ne graunte to her eleccion of
þe cardinall ne þe pope also
ne his cardinals and about
þe bygynnynge of August it
was tretid and spoken at Brug
ges of certain poyntis & arti
cles hangyng bitwene þe pope
and þe kinge of Engelonde and
þis tretis lasted almoost ij ȝeer
at þe last it was acorded bitwe
ne hem þat þe pope fro þt time
forthe sholde not vse ne dele
with þe reservacions and bene
fices in Engelonde and þat þe
kinge schulde nouȝt graunte ne
lete no benefices by his writ þat
is y clept. Quare impedit but
as touching þe elections above
saide þer was no þinge touchid
ne do and þat was y writen &
put uppon certain clerkes þe whi
che were enpposed and hoped to
be auaunced and promoted to
bisshopriches with whiche þat
þay desired and coueyted by
þe court of Rome þan by eny
Elections ¶ This same ȝeer about

cardinalles þe comen & mette
togider at Brugges mony no
ble and worthi men of boþe rea
mes to tretan of pees bytwe
ne þes two kyngdomes. And this
tretys lasted two ʒeer with
grete costes and longe spences
of boþe parties and att þe laste
they wente and departid þens
with oute eny acorde or effecte
The next ʒere after þe xlix ʒeer
of kinge Edwarde þo iij ston
of ayan beyng ʒitt voide and
vacaunt þe Erchebisshopriche of
Caunterbury agaynst Symond Sud
bury bisshop of London and he was
made Erchebisshop of Caunterbury
and agaynst William Courtenay
þat was bisshop of Herforde.
¶ And in this same time made cer
tayn tretis and spekyng of pees
trewes was take by twene Fraun
ce and Englonde fro Aprille
vn to mydsomer come ageine after an
hool ʒere. ¶ And about þe bygin
nynge of Aprill þe duke of Bri
taigne with many Erles Barons
and noble and worthi men of
Englonde went ouer see into
Britaigne wher he had had
al his luste desire and purpos
ne had þe forsaide trewes be so
sone y take þe which lettid
him myche. ¶ This same time
þe Isle of Constantyn wher þt
þe Castell of Seint Sauour
is in þat longe time was forʒet
att and bisegid of þe Frensshe
men was þan ʒolden to þe Fren
sshemen with alle þe appertenaun
ces in to grete harme and hin
dringe of þe reaume of Enge
londe. And þis same ʒeer þere
were so grete and so passinge
hetes and þer with al a grete pesti
lens in Englonde and more
ouer parties of þe worlde þat
it destroyed and slowh violent
ly and strongly boþe men and
wymmen with oute nombre.
¶ This same ʒeer deide sir Edwar
de þe lord Spencer a worthi
knyght and a bolde and in the
abbey of Tewkesbery wor
shepfully is biried and lastid
þis pestilens þe pope att the
instaunce and prayer of an
Englisshe cardinall graunted
to alle þe people þat deiden in
Englonde þat weren very &
repentaunt for her synnes &
also shriuen ful remission
by ij. bulles vnder lede by mon
thes than next to last. ¶ In þis
same ʒeer þe Erle of Penbroke
was take & enprisoned by Ber
tram Cleykyn bytwene Paris
and Caleys as he come towarde
Englonde vpon Seint Ethel
dredis day þe which Seint

as it was seide þe same Ersle
ofte tymes had offendid and sett
in a while after he deide and in
Novembre next after þe matte
att Brugges þe duke of Lancastre
and þe duke of Angeoy with
many oþer lordes and prelates
of bothe reamme for to trete of
pees ¶ Off þe deþe of prince
Edwarde and of dame Alys pe
rers & piers de la mare. ccc. lxx.
Not longe ¶ xxxviij
after þe l. yeer of þe
beginnynge of king Ed
warde he lete ordeyne & holde
his parlement at Westmenster þe
grettest þat was seen many
yeer afore. In þe which parlement
he axede of þe comialtie of the
reamme as he had done bifore
a grete subsidie to be graunted to
hym for defendynge of hym &
of his reamme. but þe comens an
swerid that þei were so ofte day
by day y greved & charged wiþ
so many taillages and subsidies
þat þey myght no lenger suf
fre no suche berthens ne char
ges. ¶ And þat þei knewen &
wysten wele þat þe king had
y now for savynge of hym &
of his reamme if þe reamme
were wele and trewely governed
but þat hit had be so longe euil
y governed by evel officers þat
þe reamme myght never be plen
tevous of chaffare and marchaun
dise ne also with richesse and
þese þinges þei proferid hem self
if þe kinge wolde certeynly to
preve and stonde by. and if it were
founde and preved after þat. þat
þe kinge than had nede þei wol
de þan gladly euery man after his
power and state hym helpe and
lene. ¶ And after þis þer were pu
blisshid and shewed in þe parle
ment many pleyntes and de
fautis of diverse officers of the
reamme and namely of þe lorde
Latymer þe kinges chambirlayn
of his euel governaunce bothe to þe
king and also to þe reamme and
att þe laste also þer was tretid &
spoken of dame Alys Perers for
þe grete wronges and euel gou
naunce þat was done by her &
by her counceill in the reamme þe
which dame Alys Perers the
kinge had holde longe tyme to
his lemman wher for hit was þe
lasse wonder þough þrough þe
sleyte of þe wommans excitid
and her sterynge consentid to
her lewdenes and evill coun
ceill. ¶ The which dame Alys
and also þe lord Latymer and
also oþer suche þat sterid þe king
to evel governaunce ayens his
profite and þe reamme also afore

cominalte of þe reaume desired &
asked þat þei shulde be remeued
and done awey and in her ste
des wyse men and worthy þat
weren trewe and wel assayed &
preued and of good gouernaunce
shulde be put in her stedes.
Tho amonge alle oþer þer was on
amonge þe comes þat was a bold
knyghte and a trewe and an a
queint man whos name was
Pieres de la Mare and þis same
Pieres was chosen for to be speker
for þe comes in the parlement and
for this same Pieres tolde and pu
blisshid þe trouthe and reherced
many wronges azens þe forsaid
dame Alys and oþer certeyn per
sones of þe kinges counseil as
he was bede by þe comes & also
tristynge miche for to be sup
ported & mayntened in this
matier by help and fauour of
þe prince anon as þe prince was
dede at the instaunce and request
of þe forsaide dame Alys this
Pieres de la Mare was iugged
to perpetuel prisoun in the castell
of Notingham in þe whiche he
was ii zeer and þe better of
myne lastynge þat same parle
ment died prince Edwarde
kinge Edwardes sone þe first
þat is for to say in Trinite sun
day in þe worship of whiche

feest he was wont euery zeer
whiler þat euer he were in this
worlde to make & holde þe most
solempnite þat he myghte.
Whos name and fortune of knyght
hood but if hit had bene of a
noþer Criston. a man boþe Cristen
and hethen whiles he lyued &
was in good poynt wondred
mych and dred hym wonder
sore whos body is worshep
fully beried at Cristechirche of
Caunterbury. And in this same
zeer the men and þe cherles to
naunttes of Warewyk rysen ma
liciously azens þe Abbot and þe
couent of Euesham and her
tenauntes & destroyeden fersly þe
Abbot and the toun & wounded
and bete her men and slowen
of hem many one and wente
to her maners & places & dede
myche harme and broken doun
her parkes and her closes & bren
ten and slowen her wilde bestes
and chaced hem brekyng her
fysshpondes hedes and lete the
water of her pondes & stewes
and riueres renne out & token
þe fisshe and bare hit wt hem
and deden hem al þe harme
þat þei myght. Then os forsoþ
that forsoþe they had be distroy
ed perpetuelly þat abbey with
alle her riches & appertenaunces

but if þe king þerfore had
holpen hit & taken hede þerto &
þerfor þe king sent his lettres to
þe Erle of Warewik chargyng
him and comaundinges þat he
shulde stynt resistence & amen
de this euel dedes and werkes
of his pees. And so by meyns
of lordes and oþer frendes of boþe
sides pees and good acorde and
loue was made bitwene hem
And for þis thynges as hit was
seide þe king wolde not be gou
erned at þat tyme bi his lordes
þat þere were in þe parlement
but he toke and made his conse[illegible]
þe duke of lancastre his gouerno[ur]
of þe reaume the which stood so
stille gouernour til tyme þat he
deide. ¶ This same yeer anon after
candilmasse at þe parlement was
done the king axed a subsidie
of þe clergie and of þe lay fee &
hit was graunted him þat is
forto seye that he shulde haue
of eny persone of þe lay fee boþe
of man and woman þat pas
sid xiiij yeer age iiij d. outtake
pore beggers þat were knowen
openly for nedy pore beggers &
þat he shulde haue of eny
man of holy chirche þat was
benficed or promoted xij d. and
of al oþer þat were not promoted
iiij d. outtake þe foure ordres of
þe freres beggers ¶ This same
yeer after candilmas Richarde
prince Edwardes sone was ma
de prince of Wales to whom the
king ȝaf also þe duchye of Cor
newayle with þe erldom of Chest
re and about þis tyme þe cry
smalles of Engelonde þe forþ þe
day by fore Marie Maudelayne
day after mete sodeinly was
smyte and take with a palsye
and lost his speche and on Marie
Maudelayn day he deide. ¶ Off
þe deth of kinge Edwarde and
how sir John Mynsterworth
knight was drawe & hanged
for his fals treason. Cao. CCmo. xxixo.

Right anon after
in þe lj. yeer of þe regnynge
of king Edwarde in þe by
gynnynge of Octobre [illegible] Grego
rye þe xj bisshop and remeued
with him his court from Avyon
to Rome and þe xij day of April
Sir John Mynsterworth knight att
London was drawen hanged &
þan byheded and after his body
quartered and sent to somme the
chief townes of Engelonde and
his hede set vp on London brigge
for þis same John was ful vn
trewe to þe kinge and to þe reau
me and ful coueitous and vn
stable for he toke ofte tymes
grete sommes of money of the

kynge and his conceill for ine
of armes wages þat he schulde
haue paied hem and to be hit
in to his owene vse and he dre
dinge that att þe laste he schul
de be schent & acused for this
same cause fled priuely to þe
king of ffraunce and was swore
to him and by come his man &
by highte him to bringe a grete
nave of Spayne in confusion
and distroiynge of Englonde
But rightful god to whom no
priuite is vnknowe suffred hy
first to be schent and spilt or
þat he schulde so trecherously &
falsly his liege lord þe kinge
of Englonde and his peple
and his reme in this whiche
rounde þe same john was lost
wickedly þorugh batailt distrie
or bringe his cursed purpos a
boute. In þe feste of Saint Ge
orge þe next suynge kinge
Edwarde ȝaf to Richarde of Bur
deux his eir that was prince
Edwardes sone att Wyndesore
þe ordre of knyghthood & made
him knyght þe whiche kinge
Edwarde whan he had regned
l ȝere & more þe xxi of Iuyn
he deide att Shene & is beried
worschepfully att Westmynster
whos soule god haue mercy

Explicit &c

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
& acused him for the same cause
& fled prim

Marag...

In the xxiiii yere of kinge Edward

Maragret Briggs

In ye festes of Saint George
ye next Calling King Edwarde
to Richarde of [illegible] his Air that
was Prince Edwardes Sone, at
Windesore ye Ordres of Knighthood &
made him Knight.

The whiche Kinge Edwarde
when he had reigned 50 Yeers 4
Months, the 21st of Juyn 1377 he
deide at Chene & is buried Worst
shepfully at Westmestre, whose soul
God have mercy.

Lyonell Tollemache

This Manuscript was amongst many Others at Helmingham
1726

[illegible]

Syr Willm Lomnor of Sharryngtone
gentleman wryth this Cronycle

Chryst come hys man and punyshyd hym to brynge a great navy
of Spayne in confusion & dystroyng of England

In the yere of o[u]r lorde god / M.D.lviii. apon newyers day was Callis traterusly betrayed by the false traytor syr Raff Chamberlyn and by the sayd traytor delyvyd unto the ffrenchmen / and also by the false traytor the captayne of Rysbank the sayd banke was delyvyd to the sayd ffrenchemen and also by the false traytor the captayne of Newnam brydge the sayd brydge was trayterusly delyvyd to the sayd ffrenchmen / to the which traytors I pray almyghty god to send punysshment accordyng to their desarvyng and to the example of all other traytors therfore lett all trewe Englyshe harts make their faythfull petiton to almyghty god and to pra[y] to hym that we may have it wtout any bludshed or at the leaste lyttle bludshed or none

hat you

[illegible]

Anno E. iij xlv^to

Statut' de Grossis Arboribus fact' p(er) E. tercium regem Angl' post conquestum regni sui xlv^to ordinat' fuit p(er) dict' E. Regem ex assensu ducum comitum & baronum & ad peticionem communitatis regni Angl' q(uo)d de Grossis Arboribus de etate viginti annorum et amplius decime non debentur ullo modo &c

Vide [illegible] patet [illegible] &c

Si mulier virum suum suspectum habet de lesione sibi inferenda debet sibi vir cavere p(er) sufficientem cautionem q(uo)d tractabit eam honeste & q(uo)d non levat manum in personam vel in rebus. Extra de restitucione spoliatorum, ex transmissa & [illegible] i. de benedict'. Et si mulier non confidat juramento viri sui tunc prestare debet cautionem pigneraticiam et fideiussoriam sub certa pena. Apponitur hoc et lite non contestata. Quod si tenent [illegible] Si vero eam ita [illegible] quod propter [illegible] ille sufficiat nec possit ei de securitate sufficienti providere, non [illegible] mulier non debet restitui ei set ab eo potius removeri. Extra de spoliatorum c. Litteras in fine.

Ego [illegible]

bynne John Ubaldre [illegible]

Rafe Do[illegible] Knight

thorn[illegible]

SONX [illegible]

Levinson 65 SONX Stratz

65-605

Levinson 65 SONX Strtz

65-605

M.S.
HIST: OF
ENGLAND
TO Ed. 3d.